Variable speed drives
Altivar 71

For 3-phase asynchronous motors from 0.37 to 500 kW

a brand of
Schneider
Electric

Telemecanique

Simply Smart !

telemecanique.com

This international site allows you to access all the Telemecanique products in just 2 clicks via comprehensive range data-sheets, with direct links to:

■ Complete library: technical documents, catalogs, certificates, FAQs, brochures...
■ Selection guides from the e-catalog.
■ Product discovery sites and their Flash animations.

You will also find illustrated overviews, news to which you can subscribe, a discussion forum, the list of country contacts...
To live automation solutions every day!

Flexibility

■ Interchangeable modular functions, to better meet the requirements for extensions
■ Software and accessories common to multiple product families

Ingenuity

■ Auto-adapts to its environment, "plug & play"
■ Application functions, control, communication and diagnostics embedded in the products
■ User-friendly operation either directly on the product or remotely

Simplicity

■ Cost effective "optimum" offers that make selection easy for most typical applications
■ Products that are easy to understand for users, electricians and automation specialists
■ User-friendly intuitive programming

Compactness

■ High functionality in a minimum of space
■ Freedom in implementation

Openness

■ Compliance with field bus, connection, and software standards
■ Enabling decentralised or remote surveillance via the web with Transparent Ready products

Contents

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors

Applications	Speed control for asynchronous motors		
Application area	**Building (HVAC)** *(1)*	**Industry**	
Type of machine	**Pumps and fans**	**Simple machines Pumps**	**Simple machines**

Power range for 50…60 Hz (kW) supply	**0.75…30**	**0.18…2.2**	**0.18…15**
Single phase 100…120 V (kW)	–	0.18…0.75	–
Single phase 200…240 V (kW)	–	0.18…2.2	0.18…2.2
Three phase 200…230 V (kW)	–	0.18…2.2	–
Three phase 200…240 V (kW)	0.75…30	–	0.18…15
Three phase 380…480 V (kW)	0.75…30	–	–
Three phase 380…500 V (kW)	–	–	0.37…15
Three phase 525…600 V (kW)	–	–	0.75…15

Drive			**0.75…30**	**0.18…2.2**	**0.18…15**
	Output frequency		0.5…200 Hz	0.5…200 Hz	0.5…500 Hz
	Type of control	Asynchronous motor	Sensorless flux vector control, voltage/frequency ratio (2 or 5 points), energy saving ratio	Sensorless flux vector control	
		Synchronous motor	–	–	
	Transient overtorque		110% of the nominal motor torque	150…170% of the nominal motor torque	180% of the nominal motor torque for 2 seconds

Functions					
Number of functions			50	26	50
Number of preset speeds			7	4	16
Number of I/O	Analog inputs		2	1	3
	Logic inputs		3	4	6
	Analog outputs		1	–	1
	Logic outputs		–	1	–
	Relay outputs		2	1	2

Communication	Embedded	Modbus	–	Modbus and CANopen
	Available as an option	LONWORKS, METASYS N2, APOGEE FLN, BACnet	–	Ethernet TCP/IP, DeviceNet, Fipio, Profibus DP

Cards (available as an option)	–	–	–

Standards and certifications	IEC/EN 61800-5-1, IEC/EN 61800-3 (environments 1 and 2)		
	EN 55011: Group 1, class A and class B with option card, C€, UL, CSA, C-Tick, NOM 117	EN 55011: Group 1, class A and class B C€, UL, CSA, C-Tick, N998	EN 55011: Group 1, class A and class B with option card, C€, UL, CSA, C-Tick, N998

References	**ATV 21**	**ATV 11**	**ATV 31**

Pages	Please consult our "Altivar 21 speed drives" catalogue.	Please consult our "Soft starters and variable speed drives" catalogue.	

(1) Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning

Telemecanique

Pumps and fans	Complex, modular machines; high-power machines Machines requiring high-performance torque and accuracy at very low speed as well as high dynamics

0.37…630	0.37…500
–	–
0.37…5.5	0.37…5.5
–	–
0.75…90	0.37…75
0.75…630	0.75…500
–	–
–	–

0,5…1000 Hz up to 37 kW, 0.5…500 Hz from 45 to 630 kW	0…1600 Hz up to 37 kW, 0…500 Hz from 45 to 500 kW
Sensorless flux vector control, voltage/frequency ratio (2 or 5 points), energy saving ratio	Flux vector control with or without sensor, voltage/frequency ratio (2 or 5 points), ENA System
–	Vector control without speed feedback
110…120% of the nominal motor torque for 60 seconds	220% of the nominal motor torque for 2 seconds 170% for 60 seconds

> 100	> 150
8	16
2…4	2…4
6…20	6…20
1…3	1…3
0…8	0…8
2…4	2…4

Modbus and CANopen	
Ethernet TCP/IP, Fipio, Modbus Plus, INTERBUS, Profibus DP, Modbus/Uni-Telway, DeviceNet, LONWORKS, METASYS N2, APOGEE FLN, BACnet	Ethernet TCP/IP, Fipio, Modbus Plus, INTERBUS, Profibus DP, Modbus/Uni-Telway, DeviceNet
I/O extension cards, "Controller Inside" programmable card, multi-pump cards	Encoder interface cards, I/O extension cards, "Controller Inside" programmable card

IEC/EN 61800-5-1, IEC/EN 61800-3 (environments 1 and 2, C1 to C3), EN 55011, IEC/EN 61000-4-2/4-3/4-4/4-5/4-6/4-11 CE, UL, CSA, DNV, C-Tick, NOM 117, GOST	

ATV 61	ATV 71
Please consult our "Altivar 61 speed drives" catalogue.	22 to 25

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Hoisting application

Packing application
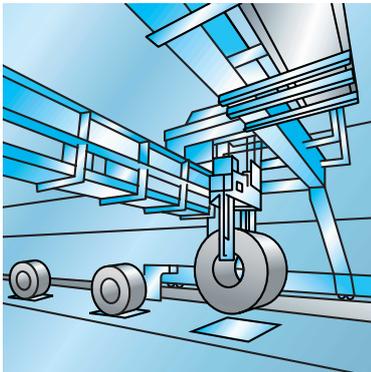
Process machinery application

Applications

With its different types of motor control and numerous integrated functions, the Altivar 71 range of variable speed drives meets the most stringent requirements.
It is suitable for the most demanding drive systems:

- Torque and speed accuracy at very low speed, high dynamic performance with Flux Vector Control with or without sensor
- Extended frequency range for high-speed motors
- Parallel connection of motors and special drives using the voltage/frequency ratio
- Static speed accuracy and energy saving for open loop synchronous motors
- Smooth flexibility for unbalanced machines with the ENA (ENergy Adaptation) System

The functionality of the Altivar 71 drive boosts performance and increases a machine's flexibility of use across multiple applications.

Hoisting
- Brake control adapted for translational, hoisting and slewing movements
- Load measurement using weight sensor
- High-speed hoisting
- Brake feedback management
- Limit switch management
- Slack sling
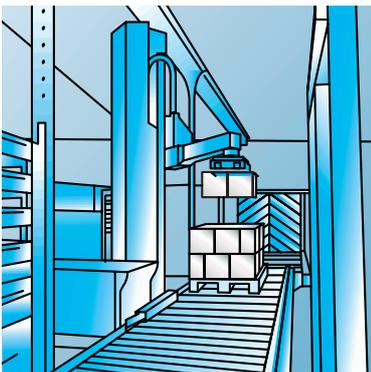
Handling
- Very quick response times on transmission of a command: 2 ms (± 0.5 ms)
- Reference via pulse train or differential analog input
- Control via the principal communication networks
- Position control via limit switches with time optimization at low speed
- Multiple parameter settings via parameter set switching

Packing
- Up to 50 Hz of the bandwidth
- Very quick response times on change of reference: 2 ms (± 0.5 ms)
- Control via integrated CANopen bus
- Position control via limit switches

Textile machinery
- High resolution of the digital speed reference (1/32000)
- Speed accuracy assured by use of synchronous motor, irrespective of load
- High bandwidth
- Spooling function
- Connection to common DC bus

Wood-working machinery
- Operation up to 1600 Hz
- Fastest possible controlled stop on loss of line supply
- Control via integrated CANopen bus
- Protection of motor against overvoltages
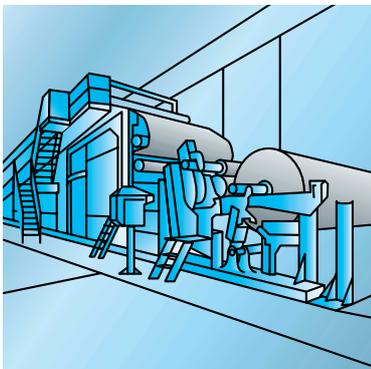
Process machinery
- PID regulator
- High reference resolution
- Speed or torque control
- Connection to the principal communication networks
- Separate control power supply
- Braking unit via re-injection to the line supply
- Connection to common DC bus

Lifts
- Brake control adapted to suit passenger comfort
- Processing of load measurement by weight sensor
- Conformity of relays to lift safety standard EN 81-13-2-2-3
- Connection to CANopen bus
- Control with integrity check of output contactor
- Lift car clearance function

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

ATV 71HC28N4,
ATV 71HD37M3X, ATV 71HU22N4

ATV 71W075N4

ATV 71PU40N4Z

Comprehensive offer

The Altivar 71 range of variable speed drives extends across a range of motor power ratings from 0.37 kW to 500 kW with three types of power supply:
■ 200…240 V single phase, 0.37 kW to 5.5 kW, UL Type 1/IP 20, (**ATV 71H●●●M3**),
■ 200…240 V three phase, 0.37 kW to 75 kW, UL Type 1/IP 20, (**ATV 71H●●●M3**
and **ATV 71H●●●M3X**),
■ 380…480 V three phase, 0.75 kW to 500 kW, UL Type 1/IP 20, (**ATV 71H●●●N4**).

The Altivar 71 drive integrates the Modbus and CANopen protocols as standard, as well as numerous functions. These functions can be extended using communication option cards, I/O extension cards, a "Controller Inside" programmable card or an encoder interface option card, see page 8.

External options such as braking resistors, resistance braking units and filters complete the offer, see page 8.

The entire range conforms to international standards IEC/EN 61800-5-1, IEC/EN 61800-2, IEC/EN 61800-3, is UL, CSA, DNV, C-Tick, NOM 117 and GOST certified and has been developed to meet the requirements of directives regarding the protection of the environment (RoHS, WEEE, etc). as well as those of European Directives (C€ mark).

The Altivar 71 can be inserted in an installation's safety system. It integrates the "Power Removal" safety function which prohibits any accidental starting of the motor. This function complies with machine standard EN 954-1 category 3, the standard governing electrical installations IEC/EN 61508 SIL2 and the power drive systems standard IEC/EN 61800-5-2.

Electromagnetic compatibility

Reducing harmonics and observing requirements in respect of electromagnetic compatibility were considered right from the design stage.
The incorporation of EMC filters in **ATV 71H●●●M3** and **ATV 71●●●●N4** and the observance of requirements in respect of EMC simplifies installation and provides an economical means of meeting C€ marking requirements.

ATV 71H●●●M3X drives have been designed without an EMC filter. Filters are available as an option and can be installed by the user to reduce emission levels, see pages 90 to 93.

Standard versions

The Altivar 71 UL Type 1/IP 20 range of variable speed drives is available in two standard versions:

■ A version with UL Type 12/IP 54 degree of protection designed to meet the requirements of applications in difficult environments (dusty, humid, etc.):
■ 0.75 to 75 kW (**ATV 71W●●●N4**)
□ 90 to 500 kW, ready-assembled in enclosure to simplify installation and, in particular, to ensure optimum ventilation of the enclosure (**ATV 71E5●●●N4**)

■ A version on a base plate, 0.75 to 7.5 kW, designed to meet the requirements of applications in which the seal necessary for the environment in which the drive is to be used prevents ventilation (**ATV 71P●●●N4Z**)
As the drive is not equipped with a fan as standard, a DC choke (see page 81) must be added in order to prevent overheating during operation.
In environments supporting the use of ventilation, the DC choke (see page 81) must be replaced by a fan (see page 28).

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
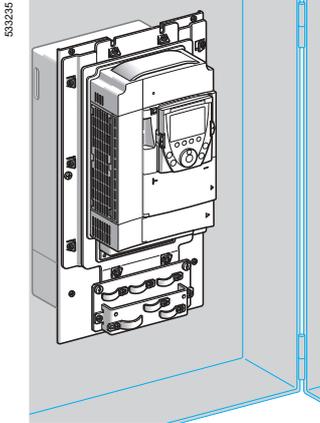
ATV 71HU75N4 flush-mounted
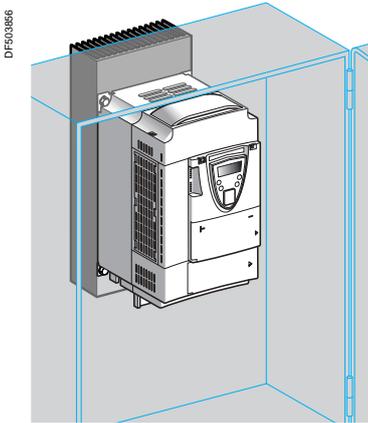
*ATV 71PU75N4Z in dust
and damp proof enclosure*

Mounting options

The Altivar 71 drive can be mounted in a variety of ways for integration into machines.

Mounting outside enclosure

The standard version of the Altivar 71 drive (on heatsink) or the base plate version can be mounted directly on a wall without the need for an enclosure. UL Type 1 conformity can be achieved using kit **VW3 A9 2●●** and IP 21 or IP 31 using kit **VW3 A9 1●●** (see pages 29 and 30).

Flush-mounting inside a dust and damp proof enclosure

The Altivar 71 drive has been designed to optimize the size of enclosures (floor-standing, wall-mounted, etc).
This type of mounting can be used to reduce the size of enclosure required and to limit the temperature rise inside the enclosure:
■ The power section, with IP 54 degree of protection, can be easily mounted outside the enclosure using the kit for flush-mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure **VW3 A9 5●●**, see page 27,
■ This type of mounting can lead to ambient temperatures of up to 60°C inside the enclosure without derating.
It may be necessary to use a control card fan kit **VW3 A9 4●●** appropriate for the drive rating in order to avoid hot spots, see page 26.
■ This option permits mounting side-by-side, see pages 158 and 160.

Mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure or on machine frame

The Altivar 71 drive on base plate supports two mounting options:
■ In a dust and damp proof enclosure, using the kit for dust and damp proof mounting **VW3 A9 80●** (see page 28) designed to dissipate heat via a heatsink mounted outside the enclosure
■ On a machine frame, where this frame's earth allows the heat to be dissipated

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Dialogue tools

The Altivar 71 drive **1** is supplied with a removable graphic display terminal **2** for remote operation:

■ The navigation button accesses the drop-down menus quickly and easily.
■ The graphic screen displays 8 lines of 24 characters of plain text.
■ The advanced functions on the display unit access the more complex drive functions.
■ The display screens, menus and parameters can all be customized for the user or the machine.
■ Online help screens are available.
■ Configurations can be stored and downloaded (four configuration files can be stored).
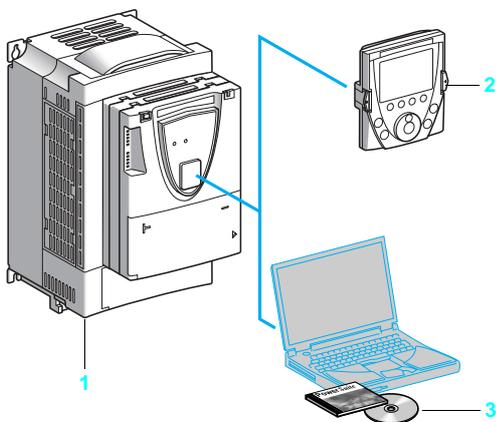■ The drive can be connected to several other drives via a multidrop link.
■ It can be located remotely on an enclosure door with IP 54 or IP 65 degree of protection (UL Type 1/IP 20 drives) or built in (UL Type 12/IP 54 drives).
■ It is supplied with 6 languages installed as standard (English, French, German, Italian, Spanish and Chinese). Other languages can be loaded to the flash memory.

Up to 15 kW, the Altivar 71 drive can be controlled using an integrated 7-segment display terminal, see pages 22 and 23.

The PowerSuite software workshop **3** can be used to configure, adjust and debug the Altivar 71 in just the same way as all other Telemecanique drives and starters. It can be used via a direct connection, Ethernet, modem or a Bluetooth® wireless connection.

Quick programming

Macro-configuration
The Altivar 71 offers quick and easy programming using macro-configurations corresponding to different applications or uses: start-stop, handling, hoisting, general use, connection to communication networks, PID regulator, master/slave. Each of these configurations is still fully modifiable.

"Simply Start" menu
The "Simply start" menu can be used to ensure the application operates correctly, maximize motor performance and ensure motor protection.

The architecture, the hierarchical parameter structure and the direct access functions all serve to make programming quick and easy, even for the more complex functions.

RUN	Term	+50.00Hz	5.4A
	1.1 SIMPLY START		
2/3 wire control	**:**		**2 wire**
Macro-configuration :			M. handling
Standard mot. Freq.:			50Hz IEC
Rated motor power :			2.2kW
Rated motor volt. :			400V
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

"Simply Start" menu

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

| SCF1 | Term | +50.00Hz | 0.0A |

FAULT HISTORY ☐

Short circuit
Overcurrent
External FLT
Overvoltage
Undervoltage

| Help | | Quick ▼ |

Fault log

| SCF1 | Term | +50.00Hz | 0.0A |

MOTOR SHORT CIRCUIT ☐

Check the connection cables
and the motor insulation.

Perform the diagnostic test.

| | Quick ▼ |

Troubleshooting screen

Services

The Altivar 71 has numerous built-in maintenance, monitoring and diagnostic functions:
■ Built-in drive test functions with diagnostic screen on the remote graphic display terminal
■ I/O maps
■ Communication maps for the different ports
■ Oscilloscope function that can be viewed using the PowerSuite software workshop
■ Management of the drive installed base via processors with flash memory
■ Remote use of these functions by connecting the drive to a modem via the Modbus port
■ Identification of all the drive's component parts as well as the software versions
■ Fault logs with display of the value of up to 16 variables on occurrence of a fault
■ Display terminal languages loaded in the flash memory
■ A message of up to 5 lines of 24 characters can be stored in the drive

Options

The Altivar 71 drive **1** can integrate a maximum of three option cards simultaneously, of which:
■ 2 can be selected from among the following *(1)*:
□ I/O extension cards **2**, see pages 42 and 43
□ Communication cards **2** (Ethernet TCP/IP, Modbus/Uni-Telway, Fipio, Modbus Plus, Profibus DP, DeviceNet, INTERBUS, etc.), see page 52 to 59
□ "Controller Inside" programmable card **2** . This is used to adapt the drive to specific applications quickly and progressively, by decentralizing the control system functions (programming in IEC 61131-3 compliant languages), see pages 44 to 51.
■ 1 can be an encoder interface card **3** (with RS 422 compatible differential outputs, open collector outputs, push-pull outputs), see pages 40 and 41.

External options can be associated with the Altivar 71:
■ Braking units and resistors (standard or hoist-specific), see pages 60 to 73
■ Networked braking units, see pages 74 to 77
■ DC chokes, line chokes and passive filters (to reduce harmonic currents), see pages 78 to 89
■ Additional EMC input filters, see pages 90 to 93
■ Motor chokes and sinus filters for long cable runs or to remove the need for shielding, see pages 94 to 99.

Note: Please refer to the compatibility summary tables to determine which options are available for individual drives, see pages 100 to 107.

(1) The Altivar 71 cannot support more than one option card with the same reference.

| Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

8

⊞ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Premium   ATV 71   Magelis XBT

Ethernet

CANopen master

Modbus

I/O STB   ATV 31   I/O OTB   Sensor
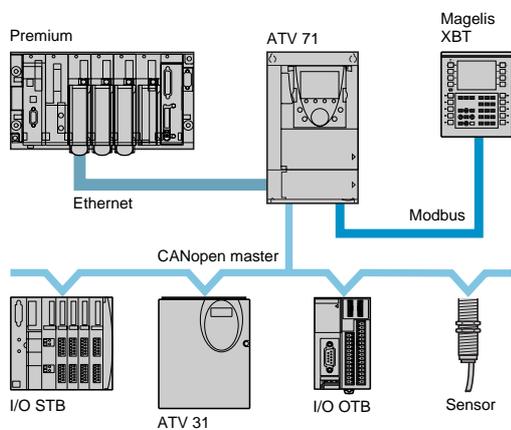
Example of a drive equipped with a communication card and a "Controller Inside" programmable card

Integration into control systems

The Altivar 71 integrates a combined Modbus or CANopen port for quick, accurate motion control, adjustment, supervision and configuration. A second port is available for connecting a Magelis terminal for machine dialogue.

The Altivar 71 can also be connected to other communication networks using the communication option cards. The following communication protocols are supported: Ethernet TCP/IP, Fipio, Modbus, Modbus Plus, Uni-Telway, Profibus DP, DeviceNet, INTERBUS (see pages 52 to 59).

The control part can be powered separately, thus allowing communication (monitoring, diagnostics) to be maintained even if the power section supply fails.

The "Controller Inside" programmable card transforms the drive into an automation island:
■ The card integrates its own I/O; it can also manage those of the drive and an I/O extension card.
■ It contains onboard application programs developed in IEC 61131-3 compliant languages, which reduce the control system response time.
■ Its CANopen master port enables control of other drives and dialogue with I/O modules and sensors.

Telemecanique

9

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Environmental characteristics

Conformity to standards			Altivar 71 drives have been developed to conform to the strictest international standards and the recommendations relating to electrical industrial control devices (IEC, EN), in particular: low voltage, IEC/EN 61800-5-1, IEC/EN 61800-3 (conducted and radiated EMC immunity and emissions).
	EMC immunity		IEC/EN 61800-3, environments 1 and 2 IEC/EN 61000-4-2 level 3 IEC/EN 61000-4-3 level 3 IEC/EN 61000-4-4 level 4 IEC/EN 61000-4-5 level 3 IEC/EN 61000-4-6 level 3 IEC/EN 61000-4-11 *(1)*
	Conducted and radiated EMC emissions for drives		IEC/EN 61800-3, environments 1 and 2, categories C1, C2, C3
		ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU40N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU40N4Z	EN 55011 class A group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C2 With additional EMC filter *(2)*: ■ EN 55011 class B group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C1
		ATV 71HU22M3…HU75M3 ATV 71HU55N4…HC50N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z…PU75N4Z	EN 55011 class A group 2, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C3 With additional EMC filter *(2)*: ■ EN 55011 class A group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C2 ■ EN 55011 class B group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C1
		ATV 71H●●●M3X	With additional EMC filter *(2)*: ■ EN 55011 class A group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C2 ■ EN 55011 class B group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C1
		ATV 71W075N4…WU40N4	EN 55011 class A group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C2
		ATV 71WU55N4…WD75N4	EN 55011 class A group 2, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C3 With additional EMC filter *(2)*: EN 55011 class A group 1, IEC/EN 61800-3 category C2
C€ marking			The drives have C€ marking in accordance with the European directives on low voltage (73/23/EEC and 93/68/EEC) and EMC (89/336/EEC).
Product certifications	ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71●●●●N4		UL, CSA, DNV, C-Tick, NOM 117 and GOST
	ATV 71P●●●N4Z		UL, CSA, C-Tick, NOM 117
Degree of protection			IEC/EN 61800-5-1, IEC/EN 60529
	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4		IP 21 and IP 41 on upper part IP 20 without blanking plate on upper part of cover IP 21 with accessory VW3 A9 1●●, UL Type 1 with accessory VW3 A9 2●●, see pages 29 and 30
	ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4		IP 00, IP 41 on upper part and IP 30 on front panel and side parts. IP 31 with accessory VW3 A9 1●●, UL Type 1 with accessory VW3 A9 2●●, see pages 29 and 30
	ATV 71W●●●N4		UL Type 12/IP 54
Vibration resistance	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 ATV 71W●●●N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		1.5 mm peak to peak from 3…13 Hz, 1 gn from 13…200 Hz, conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-6
	ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4		1.5 mm peak to peak from 3…10 Hz, 0.6 gn from 10…200 Hz, conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-6
Shock resistance	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 ATV 71W●●●N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		15 gn for 11 ms conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-27
	ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X ATV 71HD90N4…HC13N4		7 gn for 11 ms conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-27
	ATV 71HC16N4…HC50N4		4 gn for 11 ms conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-27

(1) Drive behaviour according to the drive configurations, see pages 189, 192, 193, 201 and 202.
(2) See table on page 90 to check permitted cable lengths.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

10   ⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Environmental characteristics (continued)

Maximum ambient pollution	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		Degree 2 conforming to IEC/EN 61800-5-1
	ATV 71HD18M3X…HD75M3X ATV 71HD22N4…HC50N4 ATV 71W●●●N4		Degree 3 conforming to IEC/EN 61800-5-1
Environmental conditions	ATV 71H●●●M3, H●●●M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		IEC 60721-3-3 classes 3C1 and 3S2
	ATV 71H●●●M3S337 ATV 71H●●●M3X337 ATV 71H075N4S337… HD75N4S337 ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 ATV 71W●●●N4		IEC 60721-3-3 class 3C2
Relative humidity			5…95% without condensation or dripping water conforming to IEC 60068-2-3
Ambient temperature around the unit	Operation	**°C**	-10…+50 without derating. Up to +60°C with derating and with the control card fan kit VW3 A9 4●● corresponding to the drive rating (see derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163)
	Storage	**°C**	-25…+70
Maximum operating altitude		**m**	1000 without derating 1000…3000 derating the current by 1% per additional 100 m. Limited to 2000 m for the "Corner Grounded" distribution network
Operating position Maximum permanent angle in relation to the normal vertical mounting position	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71H●●●M3X ATV 71H●●●N4 ATV 71W●●●N4Z		10˚ 10˚
	ATV 71P●●●N4Z		3˚ 3˚ 3˚ 3˚

⊕ Telemecanique

11
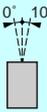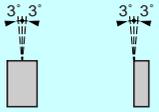
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Drive characteristics

Output frequency range	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X…HD37M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD37N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD37N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z	**Hz**	0…1600
	ATV 71HD45M3X…HD75M3X ATV 71HD45N4…HC50N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4	**Hz**	0…500
Configurable switching frequency	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD30N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD30N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z	**kHz**	Nominal switching frequency: 4 kHz without derating in continuous operation. Adjustable during operation from 1…16 kHz Above 4 kHz, see derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163.
	ATV 71HD18M3X, HD45M3X ATV 71HD37N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD37N4…WD75N4	**kHz**	Nominal switching frequency: 2.5 kHz without derating in continuous operation. Adjustable during operation from 1…16 kHz Above 2.5 kHz, see derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163.
	ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4	**kHz**	Nominal switching frequency: 2.5 kHz without derating in continuous operation. Adjustable during operation from 2.5…8 kHz Above 2.5 kHz, see derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163.
Speed range			1…1000 in closed-loop mode with incremental encoder feedback 1…100 in open-loop mode without speed feedback
Speed accuracy	For a torque variation of 0.2 Tn to Tn		± 0.01% of nominal speed, in closed-loop mode with incremental encoder feedback ±10% of nominal slip, without speed feedback
Torque accuracy			± 5% in closed-loop mode with incremental encoder feedback ± 15% in open-loop mode without speed feedback
Transient overtorque			170% of the nominal motor torque (typical value at ± 10%) for 60 s 220% of the nominal motor torque (typical value at ± 10%) for 2 s
Braking torque			30% of the rated motor torque without braking resistor (typical value) Up to 150% with braking or hoist resistor installed as an option, see pages 63 and 65
Maximum transient current			150% of the nominal drive current for 60 s (typical value) 165% of the nominal drive current for 2 s (typical value)
Permanent torque at 0 Hz	ATV 71H037M3…HD45M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 ATV 71W●●●N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		The Altivar 71 drive can continuously supply the peak value of the drive nominal current
	ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4		The Altivar 71 drive can continuously supply 80% of the peak value of the drive nominal current
Motor control profile	Asynchronous motor		Flux Vector Control (FVC) with sensor (current vector) Sensorless Flux Vector Control (FVC) (voltage or current vector) Voltage/frequency ratio (2 or 5 points) ENA (ENergy Adaptation) System for unbalanced loads
	Synchronous motor		Vector control without speed feedback
Frequency loop			PI regulator with adjustable structure for a speed response adapted to the machine (accuracy, speed)
Slip compensation			Automatic whatever the load. Can be suppressed or adjusted Not available in voltage/frequency ratio

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Electrical power characteristics

Power supply	Voltage	**V**	200 - 15%...240 + 10% single phase for ATV 71H075M3...HU75M3 200 - 15%...240 + 10% 3-phase for ATV 71H●●●M3 and ATV 71H●●●M3X 380 - 15%...480 + 10% 3-phase for ATV 71H●●●N4
	Frequency	**Hz**	50 - 5%...60 + 5%
Signalling			1 red LED: LED lit indicates the presence of drive voltage
Output voltage			Maximum 3-phase voltage equal to line supply voltage
Drive noise level			Conforming to directive 86-188/EEC
	ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU22N4	**dBA**	43
	ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU40N4 ATV 71WU30N4, WU40N4	**dBA**	54.5
	ATV 71HU55M3 ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71WU55N4, WU75N4	**dBA**	55.6
	ATV 71HU75M3 ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	**dBA**	57.4
	ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4 ATV 71WD15N4, WD18N4	**dBA**	60.2
	ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X ATV 71HD22N4 ATV 71WD22N4	**dBA**	59.9
	ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4 ATV 71WD30N4, WD37N4	**dBA**	64
	ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4	**dBA**	63.7
	ATV 71HD55M3X ATV 71HD90N4	**dBA**	60.5
	ATV 71HD75M3X ATV 71HC11N4	**dBA**	69.5
	ATV 71HC13N4, HC16N4	**dBA**	66
	ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4	**dBA**	68
	ATV 71HC31N4, HC40N4	**dBA**	70
	ATV 71HC50N4	**dBA**	71
	ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	**dBA**	0 With fan kit: 43
	ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	**dBA**	0 With fan kit: 54.5
	ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	**dBA**	0 With fan kit: 55.6
Electrical isolation			Between power and control (inputs, outputs, power supplies)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Connection cable characteristics

Type of cable for	Mounting in an enclosure		Single-strand IEC cable, ambient temperature 45°C, copper 90°C XLPE/EPR or copper 70°C PVC
	Mounting in an enclosure with an IP 21 or IP 31 kit		3-strand IEC cable, ambient temperature 40°C, copper 70°C PVC
	Mounting in an enclosure with a NEMA Type 1 kit		3-strand UL 508 cable except for choke (2-strand UL 508 cable), ambient temperature 40°C, copper 75°C PVC

Connection characteristics (terminals for the power supply, the motor, the DC bus and the braking resistor)

Drive terminals		L1/R, L2/S, L3/T, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3	PC/-, PO, PA/+	PA, PB
Maximum wire size and tightening torque	ATV 71H037M3…HU40M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU40N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU40N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU40N4Z	4 mm², AWG 10 1.4 Nm, 12.3 lb.in		
	ATV 71HU55M3 ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71WU55N4, WU75N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	6 mm², AWG 8 3 Nm, 26.5 lb.in		
	ATV 71HU75M3 ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	16 mm², AWG 4 3 Nm, 26.5 lb.in		
	ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4 ATV 71WD15N4, WD18N4	35 mm², AWG 2 5.4 Nm, 47.7 lb.in		
	ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X ATV 71HD22N4…HD37N4 ATV 71WD22N4…WD37N4	50 mm², AWG 1/0 12 Nm, 102,2 lb.in		
	ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4	150 mm², 300 MCM 41 Nm, 360 lb.in		
	ATV 71HD55M3X ATV 71HD90N4	2 x 100 mm², 2 x 250 MCM M10, 24 Nm, 212 lb.in	2 x 100 mm², 2 x 250 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	60 mm², 250 MCM M8, 12 Nm, 106 lb.in
	ATV 71HD75M3X, HC11N4	2 x 100 mm², 2 x 250 MCM M10, 24 Nm, 212 lb.in	2 x 150 mm², 2 x 250 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	60 mm², 250 MCM M8, 12 Nm, 106 lb.in
	ATV 71HC13N4	2 x 120 mm², 2 x 250 MCM M10, 24 Nm, 212 lb.in	2 x 120 mm², 2 x 250 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	120 mm², 250 MCM M10, 24 Nm, 212 lb.in
	ATV 71HC16N4	2 x 150 mm², 2 x 350 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	2 x 150 mm², 2 x 350 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	120 mm², 250 MCM M10, 24 Nm, 212 lb.in
	ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4	4 x 185 mm², 3 x 350 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	4 x 185 mm², 3 x 350 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	–
	ATV 71HC31N4	4 x 185 mm², 4 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	8 x 185 mm², 4 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	–
	ATV 71HC40N4	**R/L1.1, S/L2.1, T/L3.1, R/L1.2, S/L2.2, T/L3.2** 2 x 2 x 185 mm², 4 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in **U/T1, V/T2, W/T3** 4 x 185 mm², 4 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	8 x 185 mm², 4 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	–
	ATV 71HC50N4	**R/L1.1, S/L2.1, T/L3.1, R/L1.2, S/L2.2, T/L3.2** 2 x 4 x 185 mm², 2 x 3 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in **U/T1, V/T2, W/T3** 6 x 185 mm², 5 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	8 x 185 mm², 5 x 500 MCM M12, 41 Nm, 360 lb.in	–

⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Electrical control characteristics

Internal supplies available		Short-circuit and overload protection: ■ 1 x 10.5 V ⎓ ± 5% supply for the reference potentiometer (1 to 10 kΩ), maximum current 10 mA ■ 1 x 24 V ⎓ supply (min. 21 V, max. 27 V), maximum current 200 mA.
External + 24 V power supply *(1)* (not supplied)		+24 V ⎓ (min. 19 V, max. 30 V) Power 30 W
Analog inputs	AI1-/AI1+	1 bipolar differential analog input ± 10 V ⎓ (maximum safe voltage 24 V) Max. sampling time: 2 ms ± 0.5 ms Resolution: 11 bits + 1 sign bit Accuracy: ± 0.6% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.15% of the maximum value
	AI2	1 software-configurable voltage or current analog input: ■ Voltage analog input 0...10 V ⎓, impedance 30 kΩ (max. safe voltage 24 V) ■ Current analog input X-Y mA by programming X and Y from 0 to 20 mA, with impedance 242 Ω Max. sampling time: 2 ms ± 0.5 ms Resolution: 11 bits Accuracy: ± 0.6% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.15% of the maximum value
	Other inputs	See option cards
Configurable voltage and current analog outputs	AO1	1 analog output configurable for voltage or current: ■ Voltage analog output 0...10 V ⎓, minimum load impedance 470 Ω ■ Current analog output X-Y mA by programming X and Y from 0 to 20 mA, maximum load impedance 500 Ω Max. sampling time: 2 ms ± 0.5 ms Resolution: 10 bits Accuracy: ± 1% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.2%
	Other outputs	See option cards
Configurable relay outputs	R1A, R1B, R1C	1 relay logic output, one "N/C" contact and one "N/O" contact with common point Minimum switching capacity: 3 mA for 24 V ⎓ Maximum switching capacity: ■ On resistive load (cos φ = 1): 5 A for 250 V ∿ or 30 V ⎓ ■ On inductive load (cos φ = 0.4 and L/R = 7 ms): 2 A for 250 V ∿ or 30 V ⎓ Max. response time: 7 ms ± 0.5 ms Electrical service life: 100,000 operations
	R2A, R2B	1 relay logic output, one "N/O" contact Minimum switching capacity: 3 mA for 24 V ⎓ Maximum switching capacity: ■ On resistive load (cos φ = 1): 5 A for 250 V ∿ or 30 V ⎓ ■ On inductive load (cos φ = 0.4 and L/R = 7 ms): 2 A for 250 V ∿ or 30 V ⎓ Max. response time: 7 ms ± 0.5 ms Electrical service life: 100,000 operations
	Other outputs	See option cards
Logic inputs LI	LI1...LI5	5 programmable logic inputs, 24 V ⎓, compatible with level 1 PLC, IEC 65A-68 standard Impedance: 3.5 kΩ Maximum voltage: 30 V Max. sampling time: 2 ms ± 0.5 ms Multiple assignment makes it possible to configure several functions on one input (example: LI1 assigned to forward and preset speed 2, LI3 assigned to reverse and preset speed 3)
	LI6	1 logic input, switch-configurable as a logic input or as an input for PTC probes Logic input, characteristics identical to inputs LI1...LI5 Input for a maximum of 6 PTC probes mounted in series: ■ nominal value < 1.5 kΩ ■ trip resistance 3 kΩ, reset value 1.8 kΩ ■ short-circuit protection < 50 Ω
	Positive logic (Source)	State 0 if ⩽ 5 V or logic input not wired, state 1 if ⩾ 11 V
	Negative logic (Sink)	State 0 if ⩾ 16 V or logic input not wired, state 1 if ⩽ 10 V
	Other inputs	See option cards
Safety input	PWR	1 input for the Power Removal safety function: ■ Power supply: 24 V ⎓ (max. 30 V) ■ Impedance: 1.5 kΩ ■ State 0 if < 2 V, state 1 if > 17 V
Maximum I/O wire size and tightening torque for inputs/outputs		2.5 mm² (AWG 14) 0.6 Nm

(1) Please consult our specialist catalogue "Power supplies, splitter blocks and interfaces".

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Characteristics (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Electrical control characteristics (continued)

Acceleration and deceleration ramps			Ramp profiles: ■ Linear, can be adjusted separately from 0.01 to 9999 s ■ S, U or customized Automatic adaptation of deceleration ramp time if braking capacities exceeded, possible inhibition of this adaptation (use of braking resistor).
Braking to a standstill			By DC injection: ■ By a command on a programmable logic input ■ Automatically as soon as the estimated output frequency drops to < 0.1 Hz, period adjustable from 0 to 60 s or continuous, current adjustable from 0 to 1.2 In (in open-loop mode only).
Main drive protection and safety features			Thermal protection: ■ Against overheating ■ Of the power stage Protection against: ■ Short-circuits between motor phases ■ Input phase breaks ■ Overcurrents between output phases and earth ■ Overvoltages on the DC bus ■ A break on the control circuit ■ Exceeding the limit speed Safety function for: ■ Line supply overvoltage and undervoltage ■ Input phase loss, in 3-phase
Motor protection (see page 200)			Thermal protection integrated in drive via continuous calculation of I^2t taking speed into account: ■ The motor thermal state is saved when the drive is powered down. ■ Function can be modified via operator dialogue terminals, depending on the type of motor (force-cooled or self-cooled). Protection against motor phase breaks Protection with PTC probes
Dielectric strength	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71H●●●M3X		Between earth and power terminals: 2830 V ⎓ Between control and power terminals: 4230 V ⎓
	ATV 71●●●●N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		Between earth and power terminals: 3535 V ⎓ Between control and power terminals: 5092 V ⎓
Insulation resistance to earth			> 1 MΩ (electrical isolation) 500 V ⎓ for 1 minute
Frequency resolution	Display units	**Hz**	0.1
	Analog inputs	**Hz**	0.024/50 Hz (11 bits)

Operational safety characteristics

Protection	Of the machine		Power Removal (PWR) safety function which forces stopping and/or prevents the motor from restarting unintentionally, conforming to EN 954-1 category 3 and draft standard IEC/EN 61800-5-2.
	Of the system process		Power Removal (PWR) safety function which forces stopping and/or prevents the motor from restarting unintentionally, conforming to IEC/EN 61508 level SIL2 and draft standard IEC/EN 61800-5-2.
Response time		**ms**	≤ 100 in STO (Safe Torque Off)

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Communication port characteristics

Modbus protocol

Type of connection		Modbus RJ45 connector port	Modbus RJ45 network port
Structure	Physical interface	2-wire RS 485	
	Transmission mode	RTU	
	Transmission speed	Configurable via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop: 9600 bps or 19,200 bps	Configurable via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop: 4800 bps, 9600 bps, 19,200 bps or 38.4 Kbps
	Format	Fixed = 8 bits, even parity, 1 stop	Configurable via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop: - 8 bits, odd parity, 1 stop - 8 bits, even parity, 1 stop - 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop - 8 bits, no parity, 2 stop
	Polarization	No polarization impedances These should be provided by the wiring system (for example, in the master)	
	Address	1 to 247, configurable via the terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop. 3 addresses can be configured in order to access the drive data, the "Controller Inside" programmable card and the communication card respectively. These 3 addresses are identical for the connector and network ports.	
Services	Functional profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control". I/O profile	
	Messaging	Read Holding Registers (03) 63 words maximum Write Single Register (06) Write Multiple Registers (16) 61 words maximum Read/Write Multiple Registers (23) 63/59 words maximum Read Device Identification (43) Diagnostics (08)	
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited. "Time out", which can be set between 0.1 s and 30 s	
Diagnostics	With LEDs on ATV 71H●●●M3Z, ATV 71HD11M3XZ, HD15M3XZ, ATV 71H075N4Z…HD75N4Z ATV 71P●●●N4Z	One activity LED on integrated 7-segment display terminal. One LED for each port.	
	With graphic display terminal	One activity LED Command word received Reference received For each port: ■ Number of frames received ■ Number of incorrect frames	

CANopen protocol

Type of connection		
Structure	Connector	9-way male SUB-D connector on CANopen adapter. This connects to the Modbus RJ45 network port.
	Network management	Slave
	Transmission speed	20 Kbps, 50 Kbps, 125 Kbps, 250 Kbps, 500 Kbps or 1 Mbps
	Address (Node ID)	1 to 127, configurable via the terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop.
Services	Number of PDOs	3 receive and 3 transmit (PDO1, PDO2 and PDO3)
	PDO modes	Event-triggered, Time-triggered, Remotely-requested, Sync (cyclic), Sync (acyclic)
	PDO linking	Yes
	PDO mapping	Configurable (PDO1 and PDO2)
	Number of SDOs	1 server
	Emergency	Yes
	CANopen application layer	CiA DS 301, V 4.02
	Profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control" I/O profile
	Communication monitoring	Node Guarding, Heartbeat
Diagnostics	With LEDs on ATV 71H●●●M3Z, ATV 71HD11M3XZ, HD15M3XZ, ATV 71H075N4Z…HD75N4Z ATV 71P●●●N4Z	2 LEDs: "RUN" and "ERROR" on integrated 7-segment display terminal
	With graphic display terminal and PowerSuite software workshop	2 LEDs: "RUN" and "ERROR" Command word received Reference received Display of received PDOs Display of transmitted PDOs State of NMT chart Received PDOs counter Transmitted PDOs counter Reception error counter Transmission error counter
Description file		A single eds file is supplied for the whole range on the CD-ROM containing the documentation or can be downloaded from the Internet at www.telemecanique.com. It contains the description of the drive parameters.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Torque characteristics (typical curves)

The curves opposite define the available continuous torque and transient overtorque for both force-cooled and self-cooled motors. The only difference is in the ability of the motor to provide a high continuous torque at less than half the nominal speed.

Open loop applications

1 Self-cooled motor: continuous useful torque *(1)*
2 Force-cooled motor: continuous useful torque
3 Overtorque for 60 s maximum
4 Transient overtorque for 2 s maximum
5 Torque in overspeed at constant power *(2)*
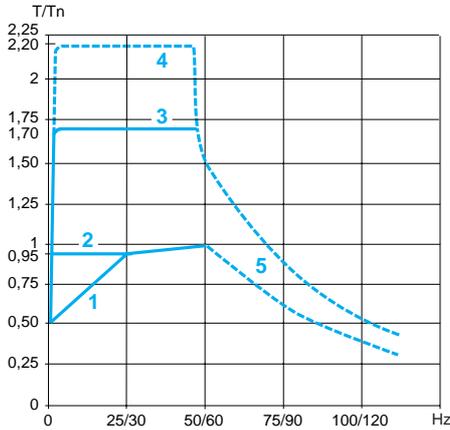
Open loop applications

Closed loop applications

1 Self-cooled motor: continuous useful torque *(1)*
2 Force-cooled motor: continuous useful torque
3 Overtorque for 60 s maximum
4 Transient overtorque for 2 s maximum
5 Torque in overspeed at constant power *(2)*
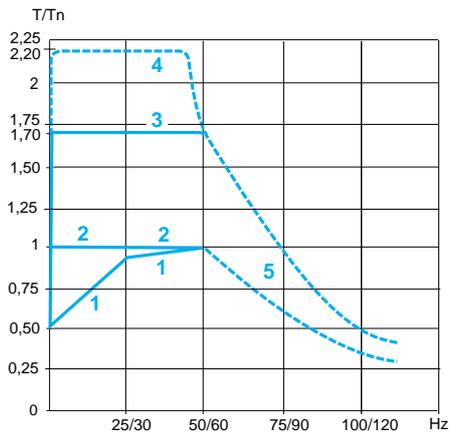
Altivar 71 drives are capable of supplying nominal torque continuously at zero speed.

Closed loop applications

Motor thermal protection

Altivar 71 drives feature thermal protection designed specifically for self-cooled or forced-cooled variable speed motors. The drive calculates the motor thermal state even when it is switched off.

This motor thermal protection is designed for a maximum ambient temperature of 40°C around the motor. If the temperature around the motor exceeds 40°C, thermal protection should be provided directly by thermistor probes (PTC) integrated in the motor. The probes are managed directly by the drive.

(1) For power ratings ≤ 250 W, derating is 20% instead of 50% at very low frequencies.
(2) The motor nominal frequency and the maximum output frequency can be adjusted
from 10 to 500 Hz or 1600 Hz, depending on the rating.
Check the mechanical overspeed characteristics of the selected motor with the manufacturer.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9
References: pages 22 to 25
Dimensions: pages 108 to 133
Schemes: pages 134 to 151
Functions: pages 172 to 203

18

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Special uses

Using Altivar 71 drives with synchronous motors

Altivar 71 drives are also suitable for powering synchronous motors (sinusoidal electromotive force) in open loop mode and are used to achieve performance levels comparable to those associated with an asynchronous motor in sensorless flux vector control.
This drive/motor combination makes it possible to obtain remarkable speed accuracy and maximum torque even at zero speed. The design and construction of synchronous motors are such that they offer enhanced power density and speed dynamics in a compact unit. Drive control for synchronous motors does not cause stalling.

Using special motors at high-speed

These motors are designed for constant torque applications with high frequency ranges. The Altivar 71 drive supports operating frequencies of up to 1600 Hz. By design, this type of motor is more sensitive to overvoltages than a standard motor. Various solutions are available:
■ Overvoltage limitation function
■ Output filters
The drive's 5-point voltage/frequency control ratio is particularly well-suited as it avoids resonance.

Using a motor at overspeed

The maximum output frequency of the drive can be adjusted from 10 to 1600 Hz for drives rated less than or equal to 37 kW and from 10 to 500 Hz for higher ratings. When using a standardized asynchronous motor at overspeed, check the mechanical overspeed characteristics of the selected motor with the manufacturer.
Above its nominal speed corresponding to a frequency of 50/60 Hz, the motor operates with a decreasing flux, and its torque decreases significantly (see curve opposite).
The application must be able to permit this type of low-torque, high-speed operation.

1 Machine torque (degressive torque)
2 Machine torque (low motor torque)
3 Continuous motor torque
Typical applications: wood-working machinery, broaching machines, high-speed hoisting, etc.
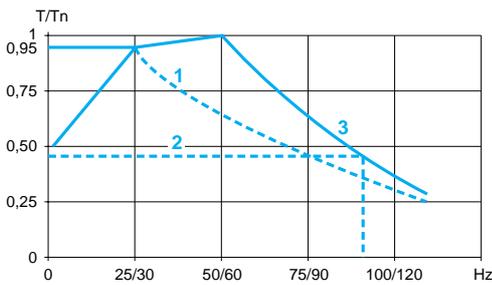
Using a motor at overspeed

Motor power less than drive power

The Altivar 71 can power any motor which has a rating lower than that for which the drive was designed. This motor/drive combination makes it suitable for applications requiring high, intermittent overtorque.
Typical applications: machines with very high starting torque, grinders, kneaders, etc.
Note: In this case, it is advisable to over-rate the drive to the next standard power rating immediately above that of the motor.
Example: Use an 11 kW motor with a 15 kW drive.
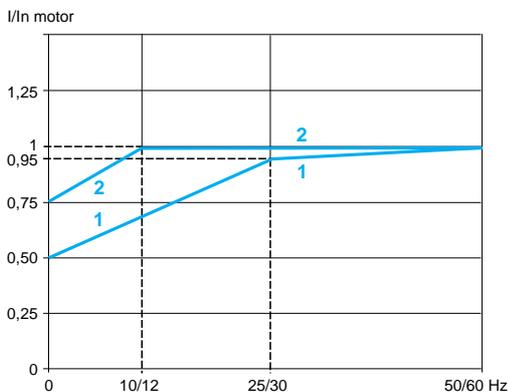
Power of a self-cooled motor greater than the drive power

This motor-drive combination makes it possible to use a self-cooled motor for a greater speed range in continuous operation. The use of a motor with a higher power rating than that of the drive is only possible if the current drawn by this motor is lower than or equal to the nominal drive current.
Note: Limit the motor power to the standard rating immediately above that of the drive.
Example: On a single machine, the use of a 2.2 kW drive combined with a 3 kW motor means that the machine can operate at its nominal power (2.2 kW) at low speed.
1 Motor power = drive power = 2.2 kW
2 2.2 kW drive combined with a 3 kW motor: greater speed range at 2.2 kW.

Power of a self-cooled motor greater than the drive power

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

In drive > In1 + In2 +…Inx
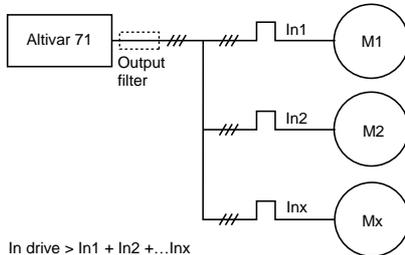
Connecting motors in parallel
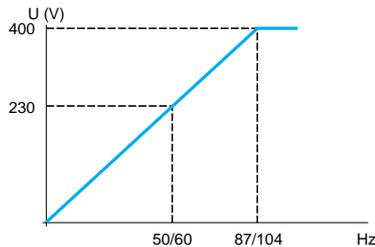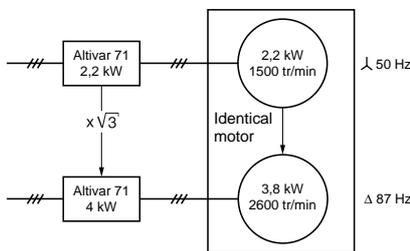
Using a motor at constant torque up to 87/104 Hz

Special uses (continued)

Connecting motors in parallel

The nominal current of the drive must be greater than or equal to the sum of the currents of the motors to be controlled.

In this case, provide external thermal protection for each motor using probes or thermal overload relays. For cable runs over a certain length, taking account of all the tap links, it is advisable either to install an output filter between the drive and the motors or to use the overvoltage limitation function.

If several motors are used in parallel, there are 2 possible scenarios:
■ The motors have equal power ratings, in which case the torque characteristics will remain optimized after the drive has been configured
■ The motors have different power ratings, in which case the torque characteristics will not be optimized for all the motors

Using a motor at constant torque up to 87/104 Hz

A 400 V, 50 Hz motor in 人 connection can be used at constant torque up to 87 Hz if it is in Δ connection.

In this particular case, the initial motor power and the power of the first associated drive are multiplied by $\sqrt{3}$ (it is therefore important to select a drive with a suitable rating).

Example: A 2.2 kW 50 Hz motor in 人 connection supplies 3.8 kW at 87 Hz with a Δ connection.

Note: Check the overspeed operating characteristics of the motor.

Using special motors

Special brake motors: tapered rotor or flux bypass

The magnetic field releases the brake. This type of operation with the Altivar 71 drive requires application of the voltage/frequency ratio.

Note: The no-load current may be high, and operation at low speed can only be intermittent.

Resistive rotor asynchronous motors

Different motor control ratios available on the Altivar 71 drive make it possible to apply specific settings when using high-slip motors.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

20

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
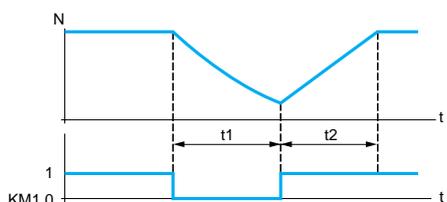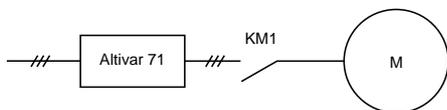
t1: deceleration without ramp (freewheel)
t2: acceleration with ramp
N: motor speed

Example of loss of output contactor

Special uses *(continued)*

Switching the motor at the drive output

The drive can be switched when locked or unlocked. If the drive is switched on-the-fly (drive unlocked), the motor is controlled and accelerates until it reaches the reference speed smoothly following the acceleration ramp. This use requires configuration of the automatic catching a spinning load ("catch on the fly") and the motor phase loss on output cut functions.

Typical applications: loss of safety circuit at drive output, bypass function, switching of motors connected in parallel.
On new installations, it is recommended that the Power Removal safety function is used.

Test on a low power motor or without a motor

In a testing or maintenance environment the drive can be checked without having to switch to a motor with the same rating as the drive (particularly useful in the case of high power drives). This use requires deactivation of the motor phase loss function.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

Telemecanique

21

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Supply voltage 200…240 V 50/60 Hz

ATV 71HU22M3Z

ATV 71H037M3

ATV 71HD37M3X

UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Motor		Line supply				Altivar 71				
Power indicated on plate *(1)*		Line current *(2)*		Apparent power	Maximum prospective line Isc	Maximum continuous current *(1)*	Max. transient current for		Reference	Weight
		200 V	240 V	240 V		230 V	60 s	2 s		
kW	*HP*	A	A	kVA	kA	A	A	A		kg
Single phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz										
0.37	*0.5*	6.9	5.8	1.4	5	3	4.5	4.9	**ATV 71H075M3** *(3) (4)*	3.000
0.75	*1*	12	9.9	2.4	5	4.8	7.2	7.9	**ATV 71HU15M3** *(3) (4)*	3.000
1.5	*2*	18.2	15.7	3.7	5	8	12	13.2	**ATV 71HU22M3** *(3) (4)*	3.000
2.2	*3*	25.9	22.1	5.3	5	11	16.5	18.1	**ATV 71HU30M3** *(3) (4)*	4.000
3	*–*	25.9	22	5.3	5	13.7	20.6	22.6	**ATV 71HU40M3** *(3) (4) (5)*	4.000
4	*5*	34.9	29.9	7	5	17.5	26.3	28.8	**ATV 71HU55M3** *(3) (4) (5)*	5.500
5.5	*7.5*	47.3	40.1	9.5	22	27.5	41.3	45.3	**ATV 71HU75M3** *(3) (4) (5)*	5.500
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz										
0.37	*0.5*	3.5	3.1	1.3	5	3	4.5	4.9	**ATV 71H037M3** *(3) (4)*	3.000
0.75	*1*	6.1	5.3	2.2	5	4.8	7.2	7.9	**ATV 71H075M3** *(3) (4)*	3.000
1.5	*2*	11.3	9.6	4	5	8	12	13.2	**ATV 71HU15M3** *(3) (4)*	3.000
2.2	*3*	15	12.8	5.3	5	11	16.5	18.1	**ATV 71HU22M3** *(3) (4)*	4.000
3	*–*	19.3	16.4	6.8	5	13.7	20.6	22.6	**ATV 71HU30M3** *(3) (4)*	4.000
4	*5*	25.8	22.9	9.5	5	17.5	26.3	28.8	**ATV 71HU40M3** *(3) (4)*	4.000
5.5	*7.5*	35	30.8	12.8	22	27.5	41.3	45.3	**ATV 71HU55M3** *(3) (4)*	5.500
7.5	*10*	45	39.4	16.4	22	33	49.5	54.5	**ATV 71HU75M3** *(3) (4)*	7.000
11	*15*	53.3	45.8	19	22	54	81	89.1	**ATV 71HD11M3X** *(3) (4) (6)*	9.000
15	*20*	71.7	61.6	25.6	22	66	99	109	**ATV 71HD15M3X** *(3) (4) (6)*	9.000
18.5	*25*	77	69	28.7	22	75	112	124	**ATV 71HD18M3X** *(3) (6)*	19.000
22	*30*	88	80	33.3	22	88	132	145	**ATV 71HD22M3X** *(3) (6)*	19.000
30	*40*	124	110	45.7	22	120	180	198	**ATV 71HD30M3X** *(3) (6)*	39.000
37	*50*	141	127	52.8	22	144	216	238	**ATV 71HD37M3X** *(3) (6)*	39.000
45	*60*	167	147	61.1	22	176	264	290	**ATV 71HD45M3X** *(3) (6)*	39.000
55	*75*	200	173	71.9	35	221	332	365	**ATV 71HD55M3X** *(6) (7) (8)*	59.000
75	*100*	271	232	96.4	35	285	428	470	**ATV 71HD75M3X** *(6) (7) (8)*	72.000

(1) These values are given for a nominal switching frequency of 4 kHz up to ATV 71HD15M3X or 2.5 kHz for ATV 71HD18M3X…HD75M3X drives for use in continuous operation.
The switching frequency is adjustable from 1…16 kHz up to ATV 71HD45M3X and from 1...8 kHz for ATV 71HD55M3X and ATV 71HD75M3X drives.
Above 2.5 or 4 kHz, depending on the rating, the drive will reduce the switching frequency automatically in the event of an excessive temperature rise. For continuous operation above the nominal switching frequency, derate the nominal drive current, see derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163.
(2) Typical value for the indicated motor power and for the maximum prospective line Isc.
(3) ATV 71HD55M3X and ATV HD75M3X are supplied as standard in a reinforced version for operation in specific environmental conditions (see the environmental conditions on page 11).
To order ATV 71H●●●M3 and ATV 71HD11M3X…ATV 71HD45M3X drives in a reinforced version for specific environmental conditions, add the following at the end of the reference:
*S337 for ATV 71H●●●M3. For example, ATV 71H037M3 becomes **ATV 71H037M3S337**,*
*337 for ATV 71H●●●M3X. For example, ATV 71HD11M3X becomes **ATV 71HD11M3X337**.*
If a reinforced version of the drive is supplied for particular environmental conditions, it will feature a remote graphic display terminal.
*(4) All drives come with a remote graphic display terminal as standard. To order an ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X or ATV 71HD15M3X drive without a graphic display terminal, add a **Z** at the end of the reference.*
The drive will then come equipped with an integrated 7-segment display terminal.
*For example, ATV 71H037M3 becomes **ATV 71H037M3Z**.*
(5) A line choke must be used, see page 84.
(6) Drive supplied without EMC filter. EMC filters are available as an option, see page 92.
(7) Drive supplied as standard with a DC choke, which must be used when connecting the drive to the 3-phase supply.
*For connections to the DC bus, the drive can be ordered without a DC choke by adding a **D** at the end of the reference.*
*For example, ATV 71HD55M3X becomes **ATV 71HD55M3XD**.*
(8) Drive supplied without plate for EMC mounting.
A choke appropriate for the drive rating is supplied in a UL Type 1, IP 21 or IP 31 kit, which must be ordered separately:
- For ATV 71H037M3…HD45M3X, order the kit for IP 21 conformity, see page 30,
- For ATV 71HD55M3X and HD75M3X, order the kit for UL Type 1 or IP 31 conformity, see pages 29 and 30.

Note: *Consult the summary tables of possible drives, option and accessory combinations, see pages 100 and 101.*

Presentation: pages 4 to 9	Characteristics: pages 10 to 17	Dimensions: pages 108 to 113	Schemes: pages 134 to 151	Functions: pages 172 to 203

22

⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Supply voltage 380…480 V 50/60 Hz

ATV 71HU22N4

ATV 71HU40N4Z

ATV 71HC28N4

UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Motor		Line supply				Altivar 71				Reference	Weight
Power indicated on plate (1)		Line current (2)		Apparent power	Maximum prospective line Isc	Maximum continuous current (1)		Max. transient current for			
		380 V	480 V	380 V		380 V	460 V	60 s	2 s		
kW	HP	A	A	kVA	kA	A	A	A	A		kg
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz											
0.75	1	3.7	3	2.4	5	2.3	2.1	3.5	3.8	**ATV 71H075N4** (3) (4)	3.000
1.5	2	5.8	5.3	3.8	5	4.1	3.4	6.2	6.8	**ATV 71HU15N4** (3) (4)	3.000
2.2	3	8.2	7.1	5.4	5	5.8	4.8	8.7	9.6	**ATV 71HU22N4** (3) (4)	3.000
3	–	10.7	9	7	5	7.8	6.2	11.7	12.9	**ATV 71HU30N4** (3) (4)	4.000
4	5	14.1	11.5	9.3	5	10.5	7.6	15.8	17.3	**ATV 71HU40N4** (3) (4)	4.000
5.5	7.5	20.3	17	13.4	22	14.3	11	21.5	23.6	**ATV 71HU55N4** (3) (4)	5.500
7.5	10	27	22.2	17.8	22	17.6	14	26.4	29	**ATV 71HU75N4** (3) (4)	5.500
11	15	36.6	30	24.1	22	27.7	21	41.6	45.7	**ATV 71HD11N4** (3) (4)	7.000
15	20	48	39	31.6	22	33	27	49.5	54.5	**ATV 71HD15N4** (3) (4)	16.000
18.5	25	45.5	37.5	29.9	22	41	34	61.5	67.7	**ATV 71HD18N4** (3) (4)	16.000
22	30	50	42	32.9	22	48	40	72	79.2	**ATV 71HD22N4** (3) (4)	19.000
30	40	66	56	43.4	22	66	52	99	109	**ATV 71HD30N4** (3) (4)	26.000
37	50	84	69	55.3	22	79	65	118.5	130	**ATV 71HD37N4** (3) (4)	26.000
45	60	104	85	68.5	22	94	77	141	155	**ATV 71HD45N4** (3) (4)	44.000
55	75	120	101	79	22	116	96	174	191	**ATV 71HD55N4** (3) (4)	44.000
75	100	167	137	109.9	22	160	124	240	264	**ATV 71HD75N4** (3) (4)	44.000
90	125	166	134	109.3	35	179	179	269	295	**ATV 71HD90N4** (5) (6)	60.000
110	150	202	163	133	35	215	215	323	355	**ATV 71HC11N4** (5) (6)	74.000
132	200	239	192	157.3	35	259	259	388	427	**ATV 71HC13N4** (5) (6)	80.000
160	250	289	233	190.2	50	314	314	471	518	**ATV 71HC16N4** (5) (6)	110.000
200	300	357	286	235	50	387	387	580	638	**ATV 71HC20N4** (5) (6)	140.000
220	350	396	320	260.6	50	427	427	640	704	**ATV 71HC25N4** (5) (6)	140.000
250	400	444	357	292.2	50	481	481	721	793		
280	450	494	396	325.1	50	550	550	825	907	**ATV 71HC28N4** (5) (6)	140.000
315	500	555	444	365.3	50	616	616	924	1016	**ATV 71HC31N4** (5) (6)	215.000
355	–	637	512	419.3	50	671	671	1006	1107	**ATV 71HC40N4** (5) (6)	225.000
400	600	709	568	466.6	50	759	759	1138	1252		
500	700	876	699	576.6	50	941	941	1411	1552	**ATV 71HC50N4** (5) (6)	300.000

(1) These values are given for a nominal switching frequency of 4 kHz up to ATV 71HD30N4 or 2.5 kHz for
ATV 71HD37N4…HC50N4 drives for use in continuous operation.
The switching frequency is adjustable from 1…16 kHz up to 71HD37N4…HC50N4 and from 2.5...8 kHz for
ATV 71HD90N4…ATV 71HC50N4 drives.
Above 2.5 or 4 kHz, depending on the rating, the drive will reduce the switching frequency automatically in the event of an
excessive temperature rise. For continuous operation above the nominal switching frequency, derate the nominal drive current,
see derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163.
(2) Typical value for the indicated motor power and for the maximum prospective line Isc.
(3) ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives are supplied as standard in a reinforced version for operation in specific environmental
conditions (see the environmental conditions on page 11).
To order the ATV 71H075N4...HD75N4 drives in a reinforced version, add **S337** at the end of the reference.
For example, ATV 71H075N4 becomes **ATV 71H075N4S337**.
If a reinforced version of the drive is supplied for specific environmental conditions, it will feature a remote graphic display terminal.
(4) All drives come with a remote graphic display terminal. To order an ATV 71H075N4...ATV 71HD75N4 drive without a graphic
display terminal, add a **Z** at the end of the reference. The drive will then come equipped with an integrated 7-segment display
terminal.
For example, ATV 71H075N4 without a graphic display terminal becomes **ATV 71H075N4Z**.
(5) Drive supplied as standard with a DC choke, which must be used when connecting the drive to the 3-phase supply.
For connections to the DC bus, the drive can be ordered without a DC choke by adding a **D** at the end of the reference.
For example, ATV 71HD90N4 becomes **ATV 71HD90N4D**.
(6) Drive supplied without plate for EMC mounting.
A choke appropriate for the drive rating is supplied in a UL Type 1, IP 21 or IP 31 kit, which must be ordered separately:
- For ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4, order the kit for IP 21 conformity, see page 30,
- For ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4, order the kit for UL Type 1 or IP 31 conformity, see pages 29 and 30.

Note: Consult the summary tables of possible drives, option and accessory combinations, see pages 102 and 103.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Supply voltage 380…480 V 50/60 Hz

PF105774-17-M

ATV 71W075N4

UL Type 12/IP 54 drives with an integrated class A EMC filter

Motor		Line supply				Altivar 71					
Power indicated on plate (1)		Line current (2)		Apparent power	Maximum prospective line Isc	Maximum continuous current (1)		Max. transient current for		Reference (3)	Weight
		380 V	480 V	380 V		380 V	460 V	60 s	2 s		
kW	HP	A	A	kVA	kA	A		A			kg
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz											
0.75	1	3.7	3	2.4	5	2.3	2.1	3.5	3.8	**ATV 71W075N4**	12.000
1.5	2	5.8	5.3	3.8	5	4.1	3.4	6.2	6.8	**ATV 71WU15N4**	12.000
2.2	3	8.2	7.1	5.4	5	5.8	4.8	8.7	9.6	**ATV 71WU22N4**	12.000
3	–	10.7	9	7	5	7.8	6.2	11.7	12.9	**ATV 71WU30N4**	13.000
4	5	14.1	11.5	9.3	5	10.5	7.6	15.8	17.3	**ATV 71WU40N4**	13.000
5.5	7.5	20.3	17	13.4	22	14.3	11	21.5	23.6	**ATV 71WU55N4**	16.000
7.5	10	27	22.2	17.8	22	17.6	14	26.4	29	**ATV 71WU75N4**	16.000
11	15	36.6	30	24.1	22	27.7	21	41.6	45.7	**ATV 71WD11N4**	21.000
15	20	48	39	31.6	22	33	27	49.5	54.5	**ATV 71WD15N4**	31.000
18.5	25	45.5	37.5	29.9	22	41	34	61.5	67.7	**ATV 71WD18N4**	31.000
22	30	50	42	32.9	22	48	40	72	79.2	**ATV 71WD22N4**	30.500
30	40	66	56	43.4	22	66	52	99	109	**ATV 71WD30N4**	38.500
37	50	84	69	55.3	22	79	65	118.5	130	**ATV 71WD37N4**	38.500
45	60	104	85	68.5	22	94	77	141	155	**ATV 71WD45N4**	61.500
55	75	120	101	79	22	116	96	174	191	**ATV 71WD55N4**	61.500
75	100	167	137	109.9	22	160	124	240	264	**ATV 71WD75N4**	61.500

*(1) These values are given for the nominal switching frequency of 4 kHz up to ATV 71WD30N4, or 2.5 kHz for
ATV 71WD37N4…WD75N4 drives for use in continuous operation.
The switching frequency is adjustable from 1…16 kHz for all ratings.
Above 2.5 or 4 kHz, depending on the rating, the drive will reduce the switching frequency automatically in the event of an
excessive temperature rise. For continuous operation above the nominal switching frequency, derate the nominal drive current,
see derating curves on page 169.*
(2) Typical value for the indicated motor power and for the maximum prospective line Isc.
(3) All drives are supplied with a plate for EMC mounting.

Note: *Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations, see pages 104 and 105.*

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71 on base plate
Supply voltage 380…480 V 50/60 Hz

PF105783-13-M

ATV 71PU40N4Z

UL Type 1/IP 20 drives on base plate with an integrated class A EMC filter

Motor		Line supply				Altivar 71				Reference *(3) (4) (5)*	Weight
Power indicated on plate *(1)*		Line current *(2)*		Apparent power	Maximum prospective line Isc	Maximum continuous current *(1)*		Max. transient current for			
		380 V	480 V	380 V		380 V	460 V	60 s	2 s		
kW	*HP*	A	A	kVA	kA	A	A	A	A		kg
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz											
0.75	*1*	3.7	3	2.4	5	2.3	2.1	3.5	3.8	**ATV 71P075N4Z**	2.700
1.5	*2*	5.8	5.3	3.8	5	4.1	3.4	6.2	6.8	**ATV 71PU15N4Z**	2.700
2.2	*3*	8.2	7.1	5.4	5	5.8	4.8	8.7	9.6	**ATV 71PU22N4Z**	2.700
3	*–*	10.7	9	7	5	7.8	6.2	11.7	12.9	**ATV 71PU30N4Z**	3.600
4	*5*	14.1	11.5	9.3	5	10.5	7.6	15.8	17.3	**ATV 71PU40N4Z**	3.600
5.5	*7.5*	20.3	17	13.4	22	14.3	11	21.5	23.6	**ATV 71PU55N4Z**	5.000
7.5	*10*	27	22.2	17.8	22	17.6	14	26.4	29	**ATV 71PU75N4Z**	5.000

(1) These values are given for a nominal switching frequency of 4 kHz for use in continuous operation.
The switching frequency is adjustable from 1…16 kHz.
Above 4 kHz, depending on the rating, the drive will reduce the switching frequency automatically in the event of an excessive temperature rise. For continuous operation above the nominal switching frequency, derate the nominal drive current, see derating curves on page 159.
(2) Typical value for the indicated motor power and for the maximum prospective line Isc.
(3) All ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives are equipped with an integrated 7-segment display terminal.
(4) A DC choke must be used, see page 81.
(5) All drives are supplied with a plate for EMC mounting and a thermal liner for mounting on the machine frame, see page 28.

Note: *Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations, see pages 106 and 107.*

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: accessories

Adapter for 115 V $\sim$ logic inputs

This adapter is used to connect 115 V $\sim$ logic signals to the logic inputs on the drive or an I/O extension card.

7 logic inputs with capacitive impedance at 60 Hz of 0.22 µF are available for connecting the logic signals:
■ Max. current: 200 mA
■ Response time: 5 ms to change from state 0 to state 1, 20 ms to change from state 1 to state 0
■ Logic state 0 for a voltage below 20 V, logic state 1 for a voltage between 70 V and 132 V
The power supply must be provided by a 115 V a external power supply (min. 70 V, max. 132 V).

References

Description	Reference	Weight kg
Adapter for 115 V $\sim$ logic inputs	**VW3 A3 101**	–

Ready-assembled IP 54 base plate (for ATV 71W●●●N4 drives)

This plate can be used to increase the number of cable connections supported by the drive as standard from 3 to 11.

Ready-assembled IP 54 base plate

It is supplied with:
■ A metal cable gland for the motor cable
■ A special plastic cable gland for the network cable
■ Plastic cable glands for the connection of the control cable or options such as communication cards, etc.

References

For drive	Type of cable gland			Reference	Weight kg
	Metal	**Plastic**	**Plastic for network cable**		
ATV 71W075N4 …WU40N4	1 (ISO 25)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 3 (ISO 20), 1 (ISO 25)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 901**	–
ATV 71WU55N4, WU75N4	1 (ISO 25)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 3 (ISO 20), 1 (ISO 25)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 902**	–
ATV 71WD11N4	1 (ISO 32)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 1 (ISO 20), 3 (ISO 32)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 903**	–
ATV 71WD15N4, WD18N4	1 (ISO 32)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 1 (ISO 20), 3 (ISO 32)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 904**	–
ATV 71WD22N4	1 (ISO 40)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 1 (ISO 20), 3 (ISO 40)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 905**	–
ATV 71WD30N4, WD37N4	1 (ISO 40)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 1 (ISO 20), 3 (ISO 50)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 906**	–
ATV 71WD45N4 …WD75N4	1 (ISO 50)	1 (ISO 12), 4 (ISO 16), 1 (ISO 20), 1 (ISO 50), 1 (ISO 63)	1 (ISO 32)	**VW3 A3 907**	–

Control card fan kit
(for ATV 71H●●●●● drives on heatsink)

This kit is required for ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X and ATV 71HD22N4…HD75N4 drives in order that they can operate at ambient temperatures between 50°C and 60°C, for example if they are mounted in an IP 54 enclosure. The circulation of the air around the electronic cards prevents the formation of hot spots.
Check the derating to be applied to the drive nominal current, see the derating curves on pages 159 and 161 to 163.
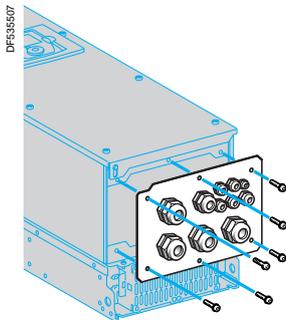
The kit **1** is mounted on the upper part of the drive. It is powered by the drive. It consists of:
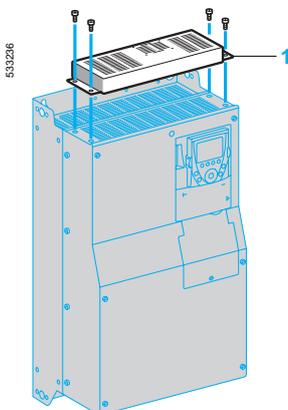■ A fan subassembly
■ Fixing accessories
■ A manual

Control card fan kit

References

For drives	Reference	Weight kg
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X ATV 71HD22N4	**VW3 A9 404**	–
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4	**VW3 A9 405**	–
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X	**VW3 A9 406**	–
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4	**VW3 A9 407**	–

Telemecanique
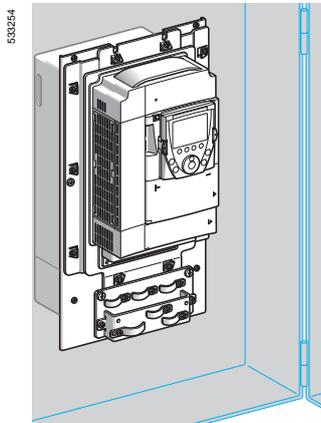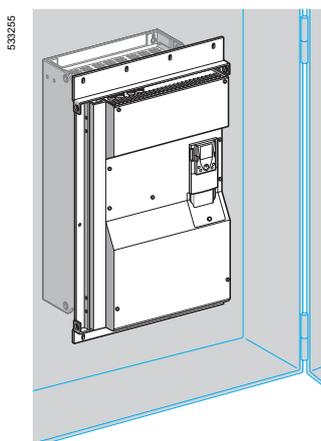
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: accessories

ATV 71HU75N4 flush-mounted drive

ATV 71HC28N4D flush-mounted drive

Kit for flush-mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure
(for ATV 71H●●●●● drives on heatsink)

This kit can be used to mount the power section of the drive outside the enclosure (IP 54 degree of protection), which reduces the power dissipated into the enclosure, see page 164.
It is available for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71HD55M3XD, HD75M3XD, ATV 71H●●●N4 and ATV 71HD90N4D…HC28N4D drives.

With this type of mounting, the maximum internal temperature in the enclosure can then reach 60°C without it being necessary to derate the drive current.
Between 50°C and 60°C, a control card fan kit must be used for
ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X and ATV 71HD22N4…HD75N4 drives to prevent hot spots, see page 26.

The back of the enclosure must be drilled and cut out for this type of mounting.

The kit consists of:
■ A metal frame of the right size for the drive rating
■ Corner pieces
■ Corner pieces
■ A fan support (this can be used to move the fans so that they can be accessed from the front of the enclosure).
■ Fixing accessories
■ A cutting and drilling template
■ A manual

References

For drives		Reference	Weight kg
ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4		**VW3 A9 501**	2.700
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3 ATV 71HU30N4, HU40N4		**VW3 A9 502**	3.100
ATV 71HU55M3 ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4		**VW3 A9 503**	3.700
ATV 71HU75M3 ATV 71HD11N4		**VW3 A9 504**	4.600
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4		**VW3 A9 505**	4.900
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X ATV 71HD22N4		**VW3 A9 506**	3.900
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4		**VW3 A9 507**	4.200
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X		**VW3 A9 508**	4.900
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4		**VW3 A9 509**	5.200
ATV 71HD55M3X *(1)* ATV 71HD55M3XD *(2)* ATV 71HD90N4 *(1)* ATV 71HD90N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 510**	5.100
ATV 71HD75M3X *(1)* ATV 71HD75M3XD *(2)* ATV 71HC11N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC11N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 511**	3.600
ATV 71HC13N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC13N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 512**	4.300
ATV 71HC16N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC16N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 513**	4.400
ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC20N4D…HC28N4D *(2)*	Without braking unit	**VW3 A9 514**	4.700
	With braking unit	**VW3 A9 515**	4.700

(1) Drives supplied as standard with a DC choke. In this case, cut out and drill the enclosure for the choke. See pages 116 and 117.
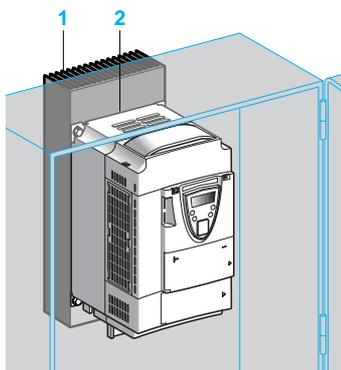*(2) Drives supplied without DC choke.*

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: accessories

*ATV 71PU22N4Z drive in a dust
and damp proof enclosure*

Kit for mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure
(for ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives on base plate)

This kit can be used to mount a drive "on base plate" inside a dust and damp proof enclosure (IP 54 degree of protection). Heat is dissipated via a heatsink mounted outside the enclosure.

This type of mounting simply requires that a hole be drilled in the enclosure at the same level as the drive fixing holes used to mount the heatsink.

The kit consists of:
■ A heatsink **1**
■ A thermal liner **2**
■ Hinged mechanical adapters
■ A manual

Enclosure characteristics
The steel used for the floor-standing or wall-mounted enclosure which is to house the drive must meet the following requirements:
■ Depth 1.5 to 3 mm
□ Steel: Stainless or paint-finished smooth steel
□ Heat-treated epoxy paintwork (lacquer finish not permitted),
max. depth 70 μm, fine or medium texture

References		
For drives	**Reference**	**Weight kg**
ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	**VW3 A9 801**	–
ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	**VW3 A9 802**	–
ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	**VW3 A9 803**	–

Fan for variable speed drives on base plate
This fan **1** is required for ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives if they are not equipped with a DC choke (see page 78).

It is mounted on the lower part of the drive, thereby enabling installation dimensions to be optimized. It is powered by the drive.

References		
For drives	**Reference**	**Weight kg**
ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	**VZ3 V1 203**	–
ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	**VZ3 V1 209**	–
ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	**VZ3 V1 204**	–
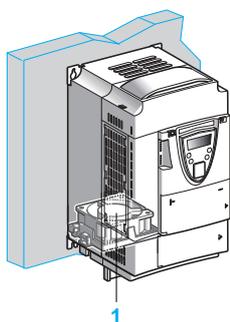
*ATV 71PU22N4Z drive
with fan VZ3 V1 203*

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: accessories

Kit for UL Type 1 conformity (mounting outside the enclosure)

When the drive is mounted directly on a wall outside the enclosure, this kit can be used to ensure UL Type 1 conformity when connecting the cables with a tube. The shielding is connected inside the kit.

For ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71H075N4...HD75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z, the kit consists of:
■ All the mechanical parts **1** including a pre-cut plate **2** for connecting the tubes **3**
■ Fixing accessories
■ A manual

For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4, the kit consists of:
■ An IP 54 casing **4** used to maintain the IP 54 degree of protection for the power section
■ An EMC plate **5**
■ A UL Type 1 cover **7**
■ A pre-drilled plate **6** for connecting the tubes **3**,
■ Fixing accessories
■ A manual

UL Type 1 conformity kits

References

For drives		Reference	Weight kg
ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z		**VW3 A9 201**	1.300
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3 ATV 71HU30N4, HU40N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z		**VW3 A9 202**	1.500
ATV 71HU55M3 ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z		**VW3 A9 203**	1.800
ATV 71HU75M3 ATV 71HD11N4		**VW3 A9 204**	2.000
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4		**VW3 A9 205**	2.800
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X ATV 71HD22N4		**VW3 A9 206**	4.000
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4		**VW3 A9 207**	5.000
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X		**VW3 A9 217**	7.000
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4		**VW3 A9 208**	7.200
ATV 71HD55M3X *(1)* ATV 71HD55M3XD *(2)* ATV 71HD90N4 *(1)* ATV 71HD90N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 209**	9.400
ATV 71HD75M3X *(1)* ATV 71HD75M3XD *(2)* ATV 71HC11N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC11N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 210**	11.800
ATV 71HC13N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC13N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 211**	11.600
ATV 71HC16N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC16N4D *(2)*		**VW3 A9 212**	14.600
ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4 *(1)*	Without braking unit	**VW3 A9 213**	19.500
ATV 71HC20N4D…HC28N4D *(2)*	With braking unit	**VW3 A9 214**	19.500

(1) Drives supplied as standard with a DC choke.
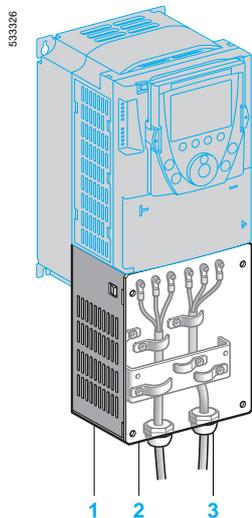*(2) Drives supplied without DC choke.*
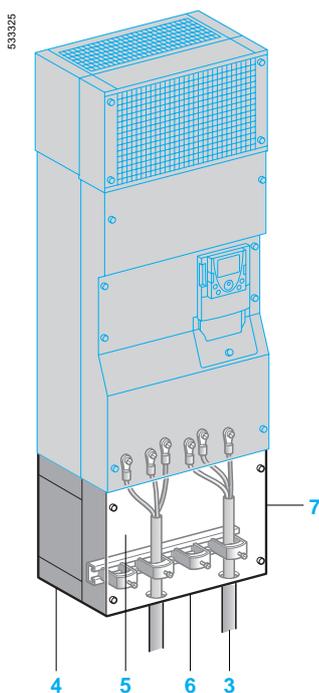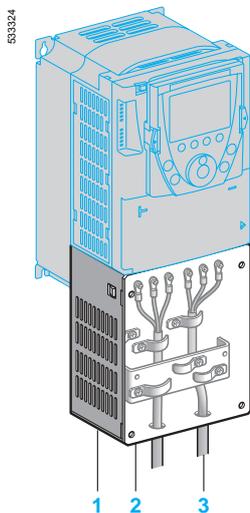
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: accessories

1 2   3

6

4   5

IP 21 or IP 31 conformity kits

Kits for IP 21 or IP 31 conformity (mounting outside the enclosure)

When the drive is mounted directly on a wall outside the enclosure, this kit can be used to ensure IP 21 or IP 31 degree of protection when connecting the cables with a cable gland.
The shielding is connected inside the kit.

For ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71H075N4...HD75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives, the kit conforms to IP 21 degree of protection.
It consists of:
■ All the mechanical parts **1** including a drilled plate **2** for fixing the cable glands **3**
■ Fixing accessories
■ A manual

For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4...HC50N4, the kit conforms to IP 31 degree of protection.
It consists of:
■ An IP 54 casing **4** used to maintain the IP 54 degree of protection for the power section
■ An EMC plate with cable clamps **5**
■ An IP 31 cover **6**
■ Fixing accessories
■ A manual
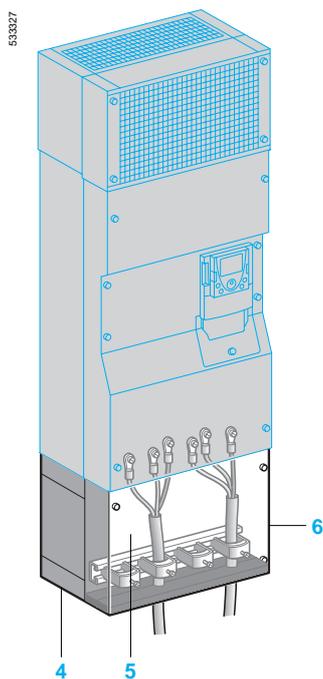
References

| For drives		Degree of protection	Reference	Weight kg
ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3 ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z		IP 21	**VW3 A9 101**	1.300
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3 ATV 71HU30N4, HU40N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z		IP 21	**VW3 A9 102**	1.500
ATV 71HU55M3 ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z		IP 21	**VW3 A9 103**	1.800
ATV 71HU75M3 ATV 71HD11N4		IP 21	**VW3 A9 104**	2.000
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4		IP 21	**VW3 A9 105**	2.800
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X ATV 71HD22N4		IP 21	**VW3 A9 106**	4.000
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4		IP 21	**VW3 A9 107**	5.000
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X		IP 21	**VW3 A9 117**	7.000
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4		IP 21	**VW3 A9 108**	7.000
ATV 71HD55M3X *(1)* ATV 71HD55M3XD *(2)* ATV 71HD90N4 *(1)* ATV 71HD90N4D *(2)*		IP 31	**VW3 A9 109**	9.400
ATV 71HD75M3X *(1)* ATV 71HD75M3XD *(2)* ATV 71HC11N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC11N4D *(2)*		IP 31	**VW3 A9 110**	11.800
ATV 71HC13N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC13N4D *(2)*		IP 31	**VW3 A9 111**	11.600
ATV 71HC16N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC16N4D *(2)*		IP 31	**VW3 A9 112**	14.600
ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC20N4D…HC28N4D *(2)*	Without braking unit	IP 31	**VW3 A9 113**	19.500
	With braking unit	IP 31	**VW3 A9 114**	19.500
ATV 71HC31N4, HC40N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC31N4D, HC40N4D *(2)*		IP 31	**VW3 A9 115**	25.000
ATV 71HC50N4 *(1)* ATV 71HC50N4D *(2)*		IP 31	**VW3 A9 116**	35.000

(1) Drives supplied as standard with a DC choke.
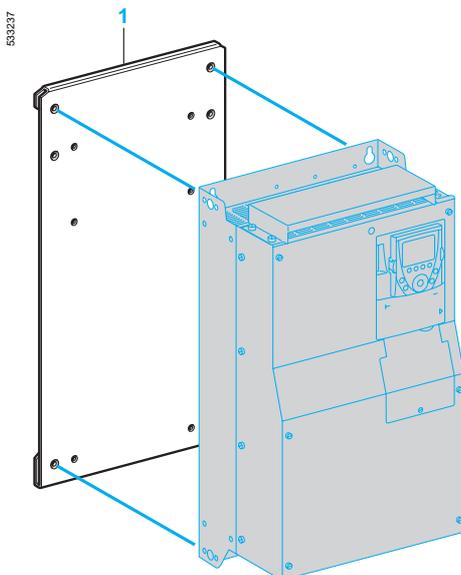*(2) Drives supplied without DC choke.*

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: accessories
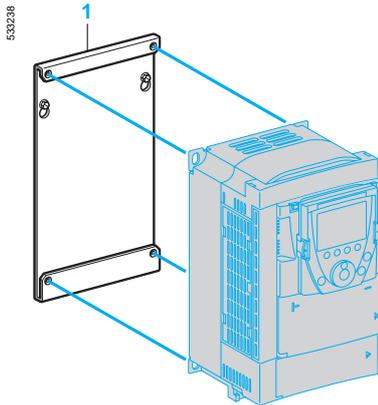
Substitution kit VW3 A9 304

Substitution kit VW3 A9 312

Substitution kit for Altivar 58 or Altivar 58F drives

This kit **1** is used to fit an Altivar 71 drive in the place of an Altivar 58 or Altivar 58F drive using the same fixing holes. It includes the mechanical adapters required for mounting.

High torque application (170% Tn)

Old drive	Motor Power		Replaced by	Reference	Weight
	kW	*HP*			kg
Supply voltage 200…240 V single phase					
ATV 58HU09M2	0.37	*0.5*	ATV 71H075M3	**VW3 A9 301**	–
ATV 58HU18M2	0.75	*1*	ATV 71HU15M3	**VW3 A9 301**	–
ATV 58HU29M2	1.5	*2*	ATV 71HU22M3	**VW3 A9 303**	–
ATV 58HU41M2	2.2	*3*	ATV 71HU30M3	**VW3 A9 303**	–
ATV 58HU72M2	3	*–*	ATV 71HU40M3	**VW3 A9 304**	–
ATV 58HU90M2	4	*5*	ATV 71HU55M3	**VW3 A9 306**	–
ATV 58HD12M2	5.5	*7.5*	ATV 71HU75M3	**VW3 A9 307**	–
Supply voltage 200…240 V three-phase					
ATV 58HU29M2	1.5	*2*	ATV 71HU15M3	**VW3 A9 302**	–
ATV 58HU41M2	2.2	*3*	ATV 71HU22M3	**VW3 A9 303**	–
ATV 58HU54M2	3	*–*	ATV 71HU30M3	**VW3 A9 304**	–
ATV 58HU72M2	4	*5*	ATV 71HU40M3	**VW3 A9 304**	–
ATV 58HU90M2	5.5	*7.5*	ATV 71HU55M3	**VW3 A9 306**	–
ATV 58HD12M2	7.5	*10*	ATV 71HU75M3	**VW3 A9 307**	–
ATV 58HD16M2X	11	*15*	ATV 71HD11M3X	**VW3 A9 309**	–
ATV 58HD23M2X	15	*20*	ATV 71HD15M3X	**VW3 A9 309**	–
ATV 58HD28M2X	18.5	*25*	ATV 71HD18M3X	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD33M2X	22	*30*	ATV 71HD22M3X	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD46M2X	30	*40*	ATV 71HD30M3X	**VW3 A9 314**	–
Supply voltage 380…480 V three-phase					
ATV 58HU18N4	0.75	*1*	ATV 71H075N4	**VW3 A9 302**	–
ATV 58HU29N4	1.5	*2*	ATV 71HU15N4	**VW3 A9 302**	–
ATV 58HU41N4	2.2	*3*	ATV 71HU22N4	**VW3 A9 302**	–
ATV 58HU54N4	3	*–*	ATV 71HU30N4	**VW3 A9 304**	–
ATV 58HU72N4	4	*5*	ATV 71HU40N4	**VW3 A9 304**	–
ATV 58HU90N4	5.5	*7.5*	ATV 71HU55N4	**VW3 A9 305**	–
ATV 58HD12N4	7.5	*10*	ATV 71HU75N4	**VW3 A9 306**	–
ATV 58HD16N4	11	*15*	ATV 71HD11N4	**VW3 A9 307**	–
ATV 58HD23N4	15	*20*	ATV 71HD15N4	**VW3 A9 308**	–
ATV 58HD28N4	18.5	*25*	ATV 71HD18N4	**VW3 A9 309**	–
ATV 58HD33N4	22	*30*	ATV 71HD22N4	**VW3 A9 310**	–
ATV 58HD46N4	30	*40*	ATV 71HD30N4	**VW3 A9 310**	–
ATV 58HD54N4	37	*50*	ATV 71HD37N4	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD64N4	45	*60*	ATV 71HD45N4	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD79N4	55	*75*	ATV 71HD55N4	**VW3 A9 312**	–

Standard torque application (120% Tn)

Old drive	Motor Power		Replaced by	Reference	Weight
	kW	*HP*			kg
Supply voltage 200…240 V three-phase					
ATV 58HD16M2X	15	*20*	ATV 71HD15M3X	**VW3 A9 309**	–
ATV 58HD23M2X	18.5	*25*	ATV 71HD18M3X	**VW3 A9 310**	–
ATV 58HD28M2X	22	*30*	ATV 71HD22M3X	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD33M2X	30	*40*	ATV 71HD30M3X	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD46M2X	37	*50*	ATV 71HD37M3X	**VW3 A9 312**	–
Supply voltage 380…480 V three-phase					
ATV 58HD28N4	22	*30*	ATV 71HD22N4	**VW3 A9 310**	–
ATV 58HD33N4	30	*40*	ATV 71HD30N4	**VW3 A9 310**	–
ATV 58HD46N4	37	*50*	ATV 71HD37N4	**VW3 A9 310**	–
ATV 58HD54N4	45	*60*	ATV 71HD45N4	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD64N4	55	*75*	ATV 71HD55N4	**VW3 A9 312**	–
ATV 58HD79N4	75	*100*	ATV 71HD75N4	**VW3 A9 312**	–

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71 ready-assembled in IP 54 enclosure
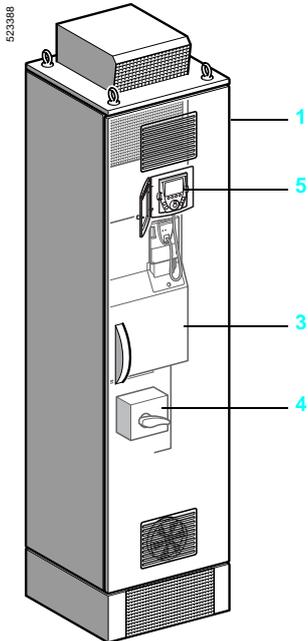
ATV 71E5D90N4…E5C28N4,
ATV 71E5C20N4F…E5C28N4F

Presentation

Altivar 71 variable speed drives rated from 90 kW to 500 kW can be supplied ready-assembled in an IP 54 enclosure to facilitate installation and, in particular, to ensure optimum ventilation.

This ATV 71E5●●●N4● offer comprises one or two IP 54 enclosures with a non-modifiable hardware configuration for a 380...480 V three phase supply only.

Description

The Altivar 71 ready-assembled in enclosure offer comprises:
■ One ready-assembled enclosure **1** or two ready-assembled enclosures **2** and **7** depending on the rating
■ A drive on heatsink ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 **3**
■ A switch and fast-acting fuses **4**
■ An IP 65 remote graphic display terminal kit **5**

This equipment is supplied with operating instructions containing all the:
■ Parts lists
■ Electrical diagrams
■ Mechanical drawings

Options

All the following options available for ATV 71H●●●N4 drives can be used at the same rating with the ATV 71E5●●●N4● enclosed drives offer (see the compatible combinations tables for Altivar 71 UL Type 1/IP 20 drives, pages 102 and 103):
■ Adaptor for 115 V $\sim$ logic inputs
■ Option cards: Communication, encoder interface, programmable "Controller inside" and I/O extension cards
■ Braking and hoisting resistors
■ Network braking units
■ Line chokes and passive filters
■ Additional EMC input filters
■ Sinus filters and motor chokes
■ PowerSuite software workshop
These options can be assembled according to customer requirements.

*Note: UL Type 1, IP 21 or IP 31 conformity kits are not necessary for this range.*

Resistance braking units

ATV 71E5D90N4…E5C16N4 ready-assembled enclosures include an integrated braking transistor in the drive.

ATV 71E5C20N4…E5C50N4 ready-assembled enclosures require a braking unit, which is controlled by the drive.
Assembly of the braking unit varies depending on the drive rating:
■ For ATV 71E5C20N4F…E5C28N4F enclosures, the braking unit is mounted directly in the enclosure, on the left-hand side of the drive.
■ For ATV 71E5C31N4...E5C50N4 enclosures, the VW3 A7E 102 braking unit is supplied in a separate IP 54 enclosure **6**. This enclosure must be installed between enclosures **2** and **7**:
□ Enclosure **7** contains the ATV 71HC31N4…HC50N4 drive **3**.
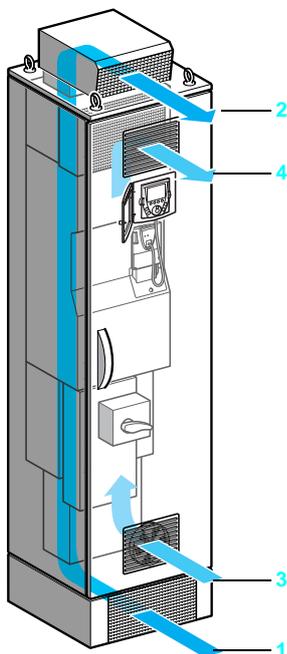□ Enclosure **2** contains the switch **4** and the fast acting fuses.
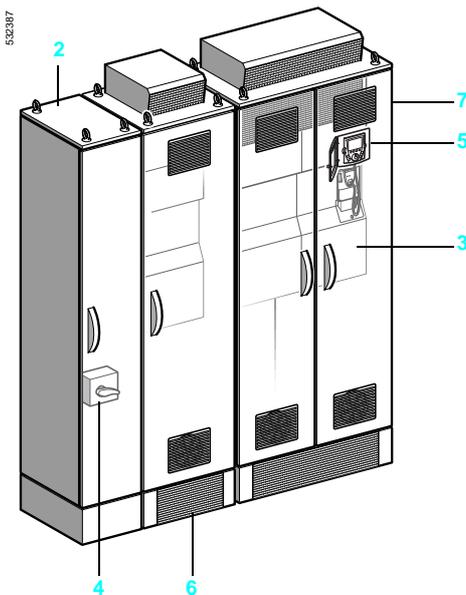
ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4 + VW3 A7E 102

Note: The order shown above is compulsory. The braking unit must be placed directly to the left of the drive.

⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71 ready-assembled in IP 54 enclosure

Ventilation

Two separate air circuits ensure optimum enclosure ventilation by cooling the power section and the control section.

Power section:
1 Air intake is via an IP 54 grille on the front of the plinth.
2 Air is expelled via an IP 54 grille on the front of the enclosure roof.

Control section:
3 Air intake is via a fan with IP 54 filter on the lower part of the enclosure door.
4 Air is expelled via an IP 54 grille with filter on the upper part of the enclosure door.

Characteristics specific to the ATV 71E5●●●N4● offer *(1)*

Maximum external temperature of enclosure	+ 40°C without derating
Line supply connection	Directly to the switch, cable entry required at base of enclosure
Motor connection	Directly to the drive, cable entry required at base of enclosure
Control terminal connection	Directly to the drive's control terminals
Colour of SAREL Spacial 6000 Cell Enclosures	RAL 7032

(1) For other characteristics, see page 10.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71 ready-assembled in IP 54 enclosure

ATV 71E5D90N4…E5C28N4,
ATV 71E5C20N4F…E5C28N4F

ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4
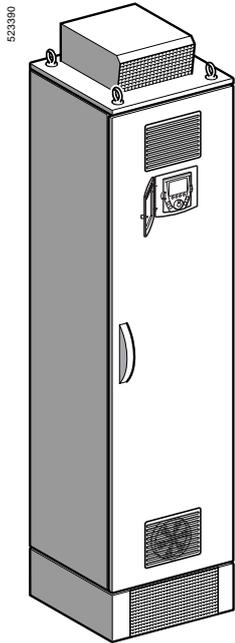
References

Description	Motor Power		With drive	Reference	Weight
	kW	HP			kg
Ready-assembled enclosure with integrated braking transistor in the drive	90	125	ATV 71HD90N4	**ATV 71E5D90N4**	280.000
	110	150	ATV 71HC11N4	**ATV 71E5C11N4**	300.000
	132	200	ATV 71HC13N4	**ATV 71E5C13N4**	310.000
	160	250	ATV 71HC16N4	**ATV 71E5C16N4**	340.000
Ready-assembled enclosure with braking unit in the enclosure	200	300	ATV 71HC20N4	**ATV 71E5C20N4F**	603.000
	250	400	ATV 71HC25N4	**ATV 71E5C25N4F**	603.000
	280	450	ATV 71HC28N4	**ATV 71E5C28N4F**	603.000
Ready-assembled enclosure without braking unit	200	300	ATV 71HC20N4	**ATV 71E5C20N4** *(1)*	430.000
	250	400	ATV 71HC25N4	**ATV 71E5C25N4** *(1)*	430.000
	280	450	ATV 71HC28N4	**ATV 71E5C28N4** *(1)*	430.000
	315	500	ATV 71HC31N4	**ATV 71E5C31N4** *(2)*	748.000
	400	600	ATV 71HC40N4	**ATV 71E5C40N4** *(2)*	806.000
	500	700	ATV 71HC50N4	**ATV 71E5C50N4** *(2)*	938.000
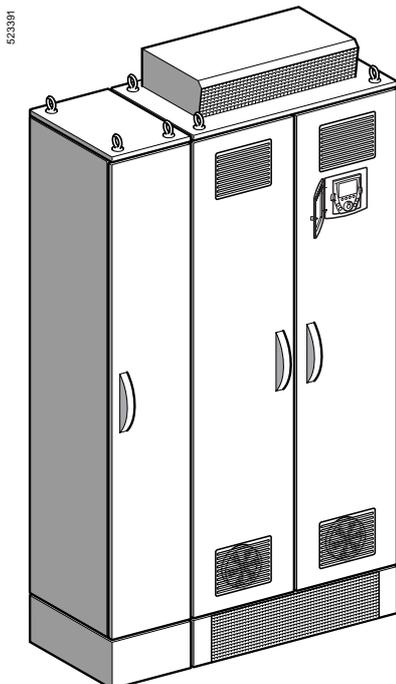
Option specific to ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4 drives

| Description	For drive	Reference	Weight kg
IP 54 enclosure with braking unit	ATV 71E5C31N4 ATV 71E5C40N4 ATV 71E5C50N4	**VW3 A7E 102**	262.000

(1) To add a compatible braking unit, order reference ATV 71E5C20N4F…ATV 71E5C28N4F depending on the rating required. The braking unit is then supplied mounted in the enclosure next to the drive.
(2) Braking unit in IP 54 enclosure to be ordered separately (see reference above).

Telemecanique

Dimensions

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71 ready-assembled in IP 54 enclosure

ATV 71E5D90N4…E5C28N4, ATV 71E5C20N4F…E5C28N4F
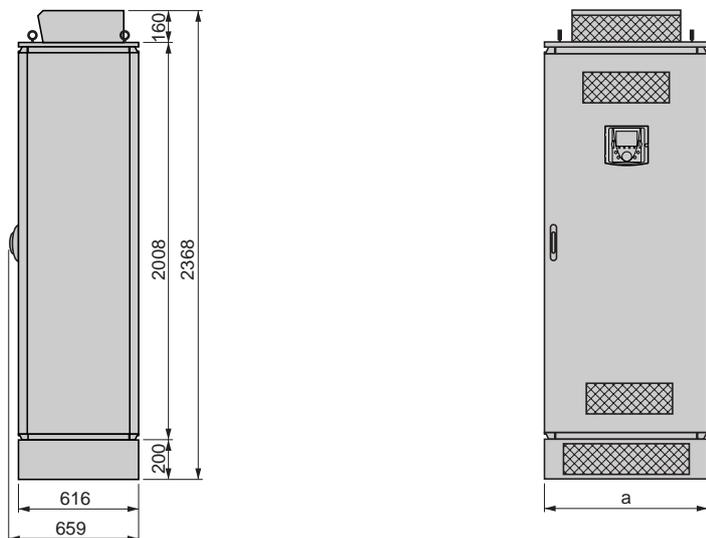
ATV 71E5	a
D90N4…C16N4	616
C20N4…C28N4,	816
C20N4F…C28N4F	816

ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4

Common side view	ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4 without braking unit	ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4 with braking unit
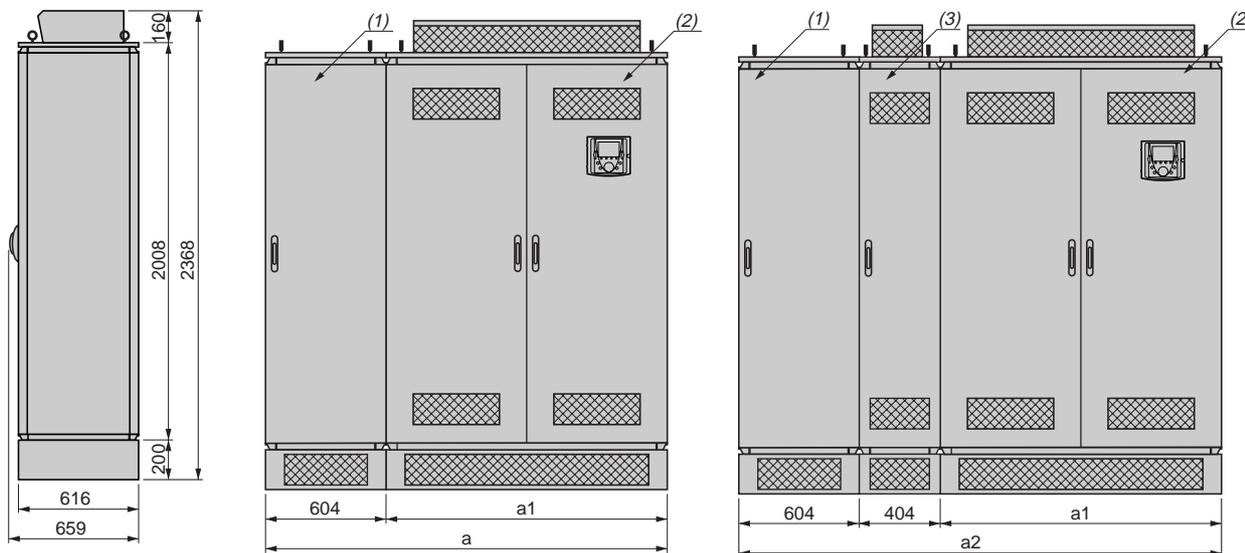
ATV 71E5	a	a1	a2
C31N4	1620	1016	2024
C40N4	1620	1016	2024
C50N4	1820	1216	2224

(1) Supplied with the ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4 ready-assembled enclosure (2), this enclosure contains the switch and fast acting fuses.
(2) ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4 ready-assembled enclosure.
(3) VW3 A7E 102 braking unit in enclosure.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71 ready-assembled in IP 54 enclosure

ATV 71E5D90N4…E5C16N4
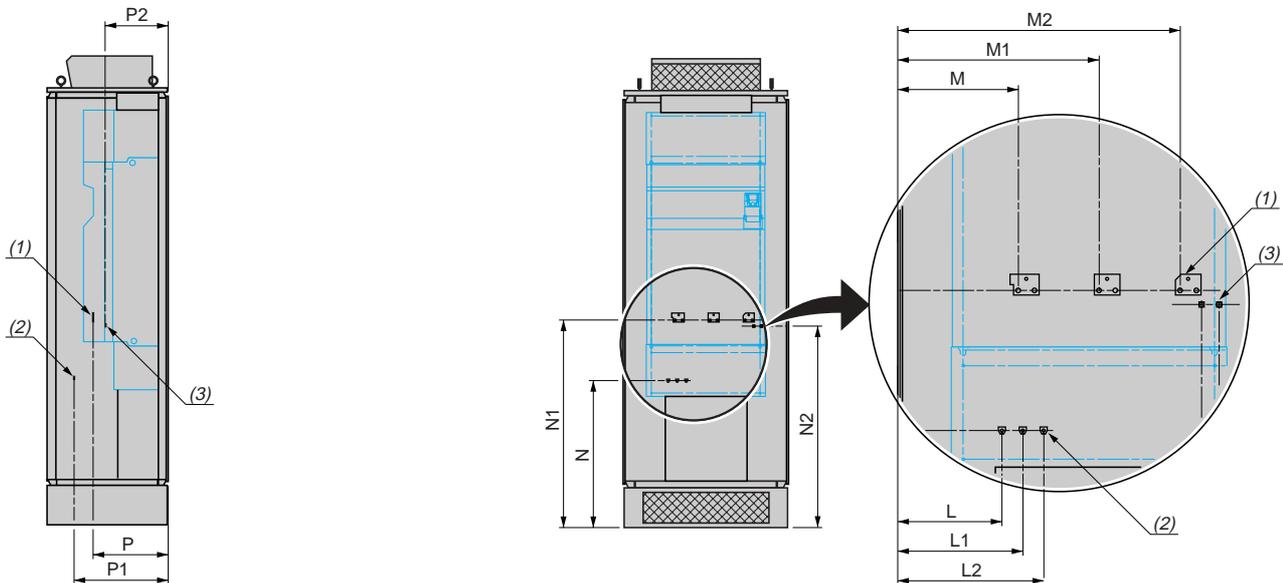
ATV 71E5	L	L1	L2	M	M1	M2	N	N1	N2	P	P1	P2
D90N4	230	265	300	290	350	410	770	1330	1295	350	465	280
C11N4	225	270	315	240	300	360	740	1330	1267	380	470	315
C13N4	225	270	315	260	335	410	740	1055	1024	375	470	305
C16N4	225	270	315	205	310	415	740	1060	1024	375	470	315

ATV 71E5C20N4…E5C28N4, ATV 71E5C20N4F…E5C28N4F
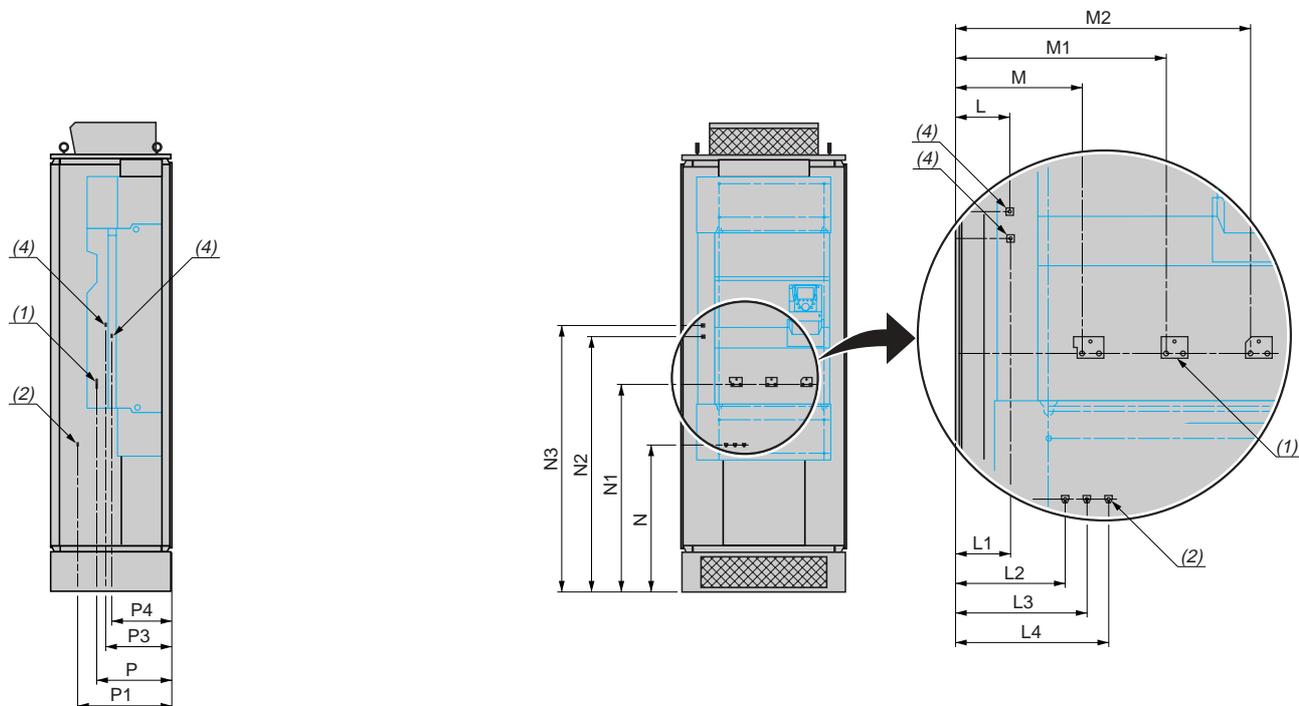
ATV 71E5	L	L1	L2	L3	L4	M	M1	M2	N	N1	N2	N3	P	P1	P3	P4
C20N4…C28N4	–	–	225	270	315	260	435	610	740	1045	–	–	375	470	–	–
C20N4F…C28N4F	110	112	225	270	315	260	435	610	740	1045	1285	1342	375	470	330	300

(1) Terminal for connecting the motor.
(2) Terminal for connecting the switch.
(3) Terminal for connecting the braking transistor.
*(4) Terminal for connecting the braking unit (**ATV 71E5C20N4F…ATV 71E5C28N4F** only).*

Telemecanique

Mounting recommendations (continued)

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 71 ready-assembled in IP 54 enclosure

ATV 71E5C31N4…E5C50N4
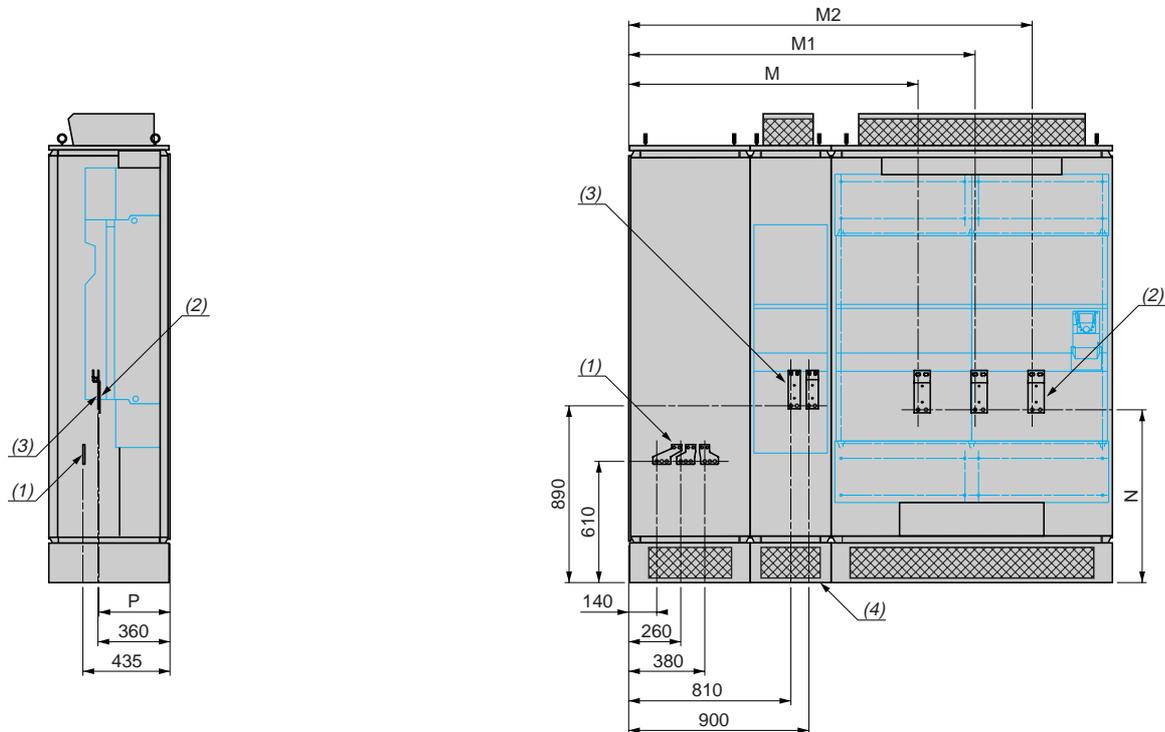
ATV 71E5	With braking unit			Without braking unit				
	M	M1	M2	M	M1	M2	N	P
C31N4	1445	1730	2015	840	1125	1410	870	355
C40N4	1335	1675	2015	730	1070	1410	870	355
C50N4	1320	1755	2190	715	1150	1585	865	360

(1) Terminal for connecting the switch.
(2) Terminal for connecting the motor.
(3) Terminal for connecting the braking unit.
(4) VW3 A7E 102 braking unit in enclosure.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: dialogue

105631

Remote graphic display terminal
(this display terminal can be supplied with the drive or ordered separately)

This display terminal is attached to the front of the drive. It includes the integrated 7-segment display terminal for drives supplied without a graphic display terminal.
It can be:
■ Used remotely in conjunction with the appropriate accessories (see below)
■ Connected to several drives using multidrop link components (see page 39)
It is used:
■ To control, adjust and configure the drive
■ To display the current values (motor, input/output values, etc.)
■ To save and download configurations; 4 configuration files can be saved.
The terminal's maximum operating temperature is 60°C and it features IP 54 protection.

Description
1 Graphic display:
- 8 lines, 240 x 160 pixels
- Large digits that can be read from 5 m away
- Supports display of bar charts
2 Assignable function keys F1, F2, F3, F4:
- Dialogue functions: direct access, help screens, navigation
- Application functions: "Local Remote", preset speed
3 "STOP/RESET" key: local control of motor stop/fault reset
4 "RUN" key: local control of motor operation
5 Navigation button:
- Press: Saves the current value (ENT)
- Turn ±: Increases or decreases the value, you to the next or previous line
6 "FWD/REV" key: Reverses the direction of rotation of the motor
7 "ESC" key: Aborts a value, a parameter or a menu to return to the previous selection

Note: Keys 3, 4 and 6 can be used to control the drive directly.

References

Description	No.	Reference	Weight kg
Remote graphic display terminal	**1**	**VW3 A1 101**	0.145

Remote graphic display terminal accessories

The following accessories are available:
■ A remote mounting kit for mounting on an enclosure door with IP 54 degree of protection. It includes:
□ All the mechanical fittings
□ Screws and bolts
■ A transparent door which attaches to the remote mechanics to achieve IP 65 degree of protection
■ A cable equipped with two RJ45 connectors so that the graphic display terminal can be connected to the Altivar 71 drive (1, 3, 5 or 10 m lengths available)
■ An RJ45 female/female adapter for connecting the graphic display terminal VW3 A1 101 to the remote cable VW3 A1 104 R●●

References

Description	No.	Length m	Degree of protection	Reference	Weight kg
Remote mounting kit *(1)*	**2**	–	IP 54	**VW3 A1 102**	0.150
Door *(2)*	**3**	–	IP 65	**VW3 A1 103**	0.040
Remote cables	**4**	1	–	**VW3 A1 104 R10**	0.050
equipped with 2	**4**	3	–	**VW3 A1 104 R30**	0.150
RJ45 connectors	**4**	5	–	**VW3 A1 104 R50**	0.250
	4	10	–	**VW3 A1 104 R100**	0.500
RJ45 female/female adapter	**5**	–	–	**VW3 A1 105**	0.010

(1) In this case, use a remote connecting cable VW3 A1 104 R●●, which must be ordered separately (see above).
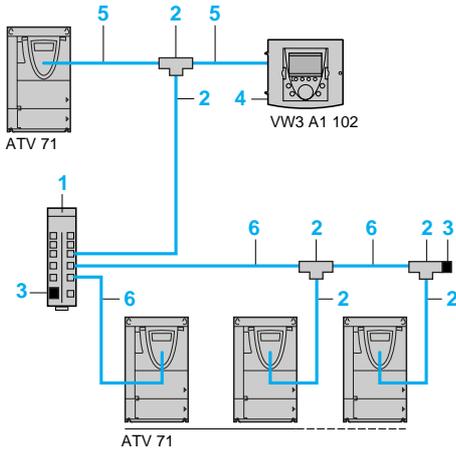*(2) To be mounted on remote mounting kit VW3 A1 102 (for mounting on an enclosure door), which must be ordered separately (see above).*
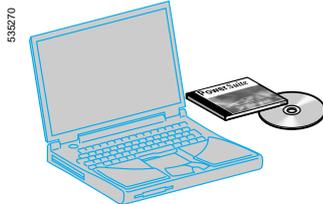
⊕ **Telemecanique**
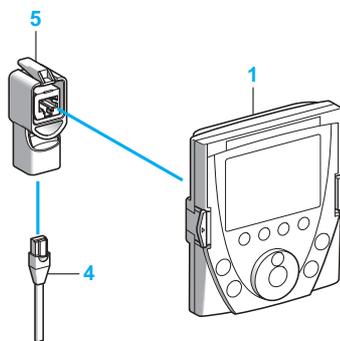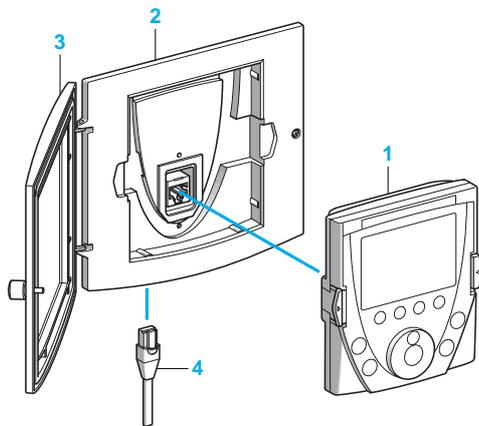
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Options: dialogue

Example of connection via multidrop link

PowerSuite software workshop

Multidrop link components

These components enable a graphic display terminal to be connected to several drives via a multidrop link. This multidrop link is connected to the Modbus terminal port on the front of the drive.

Connection accessories

Description		No.	Sold in lots of	Unit reference	Weight kg
Modbus splitter block 10 RJ45 connectors and 1 screw terminal		1	–	**LU9 GC3**	0.500
Modbus T-junction boxes	With integrated cable (0.3 m)	2	–	**VW3 A8 306 TF03**	–
	With integrated cable (1 m)	2	–	**VW3 A8 306 TF10**	–
Modbus line terminator	For RJ45 connector R = 120 Ω, C = 1 nF	3	2	**VW3 A8 306 RC**	–
Remote mounting kit	For graphic display terminal VW3 A1 101	4	–	**VW3 A1 102**	0.150

Connecting cables
(equipped with 2 RJ45 connectors)

Used with	No.	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
For remote operation of the Altivar 71 and the graphic display terminal VW3 A1 101	5	1	**VW3 A1 104 R10**	0.050
		3	**VW3 A1 104 R30**	0.150
		5	**VW3 A1 104 R50**	0.250
		10	**VW3 A1 104 R100**	0.500
Modbus bus	6	0.3	**VW3 A8 306 R03**	0.025
		1	**VW3 A8 306 R10**	0.060
		3	**VW3 A8 306 R30**	0.130

PowerSuite software workshop

The PowerSuite software workshop offers the following benefits:
■ Messages can be displayed in plain text in several languages
(English, French, German, Italian and Spanish)
■ Work can be prepared in the design office without having to connect the drive to the PC
■ Configurations and settings can be saved to floppy disk or hard disk and downloaded to the drive
■ Print facility
■ Altivar 58 or Altivar 58F files can be converted for transfer to an Altivar 71 drive
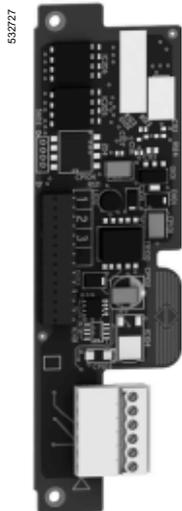■ Oscillograms can be displayed

See pages 206 to 209.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: encoder interface cards

Presentation

VW3 A3 401

Encoder interface cards are used for Flux Vector Control operation with sensor (FVC mode) which improves drive performance irrespective of the state of the motor load:
- Zero speed torque
- Accurate speed regulation
- Torque accuracy
- Shorter response times on a torque surge
- Improved dynamic performance in transient state

In other control modes (voltage vector control, voltage/frequency ratio), encoder interface cards improve static speed accuracy.

Encoder interface cards can also be used for machine safety irrespective of the control type:
- Overspeed detection
- Load veering detection

Encoder interface cards can also transmit an Altivar 71 drive reference provided by the encoder input. This use is specific to synchronizing the speed of several drives.

Three types of card are available depending on the encoder technology:
- RS 422 compatible differential outputs
- Open collector outputs (NPN)
- Push-pull outputs

The card is inserted into a dedicated slot.

Characteristics

Encoder interface cards with RS422 compatible differential outputs

Type of card		VW3 A3 401		VW3 A3 402 *(1)*	
Power (supplied by the card)	Voltage	5 V ⎓ (min. 5 V, max. 5.5 V)		15 V ⎓ (min. 15 V, max. 16 V)	
	Maximum current	200 mA		175 mA	
		Short-circuit and overload protection			
Maximum operating frequency		300 kHz			
Input signals		A, $\overline{A}$, B, $\overline{B}$			
	Impedance	440 Ω			
Number of pulses/ encoder revolution		5000 maximum The maximum high-speed frequency should not exceed 300 kHz.			
Maximum consumption current of encoder		100 mA *(2)*	200 mA *(2)*	100 mA *(3)*	200 mA *(3)*
Minimum recommended cross-section of conductors *(4)*	For a maximum cable length of 25 m	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	
	For a maximum cable length of 50 m	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	0.75 mm² (AWG 18)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	
	For a maximum cable length of 100 m	0.75 mm² (AWG 18)	1.5 mm² (AWG 15)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	
	For a maximum cable length of 1000 m	–		0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	1 mm² (AWG 17)

(1) Card VW3 A3 402 ensures compatibility between Altivar 68F and Altivar 71 drive applications.
(2) Minimum encoder power supply 4.5 V.
(3) Minimum encoder power supply 8 V.
(4) Shielded cable containing 3 twisted pairs at intervals of between 20 and 50 mm.
Connect the shielding to earth at both ends.
Minimum recommended conductor cross-section for a minimum encoder voltage in order to limit line voltage drops.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: encoder interface cards

Characteristics (continued)

Encoder interface card with open collector outputs

Type of card		VW3 A3 403		VW3 A3 404	
Power (supplied by the card)	Voltage	12 V ⎓ (min. 12 V, max. 13 V)		15 V ⎓ (min. 15 V, max. 16 V)	
	Maximum current	175 mA			
		Short-circuit and overload protection			
Maximum operating frequency		300 kHz			
Input signals		A, $\overline{A}$, B, $\overline{B}$ / AB / A			
	Impedance	1 kΩ			
Number of pulses/encoder revolution		5000 maximum The maximum high-speed frequency should not exceed 300 kHz.			
Maximum consumption current of encoder		**100 mA** *(1)*	**175 mA** *(1)*	**100 mA** *(1)*	**175 mA** *(1)*
Minimum recommended cross-section of conductors *(2)*	For a maximum cable length of 100 m	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	
	For a maximum cable length of 200 m	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	0.75 mm² (AWG 18)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	
	For a maximum cable length of 500 m	1 mm² (AWG 17)	1.5 mm² (AWG 15)	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	
	For a maximum cable length of 1000 m	–		0.75 mm² (AWG 18)	1.5 mm² (AWG 15)

Encoder interface card with push-pull outputs

Type of card		VW3 A3 405		VW3 A3 406		VW3 A3 407
Power (supplied by the card)	Voltage	12 V ⎓ (min. 12 V, max. 13 V)		15 V ⎓ (min. 15 V, max. 16 V)		+24 V ⎓ (min. 20 V, max. 30 V)
	Maximum current	175 mA				100 mA
		Short-circuit and overload protection				
Maximum operating frequency		300 kHz				
Input signals		A, $\overline{A}$, B, $\overline{B}$ / AB / A				
	Impedance	1 kΩ				1.6 kΩ
	State 0	If < 1.5 V				
	State 1	If > 7.7 V and < 13 V		If > 7.7 V and < 16 V		If > 11.5 V and < 25 V
Number of pulses/encoder revolution		5000 maximum The maximum high-speed frequency should not exceed 300 kHz.				
Maximum consumption current of encoder		**100 mA** *(1)*	**175 mA** *(1)*	**100 mA** *(1)*	**175 mA** *(1)*	**100 mA** *(2)*
Minimum recommended cross-section of conductors *(3)*	For a maximum cable length of 100 m	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)		
	For a maximum cable length of 200 m	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)	0.75 mm² (AWG 18)	0.2 mm² (AWG 24)		
	For a maximum cable length of 500 m	1 mm² (AWG 17)	1.5 mm² (AWG 15)	0.5 mm² (AWG 20)		0.2 mm² (AWG 24)
	For a maximum cable length of 1000 m	–	0.75 mm² (AWG 18)	1.5 mm² (AWG 15)		0.5 mm² (AWG 20)

References

Encoder interface cards *(4)*

Description	Voltage V	Reference	Weight kg
Encoder interface cards with RS422 compatible differential outputs	5	**VW3 A3 401**	0.200
	15	**VW3 A3 402**	0.200
Encoder interface cards with open collector outputs	12	**VW3 A3 403**	0.200
	15	**VW3 A3 404**	0.200
Encoder interface cards with push-pull outputs	12	**VW3 A3 405**	0.200
	15	**VW3 A3 406**	0.200
	24	**VW3 A3 407**	0.200

(1) Minimum encoder power supply 10 V.
(2) Minimum encoder power supply 14 V.
(3) Shielded cable containing 3 twisted pairs at intervals of between 20 and 50 mm. Connect the shielding to earth at both ends. Minimum recommended conductor cross-section for a minimum encoder voltage in order to limit line voltage drops.
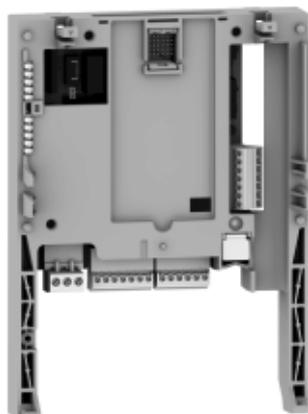*(4) The Altivar 71 drive cannot support more than one encoder interface card. Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations (see pages 100 to 107).*

Ⓣ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: I/O extension cards

Presentation

Altivar 71 drives can be specifically adapted to particular application areas by installing I/O extension cards.

Two models are available:
■ Card with logic I/O featuring:
□ 1 relay logic output ("C/O" contact)
□ 4 x 24 V ⎓ positive or negative logic inputs
□ 2 x 24 V ⎓ open collector positive or negative logic outputs
□ 1 input for PTC probes

■ Card with extended I/O featuring:
□ 1 differential current analog input 0…20 mA
□ 1 software-configurable voltage (0…10 V ⎓) or
current (0…20 mA) analog input
□ 2 software-configurable voltage (± 10 V, 0…10 V ⎓)
or current (0…20 mA) analog outputs
□ 1 relay logic output
□ 4 x 24 V ⎓ positive or negative logic inputs
□ 2 x 24 V ⎓ open collector positive or negative logic outputs
□ 1 input for PTC probes
□ 1 frequency control input

VW3 A3 202

Characteristics

Logic I/O card VW3 A3 201

Internal supplies available		Short-circuit and overload protection: ■ 1 x 24 V ⎓ supply (min. 21 V, max. 27 V), maximum current 200 mA for the complete drive and I/O extension card assembly ■ 1 x 10.5 V ⎓ (± 5%) supply for the reference potentiometer (1 to 10 kΩ), maximum current 10 mA
Configurable relay outputs	R3A, R3B, R3C	1 relay logic output, one "N/C" contact and one "N/O" contact with common point Minimum switching capacity: 3 mA for 24 V ⎓ Maximum switching capacity: ■ On resistive load (cos φ = 1): 5 A for 250 V ∼ or 30 V ⎓ ■ On inductive load (cos φ = 0.4 and L/R = 7 ms): 2 A for 250 V ∼ or 30 V ⎓ Electrical service life: 100,000 operations Maximum response time: 7 ms ± 0.5 ms
Logic inputs	LI7…LI10	4 programmable logic inputs, 24 V ⎓, compatible with level 1 PLC, IEC 65A-68 standard Impedance: 3.5 kΩ Maximum voltage: 30 V Multiple assignment makes it possible to configure several functions on one input Maximum sampling time: 2 ms ± 0.5 ms
	Positive logic (Source)	State 0 if ⩽ 5 V or logic input not wired, state 1 if ⩾ 11 V
	Negative logic (Sink)	State 0 if ⩾ 16 V or logic input not wired, state 1 if ⩽ 10 V
Logic outputs	LO1, LO2	2 x 24 V ⎓ logic outputs assignable as positive (Source) or negative (Sink) logic open collector type, compatible with level 1 PLC, standard IEC 65A-68 24 V ⎓ internal or 24 V ⎓ external power supply (min. 12 V, max. 30 V) Maximum current: 200 mA Logic output common (CLO) isolated from other signals Maximum sampling time: 2 ms ± 0.5 ms. The active state is software-configurable as is a delay for each switching operation.
Input for PTC probes	TH1+/TH1-	1 input for a maximum of 6 PTC probes mounted in series: ■ Nominal value < 1.5 kΩ ■ Trip resistance 3 kΩ, reset value 1.8 kΩ ■ Short-circuit protection < 50 Ω
Maximum I/O wire size and tightening torque		1.5 mm² (AWG 16) 0.25 Nm

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: I/O extension cards

Characteristics (continued)

Extended I/O card VW3 A3 202

Internal supplies available		Short-circuit and overload protection: ■ 1 x 24 V ⎓ supply (min. 21 V, max. 27 V), maximum current 200 mA for the complete drive and I/O extension card assembly ■ 1 x 10.5 V ⎓ (± 5%) supply for the reference potentiometer (1 to 10 kΩ), maximum current 10 mA
Analog inputs AI	AI3+/AI3-	1 X-Y mA differential current analog input by programming X and Y from 0 to 20 mA, with impedance 250 Ω Maximum sampling time: 5 ms ± 1 ms Resolution: 11 bits +1 sign bit Accuracy: ± 0.6% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.15% of the maximum value
	AI4	1 software-configurable voltage or current analog input: ■ Voltage analog input 0…10 V ⎓, impedance 30 kΩ (max. safe voltage 24 V) ■ X-Y mA current analog input by programming X and Y from 0 to 20 mA, with impedance 250 Ω Maximum sampling time: 5 ms ± 1 ms Resolution: 11 bits Accuracy: ± 0.6% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.15% of the maximum value
Analog outputs	AO2, AO3	2 software-configurable voltage or current analog inputs: ■ voltage analog output ± 10 V ⎓, 0…10 V, minimum load impedance 470 Ω ■ X-Y mA current analog output by programming X and Y from 0 to 20 mA, maximum load impedance 500 W Maximum sampling time: 5 ms ± 1 ms Resolution: 10 bits Accuracy: ± 1% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0,2% of the maximum value
Configurable relay output	R4A, R4B, R4C	1 relay logic output, one "N/C" contact and one "N/O" contact with common point Minimum switching capacity: 3 mA for 24 V ⎓ Maximum switching capacity: ■ On resistive load (cos φ = 1): 5 A for 250 V ∿ or 30 V ⎓ ■ On inductive load (cos φ = 0.4 and L/R = 7 ms): 1.5 A for 250 V ∿ or 30 V ⎓ Electrical service life: 100,000 operations Maximum response time: 10 ms ± 1 ms
Logic inputs	LI11…LI14	4 programmable logic inputs, 24 V ⎓, compatible with level 1 PLC, IEC 65A-68 standard Impedance: 3.5 kΩ Maximum voltage: 30 V Multiple assignment makes it possible to configure several functions on one input Maximum sampling time: 5 ms ± 1 ms
	Positive logic (Source)	State 0 if ≤ 5 V or logic input not wired, state 1 if ≥ 11 V
	Negative logic (Sink)	State 0 if ≥ 16 V or logic input not wired, state 1 if ≤ 10 V
Logic outputs	LO3, LO4	2 x 24 V ⎓ logic outputs assignable as positive (Source) or negative (Sink) logic open collector type, compatible with level 1 PLC, standard IEC 65A-68 Maximum voltage: 30 V Maximum current: 200 mA Logic output common (CLO) isolated from other signals Maximum sampling time: 5 ms ± 1 ms. The active state is software-configurable as is a delay for each switching operation.
Input for PTC probes	TH2+/TH2-	1 input for a maximum of 6 PTC probes mounted in series: ■ Nominal value < 1.5 kΩ ■ Trip resistance 3 kΩ, reset value 1.8 kΩ ■ Short-circuit protection < 50 Ω
Frequency control input	RP	Frequency range: 0…30 kHz Cyclic ratio: 50% ± 10% Maximum sampling time: 5 ms ± 1 ms Maximum input voltage 30 V, 15 mA Add a resistor if the input voltage is greater than 5 V (510 Ω for 12 V, 910 Ω for 15 V, 1.3 kΩ for 24 V) State 0 if < 1.2 V, state 1 if > 3.5 V
Maximum I/O wire size and tightening torque		1.5 mm² (AWG 16) 0.25 Nm

References

I/O extension cards (1)

Description	Reference	Weight kg
Logic I/O card	**VW3 A3 201**	0.300
Extended I/O card	**VW3 A3 202**	0.300

(1) The Altivar 71 cannot support more than one I/O card with the same reference. Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations, see pages 100 to 107.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

Presentation

The "Controller Inside" programmable card is used to adapt the variable speed drive to specific applications by integrating control system functions.

Various predefined configurable applications are sold by Schneider Electric and its partners.
The PS 1131 software workshop for PC is used for programming and debugging new applications, quickly and in an open-ended manner (see page 47).
It is not possible to transfer the program from the card to the PC, which enables us to protect our know-how.

A single "Controller Inside" programmable card can be fitted in the Altivar 71 drive.
It can be combined with another option card (I/O extension or communication).
Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations, see pages 100 to 107.

The "Controller Inside" programmable card has:
■ 10 logic inputs, 2 of which can be used for 2 counters or 4 of which can be used for 2 incremental encoders
■ 2 analog inputs
■ 6 logic outputs
■ 2 analog outputs
■ A master port for the CANopen bus
■ A PC port for programming with the PS 1131 software workshop

If the power consumption table does not exceed 200 mA, the "Controller Inside" programmable card can be powered by Altivar 71 drives. Otherwise, an external 24 V ⎓ power supply must be used.

The "Controller Inside" programmable card can also use:
■ The drive I/O
■ The I/O extension card I/O
■ The encoder interface card points counter
■ The drive parameters (speed, current, torque, …)

Description

1 RJ45 connector for connecting the PS 1131 software workshop via an RS 485 serial link.
Connection to the PC is via a cable and an RS 232/RS 485 converter included in the PowerSuite for PC connection kit, VW3 A8 106.

2 9-way male SUB-D connector for connection to the CANopen bus.

3 Connector with removable screw terminals, 6 contacts at intervals of 3.81 for the 24 V ⎓ power supply and 4 logic inputs.

4 3 connectors with removable screw terminals, 6 contacts at intervals of 3.81 for 6 logic inputs, 6 logic outputs, 2 analog inputs, 2 analog outputs and 2 commons.

5 5 LEDs, comprising:
■ 1 to indicate the presence of the 24 V ⎓ power supply
■ 1 to indicate a program execution fault
■ 2 to indicate the CANopen bus communication status
■ 1 controlled by the application program
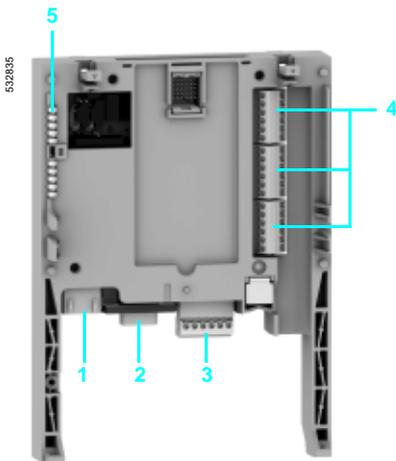
532835

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

Independent machine with multiwire system

Independent machine with CANopen bus

Modular machine with Ethernet TCP/IP network
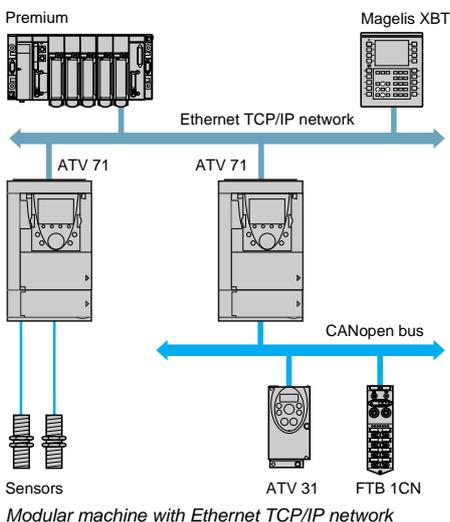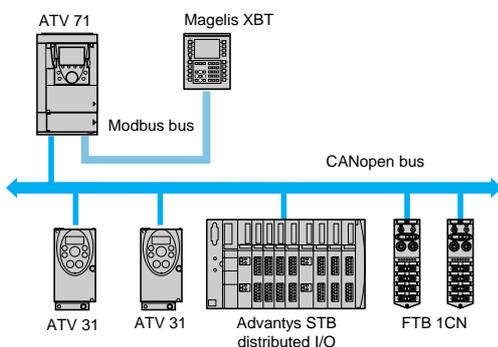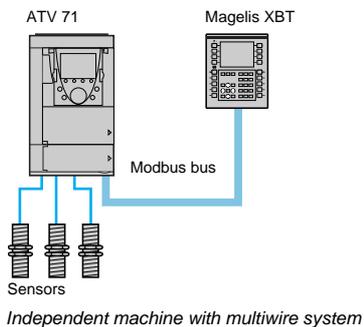
Dialogue

Human-machine dialogue with the application programmed in the "Controller Inside" programmable card is possible using:
■ The Altivar 71 graphic display terminal
■ A Magelis industrial HMI terminal connected to the drive Modbus port
■ A Magelis industrial HMI terminal connected to the Ethernet TCP/IP network
(if the drive is equipped with an Ethernet TCP/IP communication card)

There is a dedicated graphic terminal menu for the "Controller Inside" programmable card. This menu can be customized by the card program according to the application.

Any industrial HMI terminal which supports the Modbus protocol can be used to display and modify the "Controller Inside" programmable card parameters. The Modbus server provides access to 2 Kwords (% MW, etc.) in the card.

Master CANopen communication

The master CANopen port on the "Controller Inside" programmable card can be used to extend the I/O capacity and to control other CANopen slave devices.

Communication with a PLC

The Altivar 71 drive, which is equipped with a "Controller Inside" programmable card, fits easily into complex architectures.
Regardless of which bus or network is being used (Ethernet TCP/IP, Modbus/Uni-Telway, Fipio, Modbus Plus, Profibus DP, INTERBUS, etc.), the PLC can communicate with the "Controller Inside" programmable card and the drive. The periodic variables can still be configured as required.

Clock

A clock backed up by a lithium battery makes it possible to have a log of events that have occurred. When the "Controller Inside" programmable card is installed in the drive, drive faults are automatically time and date-stamped without any special programming.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

Electrical characteristics

Power supply	Voltage	**V**	24 --- (min. 19, max. 30)
Power consumption Current	Maximum	**A**	2
	No-load	**mA**	80
	Per logic output	**mA**	200 maximum *(1)*
Analog inputs	AI51, AI52		2 current analog inputs 0…20 mA, impedance 250 Ω Resolution: 10 bits Accuracy: ± 1% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.2% of the maximum value Common point for all the card I/O *(2)*
Analog outputs	AO51, AO52		2 current analog outputs 0…20 mA, impedance 500 Ω Resolution: 10 bits Accuracy: ± 1% for a temperature variation of 60°C Linearity: ± 0.2% of the maximum value Common point for all the card I/O *(2)*
Logic inputs	LI51…LI60		Ten 24 V --- logic inputs, compatible with level 1 PLC, IEC 65A-68 standard, 2 of which can be used for 2 counters or 4 of which can be used for 2 incremental encoders Impedance: 4.4 kΩ Maximum voltage: 30 V --- Switching thresholds: State 0 if ≤ 5 V or logic input not wired State 1 if ≥ 11 V Common point for all the card I/O *(2)*
Logic outputs	LO51…LO56		Six 24 V --- logic outputs, positive logic open collector type (source), compatible with level 1 PLC, standard IEC 65A-68 Maximum switching voltage: 30 V Maximum current: 200 mA Common point for all the card I/O *(2)*
Connection of I/O	Type of contact		Screw, at intervals of 3.81 mm²
	Maximum wire size	**mm²**	1.5 (AWG 16)
	Tightening torque	**Nm**	0.25
Lithium battery	Life		8 years approx.

Characteristics of the application program

Compiled program (saved in "flash" memory)	Maximum size	**Kb**	320
Data	Maximum size	**Kwords**	64
	Saved size (NVRAM)	**Kwords**	4
	Size accessible by Modbus	**Kwords**	2

Characteristics of the CANopen communication port

Structure	Connector	One 9-way male SUB-D connector
	Network management	Master
	Transmission speed	Configurable via the program: 50 Kbps, 125 Kbps, 250 Kbps, 500 Kbps or 1 Mbps
	Address (Node ID)	32 slaves maximum
Services	CANopen application layer	DS 301 V4.02
	Profile	DSP 405
	PDO	10 receive and transmit PDOs in total for each slave
	SDO	2 client SDOs per slave (1 read and 1 write). Block transfer.
	Error check	Node Guarding, producer and consumer Heartbeat
	Other services	Emergency, Boot-up, Sync
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	2 LEDs: "RUN" and "ERROR", conforming to CIA DR303 version 1.0

(1) Otherwise, an external 24 V --- power supply must be used.
(2) This common point is also the drive 0 V.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

PS 1131 software workshop

The PS 1131 software workshop conforms to international standard IEC 61131-3 and includes all the functions for programming and setting up the "Controller Inside" programmable card.
It includes the configurator for CANopen.
It is designed for Microsoft Windows® 98, Microsoft Windows® NT 4.0, Microsoft Windows® Millennium, Microsoft Windows® 2000 Professional and Microsoft Windows® XP operating systems.

It benefits from the user-friendly interface associated with these operating systems:
■ Pop-up menus
■ Function blocks
■ Online help
The PS 1131 software workshop is available in both English and German.

The programming and debugging tools can be accessed via the application browser. This provides the user with an overview of the program and quick access to all application components:
■ Program editor
■ Function blocks editor
■ Variables editor
■ Animation tables editor
■ Runtime screens editor

Modular structured programming

The PS 1131 software workshop is used to structure an application into function modules consisting of sections (program code), animation tables and runtime screens. Each program section has a name and is programmed in one of the six available languages. To protect know-how or prevent any accidental modification, each section can be write-protected or read/write-protected.

Exporting/Importing function modules
It is possible to export all or part of the tree structure in function modules.

Program structure and execution of an application

The program structure is single-task. It consists of several subroutines.
Exchanges with the drive are performed by a function block available in the standard library.
Cycle execution can be either cyclic or periodic. A software watchdog, which can be configured between 100 and 500 ms by the user, monitors the cycle time.
A task can be synchronized with the drive main task to improve repeat accuracy in motion control applications.

Cyclic execution
Once each cycle ends, execution of a new cycle begins. The cycle execution must last for at least 5 ms.

Periodic execution
The program is executed periodically, and the period can be set by the user between 5 and 100 ms. Cycle execution must last for less than the defined period. Drive response in the event of the cycle time being exceeded can be managed by the program.
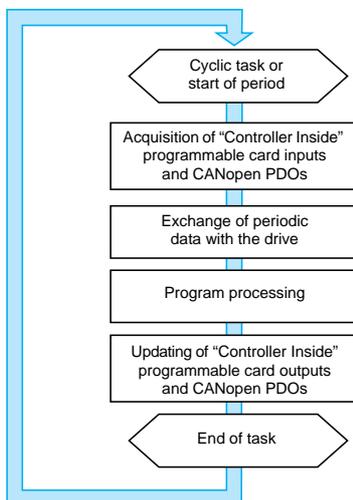
Example of cycle execution for the "Controller Inside" programmable card connected on a CANopen bus

The flowchart contains:
- Cyclic task or start of period
- Acquisition of "Controller Inside" programmable card inputs and CANopen PDOs
- Exchange of periodic data with the drive
- Program processing
- Updating of "Controller Inside" programmable card outputs and CANopen PDOs
- End of task

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

Programming languages

6 programming languages are available:
- Ladder language (LD)
- Structured Text language (ST)
- Grafcet language (SFC)
- Instruction List language (IL)
- Function Block Diagram (FBD)
- Continuous Flow Chart (CFC)
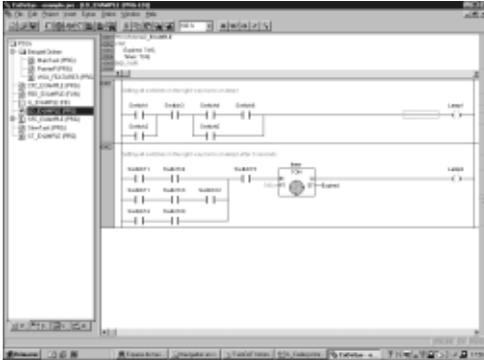
Example of Ladder Diagram language programming

Ladder Diagram (LD)

A Ladder Diagram program consists of a set of rungs executed sequentially.
A rung consists of several lines.
A line consists of several contacts and a coil.
The language objects can be entered and displayed as symbols or tags as required.
The Ladder Diagram editor enables the immediate call of entry help functions such as access to function libraries and access to the variables editor.

Example of Structured Text language programming

Structured Text (ST)

Structured Text language is a sophisticated algorithmic type language which is particularly well-suited to programming complex arithmetical functions, manipulating tables, message handling, etc.
Structured Text language enables direct transcription of an analysis based on a flow chart, and is organized in statements.
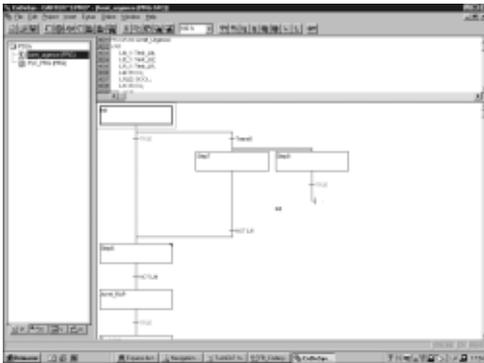
Example of Grafcet language programming

Grafcet language (SFC)

Grafcet language is used to describe the sequential part of the control system in a simple, graphic way. It corresponds to the "Sequential Function Chart" (SFC) language described in standard IEC 61131-3.
Programs written in Grafcet (SFC) language consist of:
- Macro-steps which are the grouping of a set of steps and transitions
- Steps with which the actions to be performed can be associated
- Transitions with which the conditions are associated (transition conditions)
- Directed links connecting the steps and transitions

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

Example of Instruction List language programming

Example of a function block:
Sending the speed reference to the drive.

Programming languages (continued)

Instruction List language (IL)

Instruction List language can be used to write Boolean equations and use all the functions available in the language. It can be used to represent the equivalent of a ladder diagram in text form.
Each instruction consists of an instruction code and a bit or word type operand.
As in Ladder Diagram language, instructions are organized in sequences of instructions called statements (equivalent to a rung).

Function Block Diagram (FBD)

FBD is a graphic language. It consists of function blocks connected by a rung. The program is executed sequentially.
Each block can be a logical or arithmetical expression, a call to another function block, a jump or a return instruction.

Continuous Flow Chart (CFC)

Continuous Flow Chart programming is a graphic language. The rung connecting the various function blocks on the page is not necessarily sequential. The output of a function block may be looped back on its input or on the input of a block already inserted in the rung.

Function blocks

The PS 1131 software workshop has pre-programmed function blocks (standard library) and offers users the option of creating their own function blocks (user library).

Standard library

The standard library contains:
■ Logic functions (AND, OR, etc.)
■ Mathematical functions (Cos, Sin, Exp, etc.)
■ Function blocks dedicated to drives which simplify data exchange between the drive and the "Controller Inside" programmable card (example: sending the speed reference)
■ Function blocks for managing the CANopen bus
■ Graphic terminal display function blocks.

User library

Users have the option of creating their own function blocks to help them structure their applications. This is also a means of protecting the know-how contained in the algorithms, as it is possible to lock access to the user function blocks program.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card
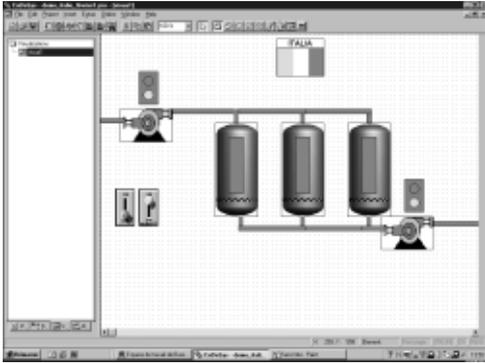
Example of runtime screen

Debugging

The PS 1131 software workshop offers a complete set of tools for debugging the application.

Program execution for debugging

The main debugging functions are:
■ Use of breakpoints
■ Step-by-step program execution
■ Execution of a single cycle
■ Direct access to the subroutines that have been called (call stack)

Realtime program animation

The main functions of realtime animation of the program are:
■ Animation of part of the program in any language
■ Automatic display of a variables window relating to this part of the program

Animation tables

Tables containing variables for the application to be monitored can be created and saved.
In both these tools, in addition to animating the data, it is possible to:
■ Modify and force the value of data of any type
■ Change the display format (binary, hexadecimal, etc.).

Oscilloscope

The PS 1131 software workshop Oscilloscope function can be used to monitor up to 20 variables in the form of curves.

Runtime screens

A tool integrated in the PS 1131 software workshop can be used to design and use runtime screens for the application. These include:
■ Creation of screen backgrounds
■ Animation of graphic objects associated with variables
■ Display of messages
■ …

Simulation

The PS 1131 software workshop Simulation function can be used to test the program without having to set up the drive.

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: "Controller Inside" programmable card

ATV 71 (master drive)
+ card VW3 A3 501

CANopen bus

ATV 71 (slave drives)

Master/slave application

VW3 CAN A71

TSX CAN KCDF 180 T

References

Card

Description	Reference	Weight kg
"Controller Inside" programmable card *(1)* equipped with one 9-way male SUB-D connector	**VW3 A3 501**	0.320

Connection accessories *(2)*

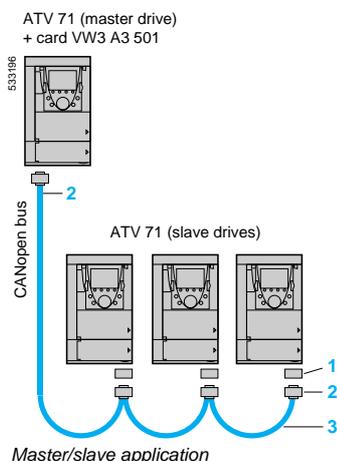| Description	No.	Length (m)	Reference	Weight kg
CANopen adapter to be mounted on the RJ45 socket in the drive control terminals. The adaptor provides a 9-way male SUB-D connector conforming to the CANopen standard (CIA DRP 303-1).	**1**	–	**VW3 CAN A71**	–
CANopen connector 9-way female SUB-D with line terminator that can be disabled	**2**		**TSX CAN KCDF 180T**	–

Cables *(2)*

Description	No.	Length (m)	Reference	Weight kg
CANopen cables Standard cable. Low smoke emission, halogen-free. Flame retardant (IEC 60332-1)	**3**	50	**TSX CAN CA 50**	–
		100	**TSX CAN CA 100**	–
		300	**TSX CAN CA 300**	–
CANopen cables UL certification. Flame retardant (IEC 60332-2)	**3**	50	**TSX CAN CB 50**	–
		100	**TSX CAN CB 100**	–
		300	**TSX CAN CB 300**	–
CANopen cables Cable for harsh environments *(3)* or mobile installation. Low smoke emission, halogen-free. Flame retardant (IEC 60332-1)	**3**	50	**TSX CAN CD 50**	–
		100	**TSX CAN CD 100**	–
		300	**TSX CAN CD 300**	–

PS 1131 software workshop

Description	Reference	Weight kg
PS 1131 software workshop supplied on CD-ROM	*(4)*	–
Connection kit for PC serial port including various accessories such as: ■ 1 x 3 m cable with 2 RJ45 connectors ■ 1 RS 232/RS 485 converter with one 9-way female SUB-D connector and 1 RJ45 connector.	**VW3 A8 106**	0.350

(1) The Altivar 71 drive can only take one "Controller Inside" programmable card. Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations, see pages 100 to 107.
(2) Consult our "Machines and installations with CANopen" catalogue.
(3) Harsh environments:
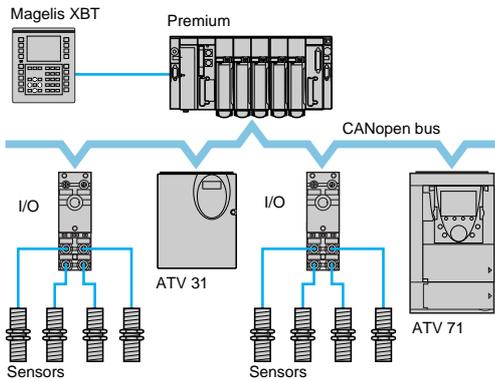 *- resistance to hydrocarbons, industrial oils, detergents, solder splashes*
  - relative humidity up to 100%
  - saline atmosphere
  - significant temperature variations
  - operating temperature between - 10°C and + 70°C.
(4) The product reference is provided during the "Controller Inside" programmable card training course. Please consult your Regional Sales Office.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Presentation

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Magelis XBT

Premium

CANopen bus

I/O

I/O

ATV 31

ATV 71

Sensors

Sensors

Example of configuration on CANopen machine bus

1

2

3
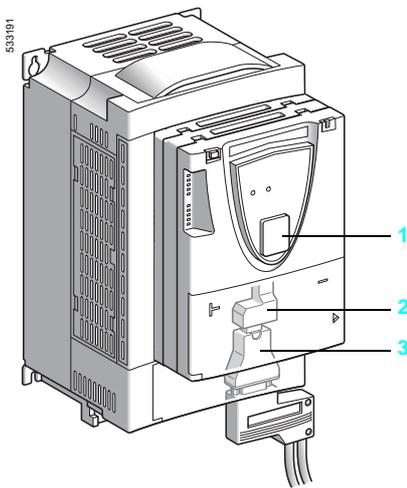
Presentation

The Altivar 71 drive is designed to suit all configurations found in communicating industrial installations.

It includes Modbus and CANopen communication protocols as standard.

The Modbus protocol can be accessed directly by means of 2 integrated communication ports (for characteristics, see page 17):
■ One RJ45 Modbus terminal port **1**, located on the drive front panel, for connecting:
□ the remote graphic display terminal
□ a Magelis industrial HMI terminal
□ the PowerSuite software workshop
■ One RJ45 Modbus network port **2**, located on the drive control terminals. It is dedicated to control and signalling by a PLC or other type of controller.
It can also be used to connect a terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop.

The CANopen protocol can be accessed from the Modbus network port via the CANopen adapter **3** (for characteristics, see page 17). In this case, terminal port **1** must be used to access the Modbus protocol.

The Altivar 71 drive can also be connected to other industrial communication buses and networks by adding one of the communication option cards:
■ Ethernet TCP/IP
■ Modbus/Uni-Telway. This card can offer functions in addition to those of the integrated ports: Modbus ASCII and 4-wire RS 485
■ Fipio
■ Modbus Plus
■ Profibus DP
■ DeviceNet
■ INTERBUS

The option of powering the control section separately enables communication (monitoring, diagnostics) to be maintained even if there is no power supply to the control section.

The main Altivar 58 and Altivar 58F drive communication functions are compatible with the Altivar 71 drive *(1)*:
- Connection
- Communication services
- Drive behaviour (profile)
- Control and monitoring parameters
- Standard adjustment parameters

The PowerSuite software workshop can be used to port configurations from Altivar 58 and Altivar 58F drives to the Altivar 71 drive.

(1) Consult the ATV 58(F)/ATV 71 substitution guide supplied on the documentation CD-ROM.

Functions:
page 53

Characteristics:
pages 54 to 57

References:
pages 58 and 59

52

Telemecanique

Functions

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Functions

All the drive functions can be accessed via the network:
■ Controlling
■ Monitoring
■ Adjustment
■ Configuration

When the drive is equipped with the "Controller Inside" programmable card, its variables (% MW, etc) can be accessed by Modbus messaging via the integrated communication ports or via the Ethernet TCP/IP communication card.

The speed or torque command and reference may come from different control sources:
■ I/O terminals
■ Communication network
■ "Controller Inside" programmable card
■ Remote graphic display terminal
The advanced functions of the Altivar 71 drive can be used to manage switching of these drive control sources according to the application requirements.

It is possible to choose the assignment of the communication periodic variables using:
■ The network configuration software (Sycon, etc)
■ The Altivar 71 drive communication scanner function

For the Modbus and CANopen ports and for the communication cards, the Altivar 71 drive can be controlled:
■ According to the CiA DSP 402 profile
■ According to the I/O profile where control is as simple and adaptable as control via the I/O terminals.
The DeviceNet card also supports the ODVA AC Drive and Allen-Bradley drive profiles.

Communication is monitored according to criteria specific to each protocol. However, regardless of the protocol, it is possible to configure the drive reaction to a communication fault:
■ Freewheel stop, stop on ramp, fast stop or braked stop
■ Maintain the last command received
■ Fallback position at a predefined speed
■ Ignore the fault

A command from the CANopen machine bus is processed with the same priority as one of the drive terminal inputs. This results in excellent response times on the network port via the CANopen adapter.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Characteristics of the Ethernet TCP/IP card VW3 A3 310 *(1)*

Structure	Connector	One RJ45 connector
	Transmission speed	10/100 Mbps, half duplex and full duplex
	IP addressing	■ Manual assignment via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop ■ BOOTP (IP address dynamic server depending on the IEEE address) ■ DHCP (address dynamic server depending on the Device Name) with automatic reiteration
	Physical	Ethernet 2
	Link	LLC: IEEE 802.2 MAC: IEEE 802.3
	Network	IP (RFC791) ICMP client for supporting certain IP services such as the "ping" command
	Transport	TCP (RFC793), UDP The maximum number of connections is 8 (port 502)
Services	Transparent Ready class *(2)*	C20
	Web server	Simultaneous access via 3 Web browsers (more, according to the number of connections used) Server factory-configured and modifiable The memory available for the application is approximately 1 MB The factory-configured server contains the following pages: ■ Altivar viewer: displays the drive status and the state of its I/O, the main measurements (speed, current, etc) ■ Data editor: access to the drive parameters for configuration, adjustment and signalling ■ Altivar chart: simplified oscilloscope function ■ Security: configuration of passwords to access viewing and modification ■ FDR Agent: configuration of the "Faulty Device Replacement" parameters ■ IO Scanner: configuration of periodic variables for controlling and monitoring the drive via the PLC, etc. ■ Ethernet statistics: drive identification (IP addresses, version, etc.) from the Ethernet transmission statistics
	Messaging	Read Holding Registers (03), 63 words maximum Read Input Registers (04), 63 words maximum Write Single Register (06) Write Multiple Registers (16), 63 words maximum Read/Write Multiple Registers (23) Read Device Identification (43) Diagnostics (08)
	Periodic variables	I/O scanning service (can be inhibited): ■ 10 control variables which can be assigned by the PowerSuite software workshop or the standard Web server ■ 10 monitoring variables which can be assigned by the PowerSuite software workshop or the standard Web server The Global Data service is not supported
	Functional profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control" I/O profile
	Network management	SNMP
	File transfer	FTP for Web server and TFTP for FDR
	FDR (Faulty Device Replacement)	Yes
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Time out can be set between 0.5 and 60 s via the terminal, the PowerSuite software workshop or the standard Web server
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	5 LEDs on the card: "RX" (reception), "TX" (transmission), "FLT" (Ethernet fault), "STS" (IP address) and "10/100" Mbps (speed)
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received
	Via the Web server	Number of frames received Number of incorrect frames

(1) For Ethernet TCP/IP network, see pages 210 to 215.
(2) Please consult our "Ethernet TCP/IP Transparent Factory" specialist catalogue.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Characteristics of the Modbus/Uni-Telway card VW3 A3 303

Structure	Connector	One 9-way female SUB-D connector
	Transmission speed	Configurable via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop: ■ 4800 bps ■ 9600 bps ■ 19200 bps
	Polarization	Type of polarization can be configured by switches on the card: ■ No polarization impedances (supplied by the wiring system, for example, in the master) ■ Two 4.7 kΩ polarization resistors
	Selection of the protocol	Via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop: ■ Modbus RTU ■ Modbus ASCII ■ Uni-Telway
Services	Functional profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control" I/O profile
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Fixed time out: 10 s
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	2 LEDs on the card: "RUN" (status) and "ERR" (fault)
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received

Characteristics of the Modbus protocol *(1)*

Structure	Physical interface	2-wire RS 485, 4-wire RS 485
	Transmission mode	RTU, ASCII
	Format	Configurable via the display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop: In RTU mode only: ■ 8 bits, odd parity, 1 stop ■ 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop ■ 8 bits, even parity, 1 stop ■ 8 bits, no parity, 2 stop In RTU and ASCII modes: ■ 7 bits, even parity, 1 stop ■ 7 bits, odd parity, 1 stop ■ 7 bits, even parity, 2 stop ■ 7 bits, odd parity, 2 stop
	Address	1 to 247, configurable using switches on the card.
Service	Messaging	Read Holding Registers (03), 63 words maximum Read Input Registers (04), 63 words maximum Write Single Register (06) Write Multiple Registers (16), 61 words maximum Read/Write Multiple Registers (23) Read Device Identification (43) Diagnostics (08)

Characteristics of the Uni-Telway protocol *(2)*

Structure	Physical interface	2-wire RS 485
	Format	8 bits, odd parity, 1 stop
	Address	1 to 147, configurable using switches on the card.
Service	Messaging	Read word (04h) Write word (14h) Read object (36h), 63 words maximum Write object (37h), 60 words maximum Identification (0Fh) Protocol version (30h) Mirror (FAh) Read error counters (A2h) Reset counters (A4h)

Characteristics *(continued)*

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Characteristics of the Fipio cards VW3 A3 311 and VW3 A3 301 *(1)*

Type of card		Standard Fipio card VW3 A3 311	Substitution Fipio card VW3 A3 301
Structure	Connector	One 9-way male SUB-D connector	
	Transmission speed	1 Mbps	
	Address	1 to 62, configurable by switches on the card	
Services	Adjustment using PLC software (Unity, PL7)	No	Yes (limited to ATV 58 or ATV 58F compatibility parameters)
	Periodic variables	8 control variables which can be assigned by communication scanner 8 monitoring variables which can be assigned by communication scanner PKW indexed periodic variable (settings)	5 control variables 8 monitoring variables
	Communication profile	FED C 32	Specific to the Altivar 58 or Altivar 58F drive (FSD C 8P)
	Functional profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control" I/O profile	
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Fixed time out: 256 ms	
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	4 LEDs on the card: "RUN" (status), "ERR" (fault), "COM" (data exchange) and "I/O" (minor internal fault)	
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received Periodic variables (communication scanner)	

Characteristics of the Modbus Plus card VW3 A3 302 *(2)*

Structure	Connector	One 9-way female SUB-D connector	
	Transmission speed	1 Mbps	
	Address	1 to 64, configurable by switches on the card	
Services	Messaging	Yes (Modbus)	
	Periodic variables	"Peer Cop": 8 control variables which can be assigned by communication scanner "Global data": 8 monitoring variables which can be assigned by communication scanner	
	Functional profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control". I/O profile	
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Time out can be set between 0.1 and 60 s via the terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop.	
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	1 LED on the card: "MB+" (status)	
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received Periodic variables (communication scanner)	

(1) For the Fipio bus, see pages 216 to 219.
(2) For the Modbus Plus network, see pages 224 to 227.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Characteristics of the Profibus DP card VW3 A3 307

Structure	Connector	One 9-way female SUB-D connector
	Transmission speed	9600 bps, 19.2 Kbps, 93.75 Kbps, 187.5 Kbps, 500 Kbps, 1.5 Mbps, 3 Mbps, 6 Mbps or 12 Mbps
	Address	1 to 126, configurable by switches on the card
Services	Periodic variables	PPO type 5 8 control variables which can be assigned by communication scanner 8 monitoring variables which can be assigned by communication scanner PKW indexed periodic variable (settings)
	Functional profiles	CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control" I/O profile
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Time out can be set via the Profibus DP network configurator
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	2 LED on the card: "ST" (status) and "DX" (data exchange)
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received Periodic variables (communication scanner)
Description file		A single gsd file is supplied on the documentation CD-ROM for the whole range or can be downloaded from the Internet at "www.telemecanique.com". This file does not contain the description of the drive parameters.

Characteristics of the DeviceNet card VW3 A3 309

Structure	Connector	One removable screw connector, 5 contacts at intervals of 5.08
	Transmission speed	125 Kbps, 250 Kbps or 500 Kbps, configurable using switches on the card
	Address	1 to 63, configurable by switches on the card
Services	Periodic variables	ODVA assemblies type 20, 21, 70 and 71 Allen-Bradley® assemblies type 103, 104 and 105 Communication scanner assemblies 100 and 101
	Periodic exchange mode	Inputs: Polled, Change of state, Cyclic Outputs: Polled
	Functional profiles	ODVA AC Drive (02) profile Allen-Bradley drive profile CiA DSP 402: "Device Profile Drives and Motion Control" I/O profile
	Auto Device Replacement	No
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Time out can be set via the DeviceNet network configurator
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	One two-tone LED on the card: "MNS" (status)
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received
Description file		A single eds file is supplied on the documentation CD-ROM for the whole range or can be downloaded from the Internet at "www.telemecanique.com". This file contains the description of the drive parameters.

Characteristics of the INTERBUS card VW3 A3 304

Structure	Connector	2 connectors: One 9-way male SUB-D and one 9-way female SUB-D
	Power supply	The card is powered by the drive. To ensure that the INTERBUS subscriber continues to operate during line supply failures to the power section, fit a separate power supply for the drive control section.
Services	Messaging	PCP: ■ Read: read a parameter ■ Write: write a parameter ■ Initiate: initialize the communication relationship ■ Abort: abort the communication relationship ■ Status: drive communication status ■ Get-OV: read an object description ■ Identify: identification of the card
	Periodic variables	2 control variables (command and reference) 2 monitoring variables (status and speed output)
	Functional profile	Profile 21
	Communication monitoring	Can be inhibited Fixed time out: 640 ms
Diagnostics	Using LEDs	5 LEDs on the card: "U" (power supply), "RC" (bus input), "Rd" (bus output), "BA" (periodic data) and "TR" (messaging)
	Using the graphic display terminal	Control word received Reference received

References

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

VW3 A3 311

TSX FP ACC12

490 NAD 911 03

Communication cards *(1) (2)*

Description	Use	Reference	Weight kg
Ethernet *(3)*	To be connected on a Hub or Switch using a cable 490 NTW 000 ●●. See pages 214 and 215	**VW3 A3 310**	0.300
Modbus/ Uni-Telway	To be connected on subscriber socket TSX SCA 62 using cable VW3 A8 306 2. See pages 221 and 229	**VW3 A3 303**	0.300
Standard Fipio	To be connected using a connector TSX FP ACC 12 with an extension cable TSX FP CC●● or a drop cable TSX FP CA●●. This card should be used for new installations. It is also used to replace an ATV 58 or ATV 58F drive equipped with a VW3 A58 311 card by an ATV 71 drive. To replace an ATV 58 or ATV 58F drive equipped with a VW3 58 301 card by an ATV 71 drive, use the Fipio substitution card VW3 A3 301. See pages 218 and 219	**VW3 A3 311**	0.300
Substitution Fipio	This card is also used to replace an ATV 58 or ATV 58F drive equipped with a VW3 A58 301 card by an ATV 71 drive. To replace an ATV 58 or ATV 58F drive equipped with a VW3 A58 311 card by a ATV 71 drive, use the standard Fipio card VW3 A3 311. See pages 218 and 219	**VW3 A3 301**	0.300
Modbus Plus	To be connected to the Modbus Plus IP 20 tap 990 NAD 230 00 using a cable 990 NAD 219●0. See pages 226 and 227	**VW3 A3 302**	0.300
Profibus DP	To be connected using a connector 490 NAD 911●● to the Profibus cable TSX PBS CA●00 *(4)*	**VW3 A3 307**	0.300
DeviceNet	The card is equipped with a removable 5-way screw terminal block.	**VW3 A3 309**	0.300
INTERBUS	To be connected using cable 170 MCI ●●●00 *(4)*	**VW3 A3 304**	0.300

(1) The Altivar 71 drive can only take one communication card. Consult the summary tables of possible drive, option and accessory combinations (see pages 100 to 107).
(2) The user manuals are supplied on CD-ROM or can be downloaded from the Internet at www.telemecanique.com. For the Profibus DP and DeviceNet cards, the description files in gsd or eds format are also supplied on CD-ROM or can be downloaded from the Internet at www.telemecanique.com.
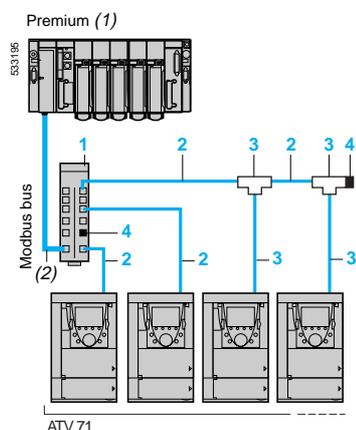*(3) Please consult our "Ethernet TCP/IP Transparent Factory" specialist catalogue.*
(4) Please consult our "Automation Platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" specialist catalogue.
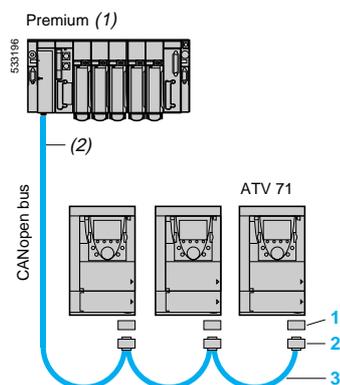
Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Communication buses and networks

Premium *(1)*

Modbus bus

ATV 71

Example of Modbus diagram, connections via splitter blocks and RJ45 connectors

Premium *(1)*

CANopen bus

ATV 71

Example of CANopen diagram

VW3 CAN A71

VW3 CAN KCDF 180 T

Connection accessories				
Description	**No.**	**Length m**	**Unit reference**	**Weight kg**
Modbus bus				
Modbus splitter block 10 RJ45 connectors and 1 screw terminal block	**1**	–	**LU9 GC3**	0.500
Cables for Modbus bus equipped with 2 RJ45 connectors	**2**	0.3	**VW3 A8 306 R03**	0.025
		1	**VW3 A8 306 R10**	0.060
		3	**VW3 A8 306 R30**	0.130
Modbus T-junction boxes (with integrated cable)	**3**	0.3	**VW3 A8 306 TF03**	–
		1	**VW3 A8 306 TF10**	–
Line terminator For RJ45 connector *(3)*	**4**	–	**VW3 A8 306 RC**	0.010

Description	**No.**	**Length m**	**Reference**	**Weight kg**
CANopen machine bus *(4)*				
CANopen adapter for mounting on the RJ45 socket in the drive control terminals. The adaptor provides a 9-way male SUB-D connector conforming to the CANopen standard (CIA DRP 303-1).	**1**	–	**VW3 CAN A71**	–
CANopen connector *(5)* 9-way female SUB-D with line terminator (can be disabled) 180° cable outlet for 2 CANopen cables. CAN-H, CAN-L, CAN-GND connection	**2**	–	**VW3 CAN KCDF 180T**	–
CANopen cables *(1)* Standard cable. Low smoke, zero halogen. Flame retardant (IEC 60332-1).	**3**	50	**TSX CAN CA 50**	–
		100	**TSX CAN CA 100**	–
		300	**TSX CAN CA 300**	–
CANopen cables *(1)* UL certification. Flame retardant (IEC 60332-2).	**3**	50	**TSX CAN CB 50**	–
		100	**TSX CAN CB 100**	–
		300	**TSX CAN CB 300**	–
CANopen cables *(1)* Cable for harsh environments *(5)* or mobile installation. Low smoke, zero halogen. Flame retardant (IEC 60332-1).	**3**	50	**TSX CAN CD 50**	–
		100	**TSX CAN CD 100**	–
		300	**TSX CAN CD 300**	–

(1) Please consult our "Automation Platform Modicon Premium - Unity & PL7 software" and "Automation platform Modicon TSX Micro – PL7 software" specialist catalogues.
(2) Cable depending on the type of controller or PLC.
(3) Sold in lots of 2.
(4) Please consult our "Machines and installations with CANopen" specialist catalogue.
(5) For ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4, this connector can be replaced by connector TSX CAN KCDF 180T.
*(6) Harsh environments:*
   - resistance to hydrocarbons, industrial oils, detergents, solder splashes
   - relative humidity up to 100%
   - saline atmosphere
   - significant temperature variations
   - operating temperature between -10°C and +70°C.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: resistance braking units

Presentation

ATV 71HC20N4…HC50N4

L1
L2
L3

M1
3~

Braking unit
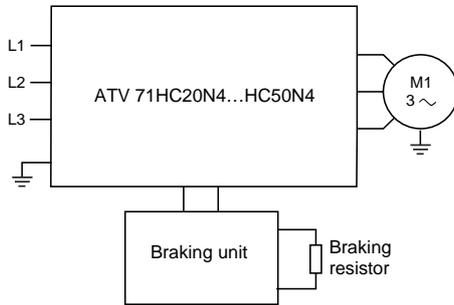
Braking resistor

Resistance braking enables the Altivar 71 drive to operate while braking to a standstill or during "generator" operation, by dissipating the energy in the braking resistor.

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HC16N4, ATV 71W●●●N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives have a built-in dynamic brake transistor.

For ATV 71HC20N4…HC50N4 drives, a braking unit must be used.
This is controlled by the drive:
■ For ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4 drives, the braking unit is mounted directly on the left-hand side of the drive, see dimensions page 109
■ For ATV 71HC40N4, HC50N4 drives, the braking unit is an external module, see dimensions page 118

Applications

High-inertia machines, machines with cycles and fast cycles, high-power machines performing vertical movements.

Characteristics

Type of braking unit			VW3 A7 101	VW3 A7 102
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	-10…+50	
	Storage	°C	-25…+70	
Degree of protection of enclosure			IP 20	
Degree of pollution			2 according to standard EN 50178	
Relative humidity			Class 3K3 without condensation	
Maximum operating altitude		m	2000	
Vibration resistance			0.2 gn	
Nominal line supply voltage and drive supply voltage (rms value)		V	380 – 15%…480 + 10% $\sim$	
Engage threshold		V	785 ± 1% $=$	
Maximum DC bus voltage		V	850	
Maximum braking power on 400 V $\sim$ line supply	785 V $=$ (1)	kW	420	750
Percentage of conduction time at constant power at 785 V $=$			5% at 420 kW	5% at 750 kW
			15% at 320 kW	15% at 550 kW
			50% at 250 kW	50% at 440 kW
Cycle time		s	≤ 240	
Maximum continuous power		kW	200	400
Braking power on a vertical movement (values given for a cycle time of 240 s)			250 kW 420 kW 0 kW 110 s 10 s 120 s	440 kW 750 kW 0 kW 110 s 10 s 120 s
Thermal protection			Integrated, via thermal probe	
Forced ventilation		m³/h	100	600
Mounting			Vertical	
Minimum resistance value to be associated with the braking unit		Ω	1.05	0.7

(1) Braking unit engage threshold

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: resistance braking units

Braking units

Supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz

For drives	Power		Loss	Cable (drive-braking unit)		Cable (braking unit-resistors)		Reference	Weight
	Contin.	Max.	Con-tinuous power	Cross-section	Max. length	Cross-section	Max. length		
	kW	kW	W	mm²	m	mm²	m		kg
ATV 71HC20N4… HC28N4	200	420	550	– Internal connections	–	2 x 95	50	**VW3 A7 101**	30.000
ATV 71HC31N4… HC50N4	400	750	750	2 x 150	1	2 x 150	50	**VW3 A7 102**	80.000

Note: *To increase the braking power, several braking resistors can be mounted in parallel on the same braking unit.*
In this case, do not forget to take account of the minimum resistance value on each unit, see characteristics page 60.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: braking resistors

Presentation

The braking resistor enables the Altivar 71 drive to operate while braking to a standstill or during slowdown braking, by dissipating the braking energy.
It enables maximum transient braking torque.
The resistors are designed to be mounted on the outside of the enclosure, but should not inhibit natural cooling. Air inlets and outlets must not be obstructed in any way. The air must be free of dust, corrosive gas and condensation.

Applications

Inertia machines, machines with cycles

General characteristics

Type of braking resistor			VW3 A7 701…709	VW3 A7 710…718
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	0…+50	
	Storage	°C	-25…+70	
Degree of protection of enclosure			IP 20	IP 23
Thermal protection			Via temperature controlled switch or via the drive	Via thermal overload relay
Temperature controlled switch *(1)*	Tripping temperature	°C	120	–
	Max. voltage – max. current		250 V $\sim$ -1 A	–
	Min. voltage – min. current		24 V $=$ -0.1 A	–
	Maximum contact resistance	mΩ	60	–
Operating factor for the dynamic brake transistors			The internal circuits of Altivar 71 drives rated 160 kW or less have a built-in dynamic brake transistor	
	ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 ATV 71W●●●N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		The dynamic brake transistor is sized so that it can tolerate: ■ the nominal motor power continuously ■ 150% of the nominal motor power for 60 s	
	ATV 71HD90N4…HC16N4		The dynamic brake transistor is sized so that it can tolerate: ■ 75% of the nominal motor power continuously ■ 150% of the nominal motor power for 10 s	

Connection characteristics

Type of terminal			Drive connection	Temperature-controlled switch
Maximum connection capacity	VW3 A7 701…703		4 mm² (AWG 28)	1.5 mm² (AWG 16)
	VW3 A7 704…709		Bar connection, M6	2.5 mm² (AWG 14)
	VW3 A7 710…718		Bar connection, M10	–

Minimum ohmic value of the resistors to be associated with the Altivar 71 drive, at 20°C *(2)*

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X and ATV 71H●●●N4 drives

Type of drive	ATV 71H	037M3, 075M3	U15M3	U22M3, U30M3	U40M3	U55M3	U75M3				
Minimum value	Ω	44	33	22	16	11	8				

Type of drive	ATV 71H	D11M3X, D15M3X	D18M3X	D22M3X, D30M3X	D37M3X… D55M3X	D75M3X					
Minimum value	Ω	3	4	3.3	1.7	1.3					

Type of drive	ATV 71H	075N4… U22N4	U30N4, U40N4	U55N4	U75N4	D11N4	D15N4, D18N4	D22N4, D30N4	D37N4	D45N4, D55N4	D75N4
Minimum value	Ω	56	34	23	19	12	7	13.3	6.7	5	3.3

Type of drive	ATV 71H	D90N4	C11N4… C16N4	C20N4… C28N4	C31N4… C50N4						
Minimum value	Ω	2.5	1.9	1.05	0.7						

ATV 71W●●●N4 drives

Type of drive	ATV 71W	075N4… U22N4	U30N4, U40N4	U55N4	U75N4	D11N4	D15N4, D18N4	D22N4, D30N4	D37N4	D45N4, D55N4	D75N4
Minimum value	Ω	56	34	23	19	12	7	13.3	6.7	5	3.3

ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives

Type of drive	ATV 71P	075N4Z… U22N4Z	U30N4Z… U40N4Z	U55N4Z	U75N4Z			
Minimum value	Ω	56	34	23	19			

(1) The switch should be connected in the sequence (use for signalling, or in the line contactor control).
(2) The minimum ohmic value is determined at a temperature of 20°C. In an environment where the temperature is below 20°C,
*   make sure that the minimum ohmic value recommended in the table is observed.*

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: braking resistors

Braking resistors

For drives	Ohmic value at 20°C	Average power available at 50°C *(1)*	Reference	Weight
	Ω	kW		kg
Supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz				
ATV 71H037M3, H075M3	100	0.05	**VW3 A7 701**	1.900
ATV 71HU15M3, HU22M3	60	0.1	**VW3 A7 702**	2.400
ATV 71HU30M3, HU40M3	28	0.2	**VW3 A7 703**	3.500
ATV 71HU55M3, HU75M3	15	1	**VW3 A7 704**	11.000
ATV 71HD11M3X	10	1	**VW3 A7 705**	11.000
ATV 71HD15M3X	8	1	**VW3 A7 706**	11.000
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X	5	1	**VW3 A7 707**	11.000
ATV 71HD30M3X	4	1	**VW3 A7 708**	11.000
ATV 71HD37M3X, HD45M3X	2.5	1	**VW3 A7 709**	11.000
ATV 71HD55M3X	1.8	15.3	**VW3 A7 713**	50.000
ATV 71HD75M3X	1.4	20.9	**VW3 A7 714**	63.000
Supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz				
ATV 71H075N4…HU40N4 ATV 71W075N4, WU40N4 ATV 71P075N4Z, PU40N4Z	100	0.05	**VW3 A7 701**	1.900
ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71WU55N4, WU75N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	60	0.1	**VW3 A7 702**	2.400
ATV 71HD11N4, HD15N4 ATV 71WD11N4, WD15N4	28	0.2	**VW3 A7 703**	3.500
ATV 71HD18N4…HD30N4 ATV 71WD18N4…WD30N4	15	1	**VW3 A7 704**	11.000
ATV 71HD37N4 ATV 71WD37N4	10	1	**VW3 A7 705**	11.000
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4	5	1	**VW3 A7 707**	11.000
ATV 71HD90N4	2.75	25	**VW3 A7 710**	80.000
ATV 71HC11N4, HC13N4	2.1	37	**VW3 A7 711**	86.000
ATV 71HC16N4	2.1	44	**VW3 A7 712**	104.000
ATV 71HC20N4	1.05	56	**VW3 A7 715**	136.000
ATV 71HC25N4, HC28N4	1.05	75	**VW3 A7 716**	172.000
ATV 71HC31N4, HC40N4	0.7	112	**VW3 A7 717**	266.000
ATV 71HC50N4	0.7	150	**VW3 A7 718**	350.000

(1) Operating factor for resistors: the value of the average power that can be dissipated at 50°C from the resistor into the casing is determined for an operating factor during braking that corresponds to the majority of normal applications.
For VW3 A7 701…709:
- 2 s braking with 0.6 Tn braking torque for a 40 s cycle
- 0.8 s braking with 1.5 Tn braking torque for a 40 s cycle.
For VW3 A7 710…71:
- 10 s braking with 2 Tn braking torque for a 30 s cycle.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: hoist resistors

Presentation

The hoist resistor is a braking resistor which enables the Altivar 71 drive to operate while braking to a standstill or during slowdown braking, by dissipating the braking energy.
It enables maximum transient braking torque.
The resistors are designed to be mounted on the outside of the enclosure, but should not inhibit natural cooling. Air inlets and outlets must not be obstructed in any way.
The air must be free of dust, corrosive gas and condensation.

Applications

Machines performing vertical movements, machines with fast cycles,
high-inertia machines.

General characteristics

Type of hoist resistor			VW3 A7 801	VW3 A7 802…A7 808	VW3 A7 809…A7 817
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	0…+50		
	Storage	°C	-25…+75		- 25…+ 65
Degree of protection of enclosure			IP 23 if horizontal mounting IP 20 in other cases	IP 23	
Thermal protection			Via thermal overload relay		
Operating factor for the dynamic brake transistors			The internal circuits of Altivar 71 drives rated 160 kW or less have a built-in dynamic brake transistor		
	ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 ATV 71W●●●N4 ATV 71P●●●N4Z		The dynamic brake transistor is sized so that it can tolerate: ■ the nominal motor power continuously ■ 150% of the nominal motor power for 60 s		
	ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 (1)		The dynamic brake transistor is sized so that it can operate on a 240 s cycle at: ■ 88% of the nominal motor power for 50% of the cycle time ■ 150% of the nominal motor power for 5% of the cycle		

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity	VW3 A7 801	Bar connection, M6
	VW3 A7 802…817	Bar connection, M10

Minimum ohmic value of the resistors to be associated with the Altivar 71 drive, at 20°C (2)

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X and ATV 71H●●●N4 drives

Type of drive	ATV 71H	037M3, 075M3	U15M3	U22M3, U30M3	U40M3	U55M3	U75M3			
Minimum value	Ω	44	33	22	16	11	8			

Type of drive	ATV 71H	D11M3X, D15M3X	D18M3X	D22M3X, D30M3X	D37M3X… D55M3X	D75M3X				
Minimum value	Ω	3	4	3.3	1.7	1.3				

Type of drive	ATV 71H	075N4… U22N4	U30N4, U40N4	U55N4	U75N4	D11N4	D15N4, D18N4	D22N4, D30N4	D37N4	D45N4, D55N4	D75N4
Minimum value	Ω	56	34	23	19	12	7	13.3	6.7	5	3.3

Type of drive	ATV 71H	D90N4	C11N4… C16N4	C20N4… C28N4	C31N4… C50N4						
Minimum value	Ω	2.5	1.9	1.05	0.7						

ATV 71W●●●N4 drives

Type of drive	ATV 71W	075N4… U22N4	U30N4, U40N4	U55N4	U75N4	D11N4	D15N4, D18N4	D22N4, D30N4	D37N4	D45N4, D55N4	D75N4
Minimum value	Ω	56	34	23	19	12	7	13.3	6.7	5	3.3

ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives

Type of drive	ATV 71P	075N4Z… U22N4Z	U30N4Z… U40N4Z	U55N4Z	U75N4Z						
Minimum value	Ω	56	34	23	19						

(1) For ATV 71HC20N4…HC50N4 drives, a braking unit must be used, see page 60.
(2) The minimum ohmic value is determined at a temperature of 20°C. In an environment where the temperature is below 20°C, make sure that the minimum ohmic value recommended in the table is observed.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: hoist resistors

Hoist resistors

For drives	Ohmic value at 20°C	Average power available at 50°C *(1)*	Reference	Weight
	Ω	kW		kg
Supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz				
ATV 71H037M3, H075M3	100	1.6	**VW3 A7 801**	6.000
ATV 71HU15M3	60	5.6	**VW3 A7 802**	21.000
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3	24.5	9.8	**VW3 A7 803**	28.000
ATV 71HU55M3, HU75M3	14	22.4	**VW3 A7 804**	54.000
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X	8.1	44	**VW3 A7 805**	92.000
ATV 71HD18M3X	4.2	62	**VW3 A7 806**	126.000
ATV 71HD22M3X, HD30M3X	3.5	19.5	**VW3 A7 807**	51.000
ATV 71HD37M3X, HD45M3X	1.85	27.4	**VW3 A7 808**	94.000
ATV 71HD55M3X	1.8	30.6	**VW3 A7 809**	103.000
ATV 71HD75M3X	1.4	44	**VW3 A7 810**	119.000
Supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz				
ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU22N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	100	1.6	**VW3 A7 801**	6.000
ATV 71HU30N4…HU55N4 ATV 71WU30N4…WU55N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z…PU55N4Z	60	5.6	**VW3 A7 802**	21.000
ATV 71HU75N4, HD11N4 ATV 71WU75N4, WD11N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	24.5	9.8	**VW3 A7 803**	28.000
ATV 71HD15N4…HD30N4 ATV 71WD15N4…WD30N4	14	22.4	**VW3 A7 804**	54.000
ATV 71HD37N4…HD55N4 ATV 71W37N4…WD55N4	8.1	44	**VW3 A7 805**	92.000
ATV 71HD75N4 ATV 71WD75N4	4.2	62	**VW3 A7 806**	126.000
ATV 71HD90N4	2.75	56	**VW3 A7 811**	130.000
ATV 71HC11N4, HC13N4	2.1	75	**VW3 A7 812**	181.000
ATV 71HC16N4	2.1	112	**VW3 A7 813**	250.000
ATV 71HC20N4	1.05	112	**VW3 A7 814**	280.000
ATV 71HC25N4, HC28N4	1.05	150	**VW3 A7 815**	362.000
ATV 71HC31N4, HC40N4	0.7	225	**VW3 A7 816**	543.000
ATV 71HC50N4	0.7	330	**VW3 A7 817**	642.000

(1) Operating factor for hoist resistors: the value of the average power that can be dissipated at 50°C from the resistor is determined by an operating factor during braking.
For VW3 A7 801…808:
- 100 s braking with 1 Tn braking torque for a 200 s cycle
- 20 s braking with 1.6 Tn braking torque for a 200 s cycle.
For VW3 A7 809…817:
- 110 s braking with 1.25 Tn braking torque for a 240 s cycle
- 10 s braking with 2 Tn braking torque for a 240 s cycle.

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: braking units and resistors

Determining the braking unit and resistor

Calculating the various braking powers makes it possible to determine the braking unit and the braking resistor.

### Presentation of the two main types of operation: A and B

A The braking power during deceleration is characterized by a peak power $\hat{P}_f$ obtained at the start of deceleration, which decreases to 0 in proportion with the speed.
Example: Stopping centrifuges, translational movement, change of direction, etc

B Braking power at constant speed n_2.
Example: Vertical downward movement, motor/generator test bench, gravity conveyors, etc.

n_1	Motor speed	[rpm]
n_2	Motor speed during deceleration	[rpm]
T_l	Load torque	[Nm]
T_b	Braking torque	[Nm]
$\hat{P}_b$	Maximum braking power	[W]
$\bar{P}_{bl}$	Average braking power during time t_b	[W]
t_b	Braking time	[s]
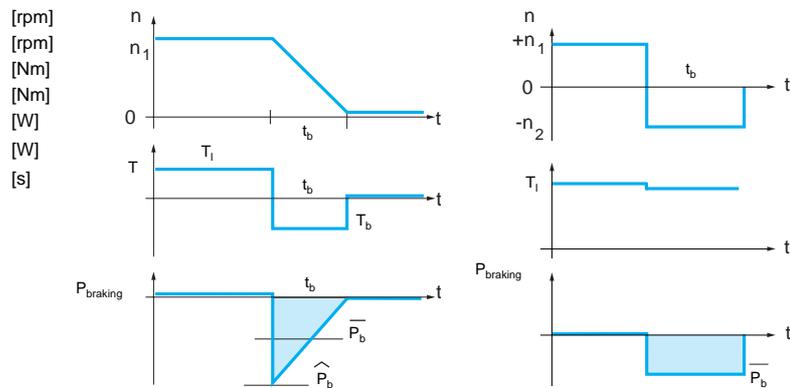
Note: These two types of operation can be combined.

Type A operation

Calculating the braking time from the inertia.
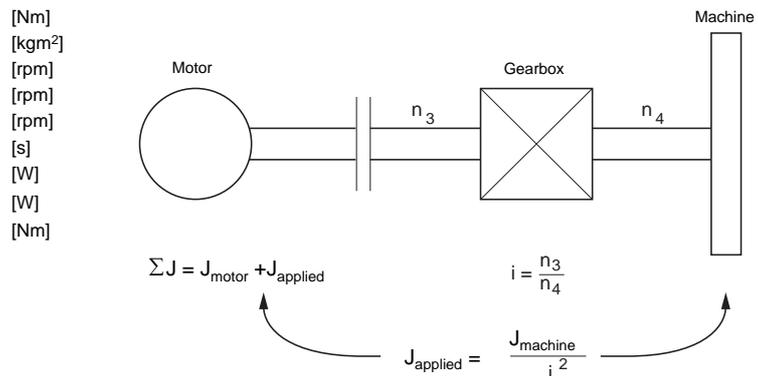
$$t_b = \frac{J \cdot \omega}{T_b + T_r}$$

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi \cdot n}{60}$$

$$T_b = \frac{\Sigma J \cdot (n_3 - n_4)}{9,55 \cdot t_b}$$

$$\hat{P}_b = \frac{T_b \cdot n_3}{9,55}$$

$$\bar{P}_b = \frac{\hat{P}_b}{2}$$

T_b	Motor braking torque	[Nm]
ΣJ	Total inertia applied to the motor	[kgm^2]
n	Motor speed	[rpm]
n_3	Motor speed ahead of gearbox	[rpm]
n_4	Motor speed after gearbox	[rpm]
t_b	Braking time	[s]
$\hat{P}_b$	Peak braking power	[W]
$\bar{P}_b$	Average braking power during time t_b	[W]
T_r	Resistive torque	[Nm]

$$\Sigma J = J_{motor} + J_{applied}$$

$$i = \frac{n_3}{n_4}$$

$$J_{applied} = \frac{J_{machine}}{i^2}$$

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: braking units and resistors

W	Kinetic energy	[Joule]
m	Weight	[kg]
v	Speed	[m/s]
t_b	Braking time	[s]
$\hat{P}_b$	Peak braking power	[W]
$\overline{P}_b$	Average braking power during time t_b	[W]
T_b	Braking torque	[Nm]
n	Motor speed	[rpm]
g	Acceleration	9.81 m/s^2
a	Deceleration	[m/s^2]
v	Linear downward speed	[m/s]
J	Moment of inertia	[kgms^2]
ω	Angular speed	[rad/s]
t_b	Downward stopping time	[s]

Type B operation

1 *Braking power of a load moving horizontally with constant deceleration (e.g.: carriage)*

$$W = \frac{m \cdot v^2}{2} \qquad \overline{P}_b = \frac{W}{t_b} \qquad \hat{P}_b = \overline{P}_b \cdot 2$$

2 *Braking power for an active load (e.g.: test bench)*

$$\overline{P}_b = \frac{T_b \cdot n}{9,95}$$

3 *Braking power for a downward vertical movement*

$$\overline{P}_b = m \cdot g \cdot v \qquad \hat{P}_b = m \cdot (g + a) \cdot v + \frac{J \cdot \omega^2}{t_f} \qquad \omega = \frac{2\pi \cdot n}{60}$$

All the braking power calculations are only true if it is assumed that there are no losses (η = 1) and that there is no resistive torque.
To be even more precise, the following must be considered:
■ the losses and the resistive torque of the system, which reduce the necessary braking power
■ the driving torque (the wind, for example) which increases the braking power

$\hat{P}_{bR}$	Maximum actual braking power	[W]
$\overline{P}_{bR}$	Continuous actual braking power	[W]
η_{total}	Total efficiency	
P_{load}	Braking power connected with the resistive or driving torque (not taken into account in the calculation). P_{load} can be positive or negative.	[W]
η_{drive}	Drive efficiency = 0.98	
η_{mec}	Mechanical efficiency	
η_{mot}	Motor efficiency	

The required braking power is calculated as follows:

$$\hat{P}_{bR} = (\hat{P}_b - P_{load}) \times \eta total \qquad \overline{P}_{bR} = (\overline{P}_b - P_{load}) \times \eta total$$
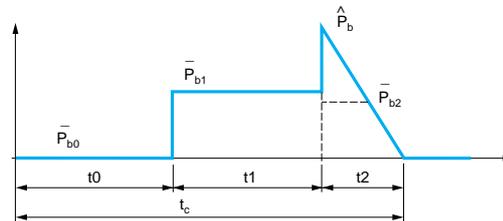
$$\eta_{total} = \eta_{mec} \times \eta_{mot} \times 0,98$$

U_{dc}	Braking unit engage threshold	[V]

For braking, the value of the braking resistor is selected to match the required power and the braking cycle.
In general:

$$\hat{P}_{bR} = \frac{U^2dc}{R} \Rightarrow R = \frac{U^2dc}{\hat{P}_{bR}}$$

Continuous power is obtained by taking the operating cycle into account.

t_c	Cycle time	[s]
$\overline{P}_{b0}$	Upward braking power, therefore zero	[W]
t_0	Rise time	[s]
$\overline{P}_{b1}$	Average braking power during downward movement	[W]
t_1	Downward movement time	[1]
$\hat{P}_b$	Peak braking power	[W]
$\overline{P}_{b2}$	Average power during braking to a standstill	[W]
t_2	Standstill braking time	[s]
$P_{continuous}$	$= \dfrac{\overline{P}_{b0} \times t_0 + \overline{P}_{b1} \times t_1 + \overline{P}_{b2} \times t_2}{t_c}$	[W]

The braking unit is selected taking the following into account:
■ the continuous power $\overline{P}_{f1}$
■ the average braking power during downward movement $\overline{P}_{f2}$
■ the peak power $\hat{P}_f$.
Depending on these elements, select the braking unit according to the characteristics on page 60.
The braking resistor is selected taking account of the same elements listed above, but with the addition of a check to ensure that the resistance value will allow the peak power to be exceeded $\left(R = \frac{U^2dc}{\hat{P}_f} \right)$.

Note: The resistance value must always be greater than or equal to the values given in the tables on pages 62 and 64.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves for resistors

Example of using characteristics curves

VW3 A7 710 (P continuous = 25 kW) for 2.75 Ω at 20°C

Example of using curves:

Point **A** *For a 200 s cycle, the resistance of 2.75 Ω accepts an overload of 7 x 25 kW (continuous power) for 24 s, i.e. braking 175 kW every 200 s.*

Point **B** *For a 120 s cycle, the resistance of 2.75 Ω accepts an overload of 5 x 25 kW (continuous power) for 20 s, i.e. braking 125 kW every 120 s.*

Point **C** *For a 60 s cycle, the resistance of 2.75 Ω accepts an overload of 5 x 25 kW (continuous power) for 10 s, i.e. braking 125 kW every 60 s.*
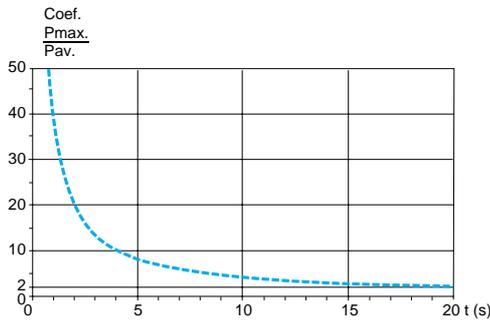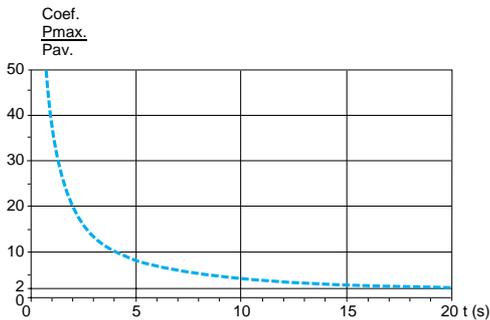
—— *P max./P av. (60 s cycle)*
- - - *P max./P av. (120 s cycle)*
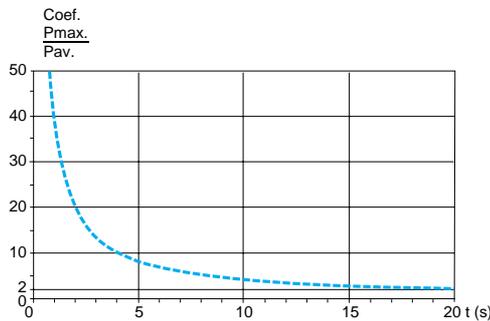—— *P max./P av. (200 s cycle)*
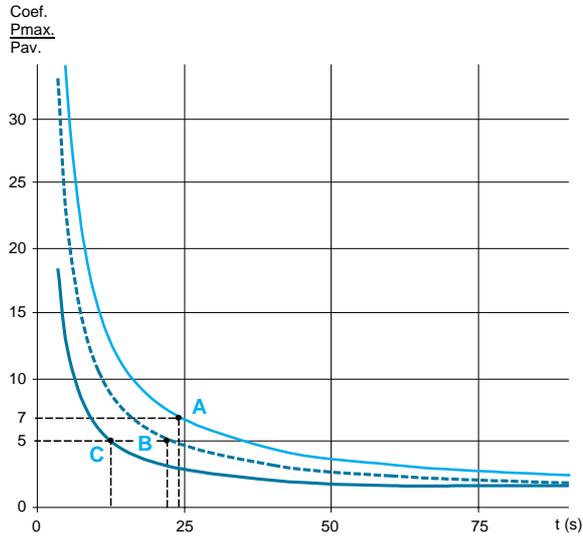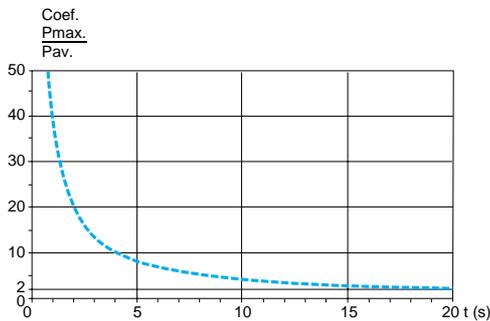
Braking resistors

VW3 A7 701 (P continuous = 0.05 kW)

VW3 A7 702 (P continuous = 0.1 kW)

VW3 A7 703 (P continuous = 0.2 kW)

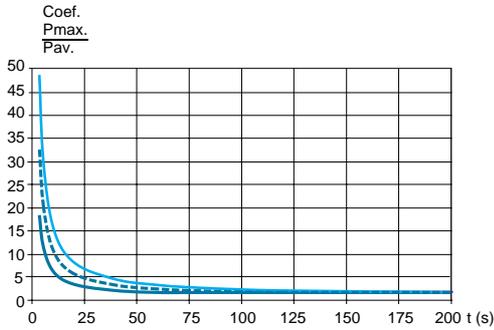### VW3 A7 704…709 (P continuous = 1 kW)

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
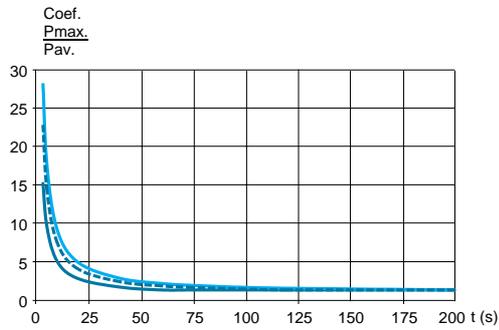# for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves for resistors

Braking resistors (continued)

VW3 A7 710 (P continuous = 25 kW)

VW3 A7 711 (P continuous = 37 kW)

VW3 A7 712 (P continuous = 44 kW)

VW3 A7 713 (P continuous = 15.3 kW)

VW3 A7 714 (P continuous = 20.9 kW)

VW3 A7 715 (P continuous = 56 kW)
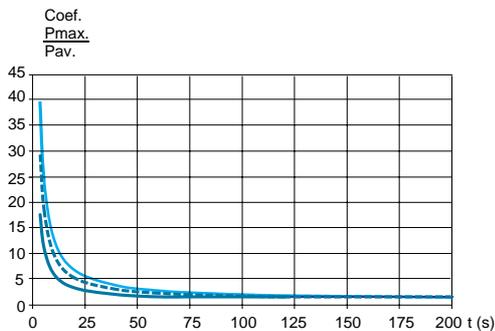
—— *P max./P av. (60 s cycle)*
---- *P max./P av. (120 s cycle)*
—— *P max./P av. (200 s cycle)*

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves for resistors

Braking resistors (continued)

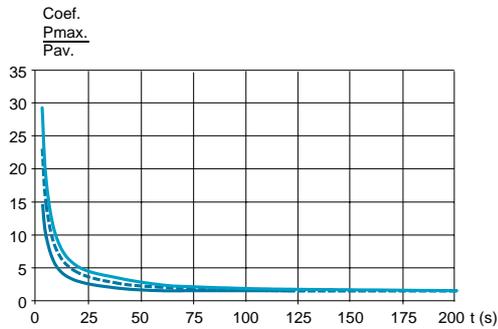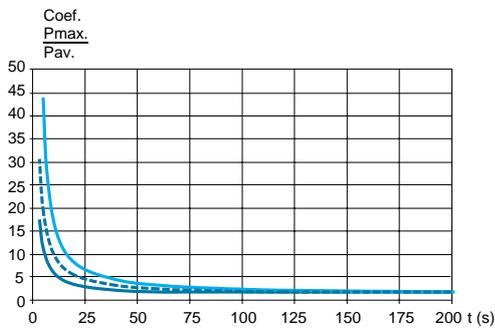### VW3 A7 716 (P continuous = 75 kW)
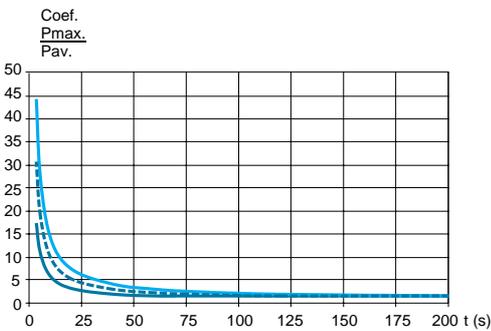

VW3 A7 717 (P continuous = 112 kW)

VW3 A7 718 (P continuous = 150 kW)

—— *P max./P av. (60 s cycle)*
---- *P max./P av. (120 s cycle)*
—— *P max./P av. (200 s cycle)*

⊞ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves for resistors

Hoist resistors

VW3 A7 801 (P continuous = 1.6 kW)
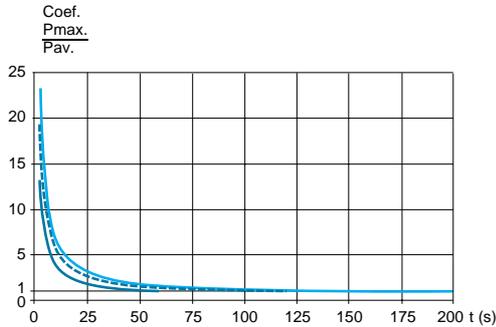
VW3 A7 802 (P continuous = 5.6 kW)
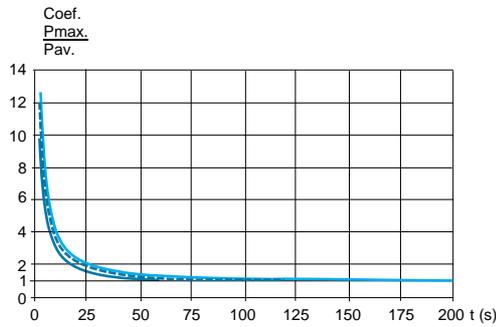
VW3 A7 803 (P continuous = 9.8 kW)
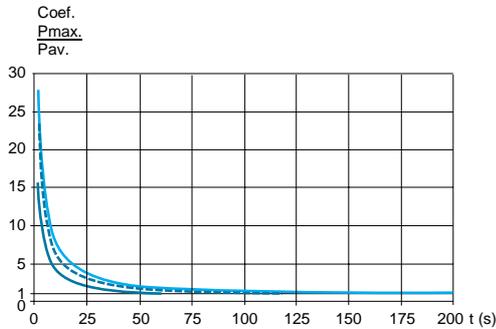
VW3 A7 804 (P continuous = 22.4 kW)
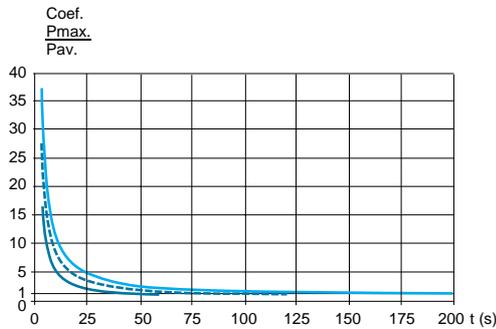
VW3 A7 805 (P continuous = 44 kW)
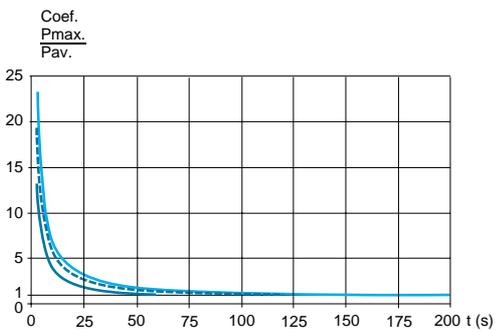
VW3 A7 806 (P continuous = 62 kW)
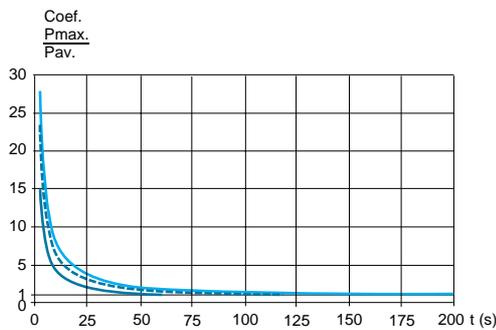
——— *P max./P av. (60 s cycle)*
---- *P max./P av. (120 s cycle)*
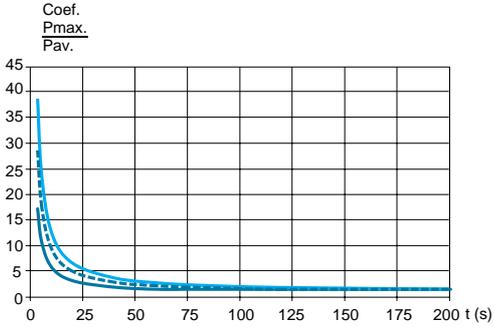——— *P max./P av. (200 s cycle)*

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves for resistors

Hoist resistors (continued)

VW3 A7 807 (P continuous = 19.5 kW)

Coef.
Pmax.
Pav.

VW3 A7 808 (P continuous = 27.4 kW)

Coef.
Pmax.
Pav.

VW3 A7 809 (P continuous = 30.6 kW)

Coef.
Pmax.
Pav.
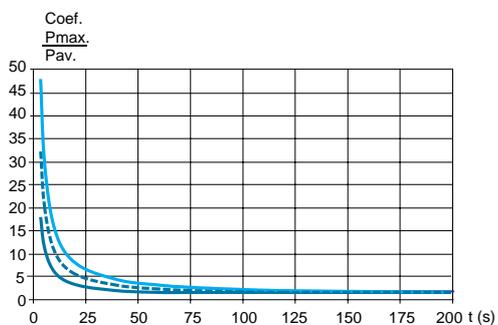
VW3 A7 810 (P continuous = 44 kW)

Coef.
Pmax.
Pav.
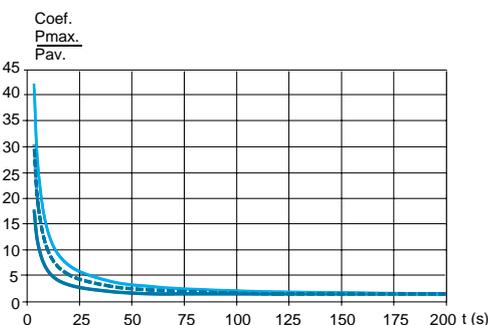
VW3 A7 811 (P continuous = 56 kW)

Coef.
Pmax.
Pav.
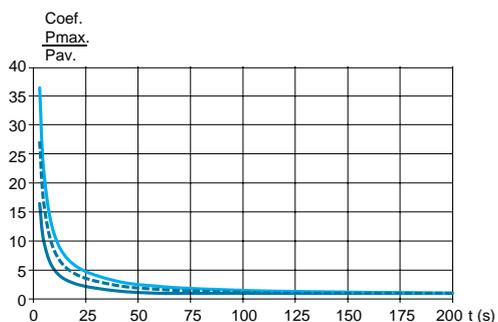
VW3 A7 812 (P continuous = 75 kW)
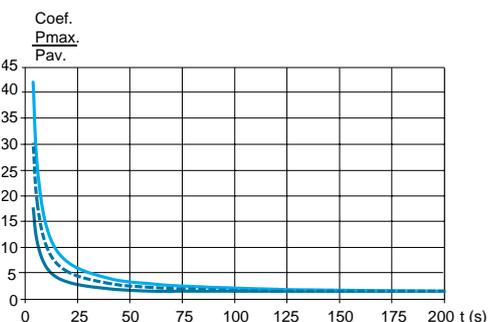
Coef.
Pmax.
Pav.

—— P max./P av. (60 s cycle)
---- P max./P av. (120 s cycle)
—— P max./P av. (200 s cycle)

Telemecanique

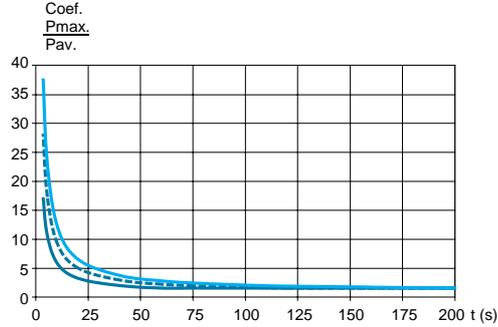# Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71

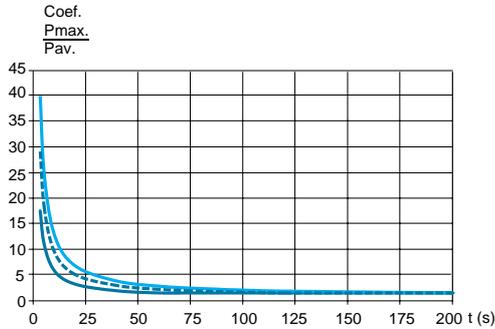Characteristics curves for resistors

Hoist resistors (continued)

VW3 A7 813 (P continuous = 112 kW)
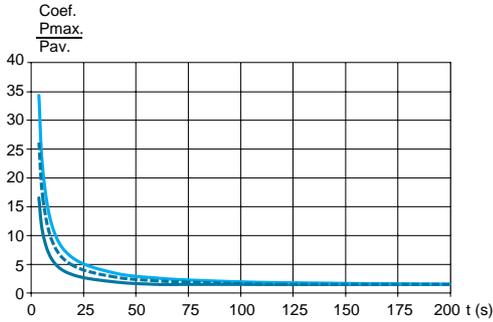
VW3 A7 814 (P continuous = 112 kW)
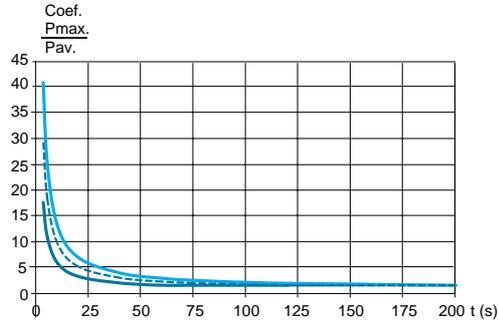
VW3 A7 815 (P continuous = 150 kW)
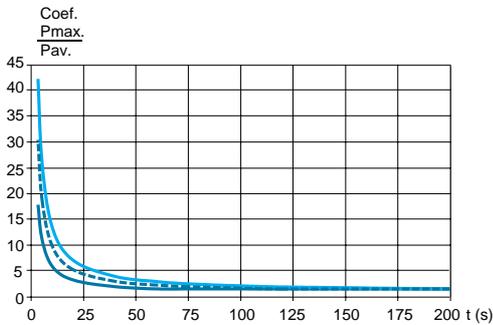
VW3 A7 816 (P continuous = 225 kW)
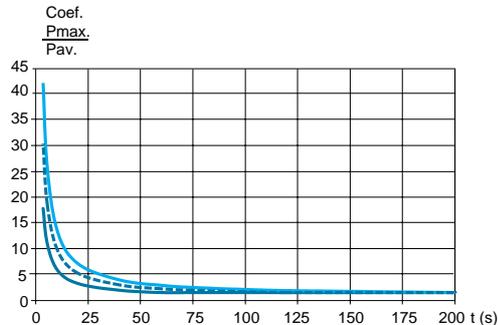
VW3 A7 817 (P continuous = 330 kW)
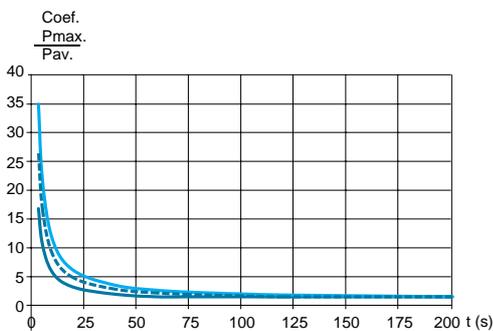
——— P max./P av. (60 s cycle)
- - - P max./P av. (120 s cycle)
——— P max./P av. (200 s cycle)

⊕ **Telemecanique**
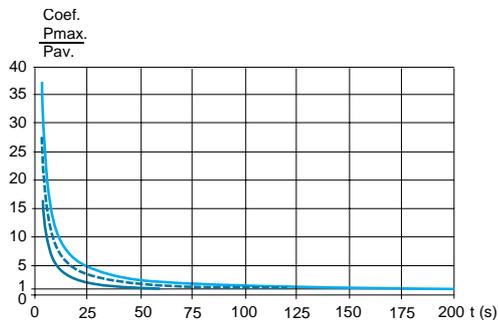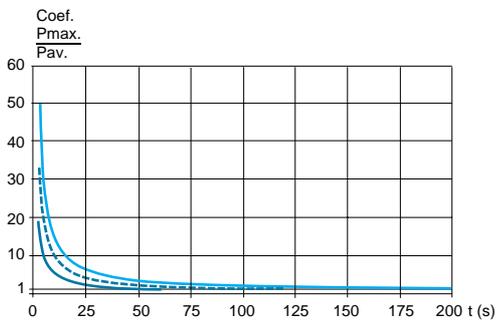
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: network braking units

Presentation
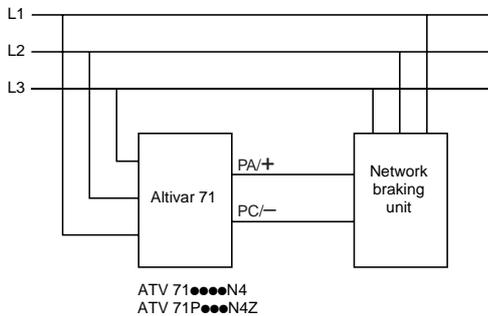
ATV 71●●●●N4
ATV 71P●●●N4Z

The network braking unit can be used to restore the following to the line supply:
■ the energy from the motor
■ the energy from the motors controlled by several drives connected on the same DC bus
It is available for **ATV 71●●●●N4** and **ATV 71P●●●N4Z** drives.

Applications

Braking on a driving load:
■ vertical movements
■ escalators
■ etc.

General characteristics

Degree of protection			IP 20
Maximum relative humidity			Class F humidity without condensation 5…85%
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	5…+40 without derating Up to 55°C with current derating of 3% per °C above 40°C
	Storage	°C	-25…+55
Maximum operating altitude		m	1000 without derating 1000…4000 derating the current by 5% per additional 1000 m

Electrical characteristics

Type of module		VW3 A7 201…212	VW3 A7 231…241
Supply voltage	V	400 $\sim$	460 $\sim$
Nominal voltage ± 10%	V	380…415 $\sim$	440…480 $\sim$
Operating frequency	Hz	40…60 ± 10%	
Overload capacity	A	1.2 x maximum current (Irms)	
Efficiency		97% (3% of thermal losses)	
Power factor		1	
Fundamental frequency component		0.7…0.95	

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity	VW3 A7 201		25 mm², connected on a bar, M5
	VW3 A7 202…205, VW3 A7 231, 232		35 mm², connected on a bar, M6
	VW3 A7 206…209, VW3 A7 233…238		95 mm², connected on a bar, M8
	VW3 A7 210…212, VW3 A7 239…241		150 mm², connected on a bar, M10

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: network braking units

Line voltage: 400 V ∿

Maximum current Irms		Continuous braking power	Maximum braking power	Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses		Reference	Weight
∿	⎓			∿	∿		
A	A	kW	kW	A	V		kg
11	13	7	7	20	660	**VW3 A7 201**	20.000
20	24	13	13	30	690	**VW3 A7 202**	25.000
32	38	11	22	50	690	**VW3 A7 203**	26.000
48	58	21.5	33	80	690	**VW3 A7 204**	30.000
65	78	26	45	100	690	**VW3 A7 205**	32.000
102	123	32	70	160	660	**VW3 A7 206**	43.000
130	157	38	90	200	660	**VW3 A7 207**	48.000
195	236	38	135	315	660	**VW3 A7 208**	52.000
231	279	86	160	350	660	**VW3 A7 209**	90.000
289	350	120	200	400	1000	**VW3 A7 210**	100.000
360	433	135	250	500	1000	**VW3 A7 211**	115.000
500	600	200	345	630	1000	**VW3 A7 212**	125.000

Line voltage: 460 V ∿

Maximum current Irms		Continuous braking power	Maximum braking power	Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses		Reference	Weight
∿	⎓			∿	∿		
A	A	kW	kW	A	V		kg
28	33	11	22	50	690	**VW3 A7 231**	26.000
41	50	21.5	33	80	690	**VW3 A7 232**	30.000
57	69	26	45	100	690	**VW3 A7 233**	36.000
88	107	32	70	160	660	**VW3 A7 234**	43.000
113	137	38	90	200	660	**VW3 A7 235**	48.000
138	166	38	110	250	660	**VW3 A7 236**	48.000
157	189	38	125	250	660	**VW3 A7 237**	50.000
176	212	38	140	315	660	**VW3 A7 238**	90.000
201	243	86	160	315	660	**VW3 A7 239**	100.000
289	346	120	230	500	1000	**VW3 A7 240**	105.000
500	600	240	375	630	1000	**VW3 A7 241**	125.000

Selection

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves

Example of using characteristics curves

VW3 A7 204, A7 232 (Continuous braking power = 21.5 kW) *(1)*

Example of how to use the curves:

Required braking power of 27 kW.
The intersection point between the braking time and the time
between 2 braking operations must be on or below the relevant curve.

Point **A** For a braking time of 2 minutes, there must be at least
50 seconds between 2 braking operations.
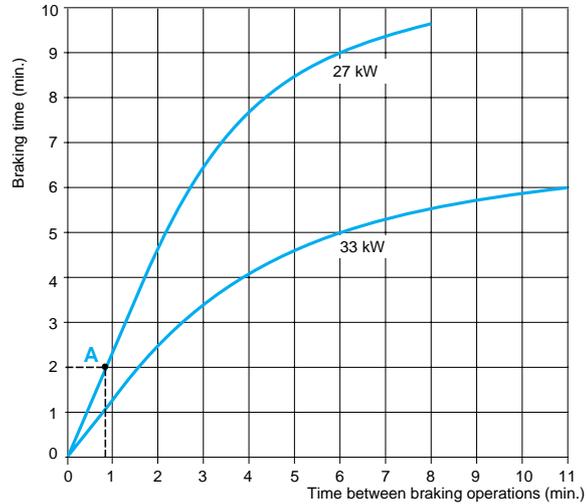
Network braking units

VW3 A7 204, A7 232 (Continuous braking power = 21.5 kW) *(1)*
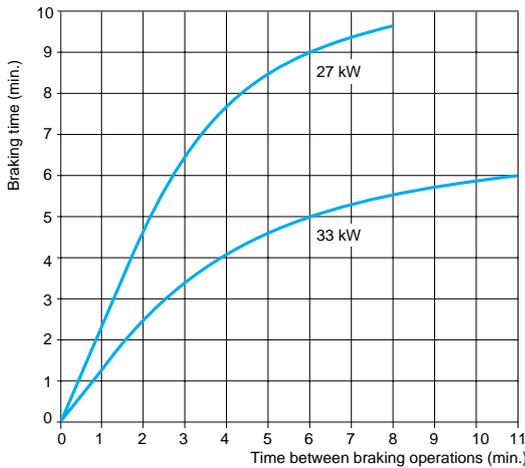
VW3 A7 205, A7 233 (Continuous braking power = 26 kW) *(1)*
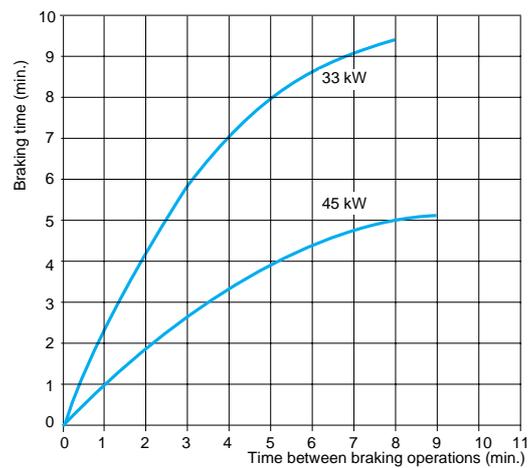
VW3 A7 206, A7 234 (Continuous braking power = 32 kW) *(1)*
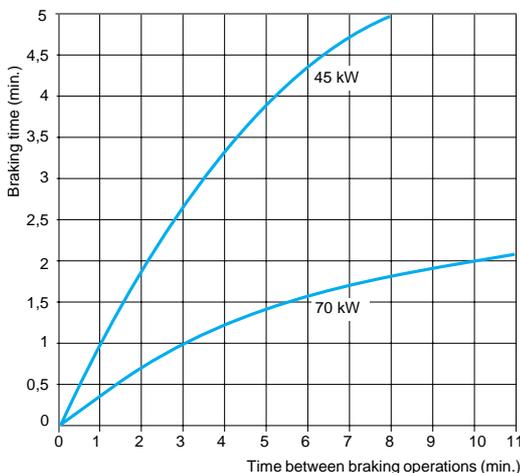
VW3 A7 207, A7 235 (Continuous braking power = 38 kW) *(1)*
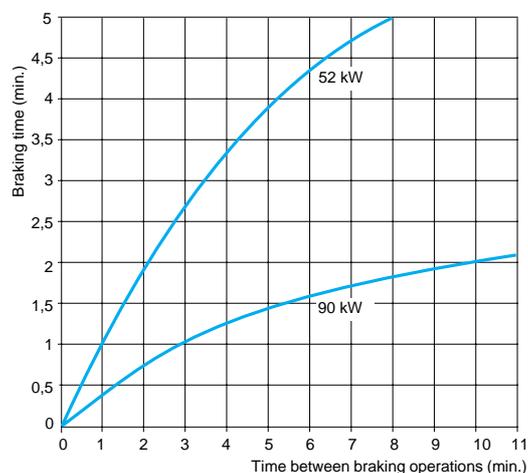
(1) Power indicated for a temperature of 35°C.

⊞ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Characteristics curves

VW3 A7 208 (Continuous braking power = 38 kW) *(1)*

52 kW

135 kW

Braking time (min.)

Time between braking operations (min.)
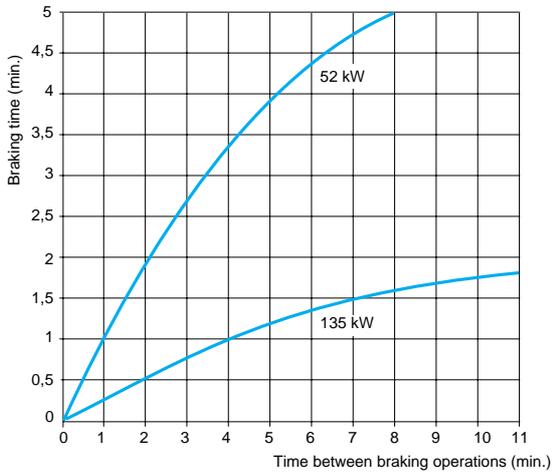
VW3 A7 209, A7 239 (Continuous braking power = 86 kW) *(1)*

110 kW

160 kW

Braking time (min.)

Time between braking operations (min.)
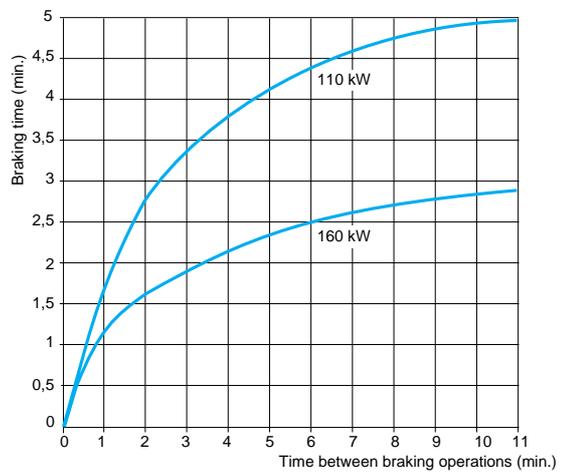
VW3 A7 210, A7 240 (Continuous braking power = 120 kW) *(1)*

135 kW

200 kW

Braking time (min.)

Time between braking operations (min.)
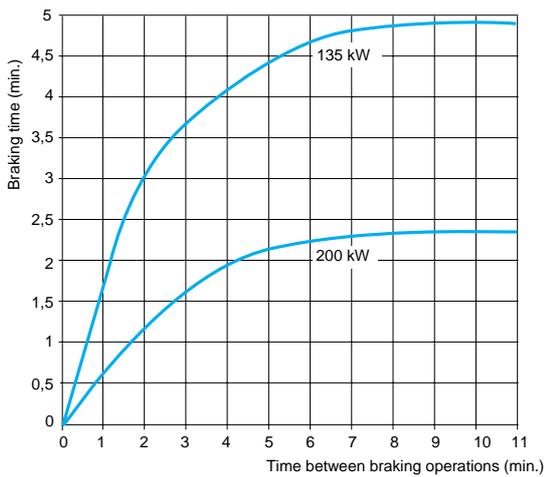
VW3 A7 211 (Continuous braking power = 135 kW) *(1)*

170 kW

250 kW

Braking time (min.)

Time between braking operations (min.)
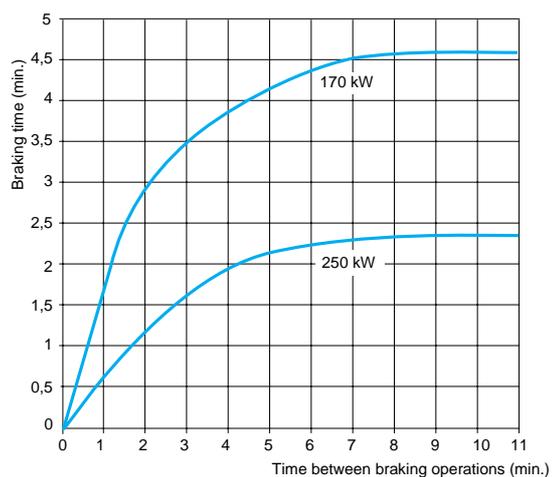
VW3 A7 212 (Continuous braking power = 200 kW) *(1)*

230 kW

345 kW

Braking time (min.)

Time between braking operations (min.)
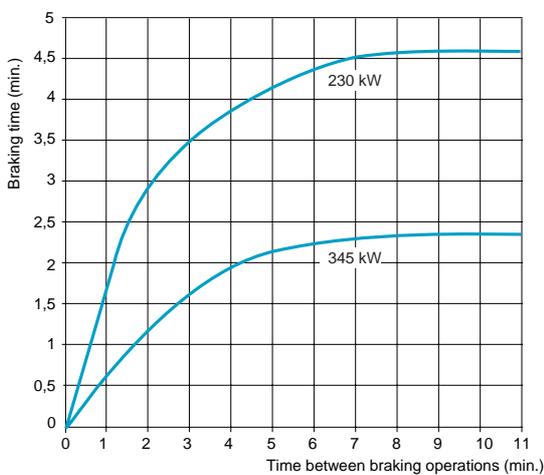
VW3 A7 241 (Continuous braking power = 240 kW) *(1)*
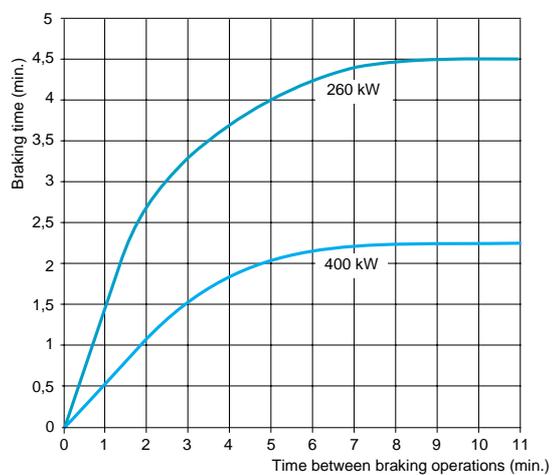
260 kW

400 kW

Braking time (min.)

Time between braking operations (min.)

(1) Power indicated for a temperature of 35°C.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: DC chokes

The main solutions for reducing current harmonics are as follows:
■ DC chokes, see below
■ Line chokes, see page 82
■ 16% and 10% passive filters, see page 85,
■ Use of passive filters with a DC choke, see page 85

These 4 solutions can be used on the same installation.
It is always easier and less expensive to handle current harmonics at installation level as a whole rather than at the level of each individual unit, particularly when using passive filters and active compensators.
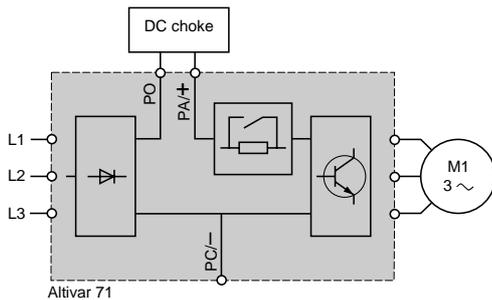
DC chokes

DC chokes are used to reduce current harmonics in order to comply with standard IEC/61000-3-12 for drives in which the line current is more than 16 A and less than 75 A.
Using the DC choke with the drive complies with draft standard IEC/61000-3-12 provided that the RSCE ⩾ 120 *(1)* at the point of connection to the public network. 120 represents the minimum value of RSCE *(1)* for which the values in table 4 of draft standard IEC/61000-3-12 are not exceeded.
It is the responsibility of the installer or the user to ensure that the device is connected correctly to a connection point with an RSCE ⩾ 120.
The choke is connected to the drive power terminals.

The DC choke is supplied as standard with ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives.
It is compulsory for ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives if they do not have a fan (see page 28).

Applications

Reduction of current harmonics.
Reduction of the THD to 5% or 10% when used with passive filters, see pages 86 to 89.
Maintaining the motor torque in relation to the line choke.

(1) Short-circuit ratio

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: DC chokes

Example of current harmonic levels for ATV 71H●●●M3 and ATV 71H●●●M3X drives (1)

Motor power		For ATV 71 drives	Line supply		Current harmonic levels																	THD (3)
			Line current	Line Isc (2)	H1	H5	H7	H11	H13	H17	H19	H23	H25	H29	H31	H35	H37	H41	H43	H47	H49	
kW	HP		A	kA	A	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	
3-phase supply voltage: 240 V 50 Hz, with optional DC choke																						
0.37	0.5	H037M3	1.5	5	1.4	26.7	18.4	9.1	7.7	5.8	5.1	4.3	3.8	3.4	3	2.8	2.5	2.4	2.2	2.1	1.9	36.3
0.75	1	H075M3	3.05	5	2.81	31.99	20.91	8.88	7.36	5.6	4.63	4.07	3.42	3.18	2.71	2.59	2.24	2.17	1.91	1.86	1.66	41.27
1.5	2	HU15M3	6.04	5	5.55	33.65	21.59	8.14	6.84	4.97	4.19	3.54	3.08	2.71	2.43	2.17	2.01	1.78	1.7	1.5	1.47	42.4
2.2	3	HU22M3	8.33	5	7.64	34.89	21.11	8.78	6.72	5.36	4.1	3.8	3	2.9	2.37	2.29	1.95	1.85	1.66	1.52	1.44	43.33
3	–	HU30M3	11.12	5	10.19	35.17	20.68	8.71	6.48	5.24	3.94	3.67	2.88	2.76	2.27	2.15	1.87	1.71	1.58	1.37	1.37	43.22
4	5	HU40M3	14.53	5	13.29	36.23	20.51	8.73	6.2	5.2	3.73	3.61	2.71	2.68	2.14	2.06	1.76	1.61	1.49	1.27	1.28	43.91
5.5	7.5	HU55M3	19.2	8	17.9	30.68	17.26	8.75	6.31	5.3	4.03	3.72	2.98	2.79	2.36	2.17	1.94	1.71	1.63	1.36	1.4	38
7.5	10	HU75M3	26.1	15	23.9	35.23	21.09	8.82	6.71	5.38	4.09	3.82	2.98	2.91	2.35	2.31	1.92	1.87	1.63	1.54	1.4	43.96
11	15	HD11M3X	36.6	15	34.2	30.91	17.12	8.86	6.36	5.37	4.08	3.77	3.01	2.82	2.37	2.19	1.94	1.73	1.62	1.37	1.38	38.14
15	20	HD15M3X	48.6	15	55.8	25.51	13.46	8.73	6.32	5.25	4.21	3.6	3.11	2.62	2.42	1.95	1.93	1.47	1.56	1.12	1.26	35.34
18.5	25	HD18M3X	58.7	22	55.8	25.51	13.46	8.73	6.32	5.25	4.21	3.6	3.11	2.62	2.42	1.95	1.93	1.47	1.56	1.12	1.26	32.31
22	30	HD22M3X	70.28	22	65.92	29.81	15.91	8.7	6.15	5.23	3.99	3.63	2.95	2.68	2.32	2.04	1.89	1.57	1.57	1.22	1.32	36.62
30	40	HD30M3X	96.9	22	88.78	36.68	19.42	8.38	5.67	4.86	3.44	3.29	2.52	2.38	1.98	1.77	1.62	1.34	1.34	1.02	1.12	43.51
37	50	HD37M3X	116.1	22	107.9	33.09	16.4	8.59	5.59	4.97	3.54	3.33	2.6	2.36	2.03	1.72	1.63	1.26	1.32	0.94	1.06	39.24
45	60	HD45M3X	138.7	22	130.5	30.15	13.86	8.65	5.38	5.01	3.49	3.33	2.55	2.33	1.96	1.66	1.53	1.2	1.19	0.9	0.9	35.7
3-phase supply voltage: 240 V 50 Hz, with DC choke supplied as standard with the drive																						
55	75	HD55M3X	163.5	35	175.8	46.43	27.19	8.18	6.32	4.57	3.27	3.06	2.23	2.23	1.69	1.70	1.35	1.33	1.10	1.07	0.90	55.32
75	100	HD75M3X	215.7	35	236.8	45.17	25.21	8.08	5.85	4.40	3.02	2.89	2.06	2.06	1.55	1.54	1.23	1.18	0.99	0.92	0.80	53.17

Example of current harmonic levels for ATV 71H●●●N4 drives (1)

Motor power		For ATV 71 drives	Line supply		Current harmonic levels																	THD (3)
			Line current	Line Isc (2)	H1	H5	H7	H11	H13	H17	H19	H23	H25	H29	H31	H35	H37	H41	H43	H47	H49	
kW	HP		A	kA	A	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	
3-phase supply voltage: 400 V 50 Hz, with optional DC choke																						
0.75	1	H075N4	1.77	5	1.61	34.6	23.7	8.9	7.8	5.6	4.8	4.1	3.5	3.2	2.8	2.6	2.3	2.2	1.9	1.9	1.7	44.95
1.5	2	HU15N4	3.34	5	3.03	35.55	23.53	8.95	7.65	5.61	4.74	4.06	3.49	3.16	2.76	2.57	2.28	2.15	1.94	1.83	1.68	45.48
2.2	3	HU22N4	4.83	5	4.4	35.79	22.77	8.7	7.11	5.41	4.36	3.89	3.2	3.01	2.53	2.43	2.09	2.01	1.77	1.7	1.53	45
3	–	HU30N4	6.13	5	5.67	31.61	18.82	9.41	6.82	5.88	4.57	4.24	3.38	3.28	2.67	2.63	2.19	2.16	1.86	1.8	1.6	40.08
4	5	HU40N4	8.24	5	7.51	36.16	21.63	9	8.17	5.52	4.17	3.93	3.05	3	2.4	2.38	1.98	1.93	1.68	1.58	1.45	44.72
5.5	7.5	HU55N4	10.81	22	9.83	34.85	23.08	9.68	4.05	6.12	5.18	4.45	3.83	3.48	3.04	2.85	2.52	2.4	2.14	2.06	1.85	45.19
7.5	10	HU75N4	15.01	10	13.8	34.09	20.49	8.57	6.43	5.28	3.95	3.78	2.89	2.9	2.28	2.32	1.88	1.9	1.59	1.58	1.37	42.25
11	15	HD11N4	21.1	9	19.3	35.22	20.11	8.95	6.5	5.41	4.02	3.8	2.95	2.86	2.32	2.23	1.9	1.77	1.6	1.42	1.37	43.1
15	20	HD15N4	28.2	12	25.8	35.22	20.01	8.98	6.49	5.43	4.02	3.82	2.94	2.88	2.32	2.24	1.9	1.78	1.6	1.43	1.37	43.06
18.5	25	HD18N4	33.9	12	31.9	28.36	15.16	8.85	6.18	5.39	4.04	3.78	2.98	2.83	2.34	2.18	1.9	1.7	1.58	1.33	1.33	35.23
22	30	HD22N4	40.87	22	37.85	32.79	18.73	8.6	6.42	5.28	4.09	3.75	3.03	2.85	2.4	2.25	1.97	1.81	1.67	1.48	1.44	40.4
30	40	HD30N4	54.1	20	50.6	29.97	16.26	8.75	6.27	5.32	4.07	3.73	3.01	2.79	2.37	2.15	1.94	1.69	1.62	1.33	1.38	36.99
37	50	HD37N4	66.43	22	62.6	28.49	15.01	8.63	6.08	5.23	4	3.65	2.97	2.71	2.34	2.07	1.9	1.61	1.58	1.26	1.32	35.13
45	60	HD45N4	83.11	22	75.56	38.31	20.96	8.24	5.81	4.85	3.48	3.33	2.54	2.44	2	1.85	1.64	1.42	1.38	1.1	1.17	45.59
55	75	HD55N4	98.6	22	91.69	32.94	16.76	8.5	5.68	4.98	3.62	3.38	2.67	2.44	2.09	1.81	1.69	1.37	1.39	1.04	1.14	39.29
75	100	HD75N4	134	22	125.9	30.65	14.43	8.4	5.4	4.84	3.52	3.21	2.59	2.25	2	1.61	1.58	1.17	1.25	0.88	0.96	36.2
3-phase supply voltage: 400 V 50 Hz, with DC choke supplied as standard with the drive																						
90	125	HD90N4	158.81	35	145.1	36.72	20.66	8.33	6.19	4.93	3.78	3.43	2.75	2.56	2.13	1.99	1.72	1.59	1.4	1.29	1.16	44.26
110	150	HC11N4	193.81	35	175.7	38.91	21.7	8.24	6.03	4.78	3.56	3.28	2.56	2.42	1.98	1.87	1.58	1.47	1.28	1.19	1.06	46.45
132	200	HC13N4	228.92	35	209.3	37.23	20.02	8.26	5.8	4.76	3.51	3.26	2.52	2.38	1.94	1.82	1.55	1.42	1.24	1.12	1	44.23
160	250	HC16N4	276.22	50	251.7	38.29	20.22	8.19	5.59	4.66	3.32	3.13	2.37	2.26	1.82	1.7	1.43	1.31	1.14	1.02	0.91	45.11
200	300	HC20N4	340.29	50	313.6	36.03	17.85	8.16	5.3	4.59	3.25	3.05	2.32	2.17	1.76	1.6	1.37	1.2	1.05	0.91	0.82	42.07
220	350	HC25N4	378.67	50	344.9	38.91	19.7	8.11	5.22	4.47	3.04	2.93	2.15	2.07	1.63	1.52	1.27	1.14	0.99	0.85	0.78	45.26
250	400	HC25N4	423.72	50	390.1	36.61	17.59	8.11	5.04	4.46	3.04	2.9	2.16	2.02	1.62	1.46	1.24	1.07	0.95	0.78	0.73	42.35
280	450	HC28N4	471.17	50	437.3	34.78	15.9	8.1	4.92	4.44	3.04	2.86	2.16	1.97	1.6	1.4	1.21	1	0.9	0.72	0.67	40.05
315	500	HC31N4	528.66	50	492.2	34.19	15.08	8.03	4.79	4.36	2.98	2.78	2.1	1.88	1.54	1.31	1.14	0.92	0.84	0.65	0.61	39.15
355	–	HC40N4	607.3	50	555.5	38.78	17.83	7.88	4.59	4.14	2.64	2.58	1.84	1.74	1.37	1.21	1.04	0.85	0.78	0.6	0.58	44.12
400	600	HC40N4	675.3	50	623.4	36.78	15.99	7.86	4.43	4.1	2.64	2.53	1.85	1.67	1.35	1.13	0.99	0.78	0.73	0.54	0.53	41.6
500	700	HC50N4	833.84	50	779.9	33.73	13.22	7.82	4.26	3.99	2.63	2.38	1.81	1.5	1.26	0.95	0.88	0.63	0.61	0.44	0.43	37.8

(1) Example of current harmonic levels up to harmonic order 49 for a 230 V/50 Hz line supply for ATV 71H●●●M3 and ATV 71H●●●M3X drives or 400 V/50 Hz for ATV 71H●●●N4 drives, with the chokes connected between the PO et PA/+ terminals on the Altivar 71.
(2) The line Isc values are given for the current harmonic levels in the table.
(3) Total harmonic distortion conforming to draft standard IEC 61000-3-12.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: DC chokes

Example of current harmonic levels for ATV 71W●●●N4 drives (1)

3-phase supply voltage: 400 V 50 Hz, with optional DC choke

Motor power		For ATV 71 drives	Line supply		Current harmonic levels																	THD (3)
			Line current	Line Isc (2)	H1	H5	H7	H11	H13	H17	H19	H23	H25	H29	H31	H35	H37	H41	H43	H47	H49	
kW	HP		A	kA	A	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%
0.75	1	W075N4	1.77	5	1.61	34.6	23.7	8.9	7.8	5.6	4.8	4.1	3.5	3.2	2.8	2.6	2.3	2.2	1.9	1.9	1.7	44.95
1.5	2	WU15N4	3.34	5	3.03	35.55	23.53	8.95	7.65	5.61	4.74	4.06	3.49	3.16	2.76	2.57	2.28	2.15	1.94	1.83	1.68	45.48
2.2	3	WU22N4	4.83	5	4.4	35.79	22.77	8.7	7.11	5.41	4.36	3.89	3.2	3.01	2.53	2.43	2.09	2.01	1.77	1.7	1.53	45
3	–	WU30N4	6.13	5	5.67	31.61	18.82	9.41	6.82	5.88	4.57	4.24	3.38	3.28	2.67	2.63	2.19	2.16	1.86	1.8	1.6	40.08
4	5	WU40N4	8.24	5	7.51	36.16	21.63	9	8.17	5.52	4.17	3.93	3.05	3	2.4	2.38	1.98	1.93	1.68	1.58	1.45	44.72
5.5	7.5	WU55N4	10.81	22	9.83	34.85	23.08	9.68	4.05	6.12	5.18	4.45	3.83	3.48	3.04	2.85	2.52	2.4	2.14	2.06	1.85	45.19
7.5	10	WU75N4	15.01	10	13.8	34.09	20.49	8.57	6.43	5.28	3.95	3.78	2.89	2.9	2.28	2.32	1.88	1.9	1.59	1.58	1.37	42.25
11	15	WD11N4	21.1	9	19.3	35.22	20.11	8.95	6.5	5.41	4.02	3.8	2.95	2.86	2.32	2.23	1.9	1.77	1.6	1.42	1.37	43.1
15	20	WD15N4	28.2	12	25.8	35.22	20.01	8.98	6.49	5.43	4.02	3.82	2.94	2.88	2.32	2.24	1.9	1.78	1.6	1.43	1.37	43.06
18.5	25	WD18N4	33.9	12	31.9	28.36	15.16	8.85	6.18	5.39	4.04	3.78	2.98	2.83	2.34	2.18	1.9	1.7	1.58	1.33	1.33	35.23
22	30	WD22N4	40.87	22	37.85	32.79	18.73	8.6	6.42	5.28	4.09	3.75	3.03	2.85	2.4	2.25	1.97	1.81	1.67	1.48	1.44	40.4
30	40	WD30N4	54.1	20	50.6	29.97	16.26	8.75	6.27	5.32	4.07	3.73	3.01	2.79	2.37	2.15	1.94	1.69	1.62	1.33	1.38	36.99
37	50	WD37N4	66.43	22	62.6	28.49	15.01	8.63	6.08	5.23	4	3.65	2.97	2.71	2.34	2.07	1.9	1.61	1.58	1.26	1.32	35.13
45	60	WD45N4	83.11	22	75.56	38.31	20.96	8.24	5.81	4.85	3.48	3.33	2.54	2.44	2	1.85	1.64	1.42	1.38	1.1	1.17	45.59
55	75	WD55N4	98.6	22	91.69	32.94	16.76	8.5	5.68	4.98	3.62	3.38	2.67	2.44	2.09	1.81	1.69	1.37	1.39	1.04	1.14	39.29
75	100	WD75N4	134	22	125.9	30.65	14.43	8.4	5.4	4.84	3.52	3.21	2.59	2.25	2	1.61	1.58	1.17	1.25	0.88	0.96	36.2

Example of current harmonic levels for ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives (1)

3-phase supply voltage: 400 V 50 Hz, with optional DC choke

Motor power		For ATV 71 drives	Line supply		Current harmonic levels																	THD (3)
			Line current	Line Isc (2)	H1	H5	H7	H11	H13	H17	H19	H23	H25	H29	H31	H35	H37	H41	H43	H47	H49	
kW	HP		A	kA	A	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%	%
0.75	1	P075N4Z	1.77	5	1.61	34.6	23.7	8.9	7.8	5.6	4.8	4.1	3.5	3.2	2.8	2.6	2.3	2.2	1.9	1.9	1.7	44.95
1.5	2	PU15N4Z	3.34	5	3.03	35.55	23.53	8.95	7.65	5.61	4.74	4.06	3.49	3.16	2.76	2.57	2.28	2.15	1.94	1.83	1.68	45.48
2.2	3	PU22N4Z	4.83	5	4.4	35.79	22.77	8.7	7.11	5.41	4.36	3.89	3.2	3.01	2.53	2.43	2.09	2.01	1.77	1.7	1.53	45
3	–	PU30N4Z	6.13	5	5.67	31.61	18.82	9.41	6.82	5.88	4.57	4.24	3.38	3.28	2.67	2.63	2.19	2.16	1.86	1.8	1.6	40.08
4	5	PU40N4Z	8.24	5	7.51	36.16	21.63	9	8.17	5.52	4.17	3.93	3.05	3	2.4	2.38	1.98	1.93	1.68	1.58	1.45	44.72
5.5	7.5	PU55N4Z	10.81	22	9.83	34.85	23.08	9.68	4.05	6.12	5.18	4.45	3.83	3.48	3.04	2.85	2.52	2.4	2.14	2.06	1.85	45.19
7.5	10	PU75N4Z	15.01	10	13.8	34.09	20.49	8.57	6.43	5.28	3.95	3.78	2.89	2.9	2.28	2.32	1.88	1.9	1.59	1.58	1.37	42.25

(1) Example of current harmonic levels up to harmonic order 49 for a 400 V/50 Hz line supply with chokes connected between the PO and PA/+ terminals on the Altivar 71.
(2) The line Isc values are given for the current harmonic levels in the table.
(3) Total harmonic distortion conforming to draft standard IEC 61000-3-12

⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: DC chokes

General characteristics

Degree of protection			IP 20
Maximum relative humidity			95%
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	-10…+50 without derating Up to 60°C with current derating of 2.2% per °C above 50°C
	Storage	°C	-40…+65
Maximum operating altitude		m	1000 without derating 1000…3000 with current derating of 1% per additional 100 m
Voltage drop			4 to 6%
Maximum current			1.65 x nominal current for 60 seconds

Connection characteristics

Type of terminal		Earth	Power supply
Maximum connection capacity and tightening torque	VW3 A4 501…505	10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.2…1.4 Nm	2.5 mm² (AWG 12) 0.4…0.6 Nm
	VW3 A4 506	10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.2…1.4 Nm	4 mm² (AWG 10) 0.5…0.8 Nm
	VW3 A4 507	10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.2…1.4 Nm	6 mm² (AWG 8) 0.8…1 Nm
	VW3 A4 508, 509	10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.2…1.4 Nm	10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.2…1.4 Nm
	VW3 A4 510	10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.2…1.4 Nm	35 mm² (AWG 0) 2.5…3 Nm
	VW3 A4 511	–	Connected on a bar, Ø 9 –
	VW3 A4 512	–	Connected on a bar, Ø 9 –

DC chokes (1)

For drives	Inductance value	Nominal current	Loss	Reference	Weight
	mH	A	W		kg
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz					
ATV 71H037M3	18	2.25	7.7	**VW3 A4 501**	0.650
ATV 71H075M3	6.8	8	22.5	**VW3 A4 503**	1.700
ATV 71HU15M3	3.2	14.3	32	**VW3 A4 505**	2.200
ATV 71HU22M3	2.2	19.2	33	**VW3 A4 506**	2.500
ATV 71HU30M3	1.6	27.4	43	**VW3 A4 507**	3.000
ATV 71HU40M3, HU55M3	1.2	44	61	**VW3 A4 508**	4.500
ATV 71HU75M3	0.7	36	30.5	**VW3 A4 509**	2.500
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X	0.52	84.5	77	**VW3 A4 510**	6.200
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X	0.22	171.2	86	**VW3 A4 511**	15.500
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X	0.09	195	73	**VW3 A4 512**	10.000
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz					
ATV 71H075N4 ATV 71W075N4 ATV 71P075N4Z	18	2.25	7.7	**VW3 A4 501**	0.650
ATV 71HU15N4 ATV 71WU15N4 ATV 71PU15N4Z	10	4.3	11	**VW3 A4 502**	1.000
ATV 71HU22N4, HU30N4 ATV 71WU22N4, WU30N4 ATV 71PU22N4Z, PU30N4Z	6.8	8	22.5	**VW3 A4 503**	1.700
ATV 71HU40N4 ATV 71WU40N4 ATV 71PU40N4Z	3.9	10.7	27	**VW3 A4 504**	1.650
ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71WU55N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z	3.2	14.3	32	**VW3 A4 505**	2.200
ATV 71HU75N4 ATV 71WU75N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	2.2	19.2	33	**VW3 A4 506**	2.500
ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	1.6	27.4	43	**VW3 A4 507**	3.000
ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4 ATV 71WD15N4, WD18N4	1.2	44	57.5	**VW3 A4 508**	4.300
ATV 71HD22N4…HD37N4 ATV 71WD22N4…WD37N4	0.52	84.5	98.3	**VW3 A4 510**	5.600
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4	0.22	171.2	128	**VW3 A4 511**	9.100

(1) With ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives, the DC choke is supplied as standard with the drive.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: line chokes
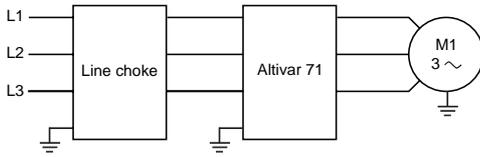
Line chokes

A line choke can be used to provide improved protection against overvoltages on the line supply and to reduce harmonic distortion of the current produced by the drive.

Line chokes are compulsory on ATV 71HU40M3…HU75M3 drives supplied with a single phase 200…240 V 50/60 Hz supply voltage.

Line chokes can be used instead of a DC choke.
In this case, to obtain an ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X or
ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drive without a DC choke, add the letter D
at the end of the drive reference, see pages 22 and 23.

The recommended chokes are used to limit the line current.
They have been developed in line with standard EN 50178
(VDE 0160 level 1 high energy overvoltages on the line supply).

The choke values are defined for a voltage drop between 3% and 5% of the nominal supply voltage. Values higher than this will cause loss of torque.

These chokes should be installed upstream of the drive.

Applications

The use of line chokes is recommended in particular under the following circumstances:
■ Close connection of several drives in parallel
■ Line supply with significant disturbance from other equipment (interference, overvoltages)
■ Line supply with voltage imbalance between phases above 1.8% of the nominal voltage
■ Drive supplied by a line with very low impedance (in the vicinity of a power transformer 10 times more powerful than the drive rating)
■ Installation of a large number of frequency converters on the same line
■ Reducing overloads on the cos φ correction capacitors, if the installation includes a power factor correction unit.

Characteristics:
page 83

References:
page 84

Dimensions:
page 125

Schemes:
pages 136 to 139

82

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: line chokes

General characteristics

Type of choke			VW3 A58501, A58502	VW3 A4 551... A4 553	VW3 A4 554, A4 555	VW3 A4 556... A4 560	VW3 A4 561... A4 565, A4 569
Conformity to standards			EN 50178 (VDE 0160 level 1 high energy overvoltages on the line supply), IEC 60076 (with HD 398)				
Degree of protection	Choke		IP 00				
	Terminals		IP 20		IP 10	IP 00	
Atmospheric pollution			3 C2, 3B1, 3S1 conforming to IEC 721.3.3				
Degree of pollution			2 conforming to EN 50178				
Vibration resistance			1.5 mm from 3…13 Hz, 1 gn from 13…200 Hz, conforming to IEC 60068-2				
Shock resistance			15 gn for 11 ms conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-27				
Maximum relative humidity			95%				
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	0…+ 45 without derating Up to +55°C with current derating of 2% per °C above 45°C				
	Storage	°C	-25…+70				
Isolation class			F				
Clearance distance in air		mm	5.5 conforming to IEC 60664				
Leakage distance in air		mm	11.5 conforming to IEC 60664				
Maximum operating altitude		m	1000 without derating 1000…3000 with current derating of 1% per additional 100 m				
Voltage drop			Between 3% and 5% of the nominal supply voltage. Values higher than this will cause loss of torque				
Maximum current			1.65 x nominal current for 60 seconds				

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity and tightening torque	VW3 A58501		16 mm², (AWG 4) 1.2…1.4 Nm
	VW3 A58502		6 mm², (AWG 8) 0.8…1 Nm
	VW3 A4 551, 552		2.5 mm², (AWG 12) 0.4…0.6 Nm
	VW3 A4 553		6 mm², (AWG 8) 0.8…1 Nm
	VW3 A4 554		16 mm², (AWG 4) 1.2…1.4 Nm
	VW3 A4 555		35 mm², (AWG 0) 2.5…3 Nm
	VW3 A4 556		Connected on a bar, Ø 6.5 mm –
	VW3 A4 557, 558		Connected on a bar, Ø 9 mm –
	VW3 A4 559…561		Connected on a bar, Ø 11 mm –
	VW3 A4 562…565, 569		Connected on a bar, Ø 13 mm –

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: line chokes

Line chokes

For drives	Line supply Line Isc	Line choke				Quantity per drive	Reference	Weight
		Induc-tance value	Nominal current	Saturation current	Loss			
	kA	mH	A	A	W			kg
Single phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz								
ATV 71HU40M3	5	2	25	–	45	1	**VW3 A58501**	3.500
ATV 71HU55M3	5	1	45	–	50	1	**VW3 A58502**	3.500
ATV 71HU75M3	22	1	45	–	50	1	**VW3 A58502**	3.500
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz								
ATV 71H037M3, H075M3	5	10	4	–	45	1	**VW3 A4 551**	1.500
ATV 71HU15M3, HU22M3	5	4	10	–	65	1	**VW3 A4 552**	3.000
ATV 71HU30M3	5	2	16	–	75	1	**VW3 A4 553**	3.500
ATV 71HU40M3	5	1	30	–	90	1	**VW3 A4 554**	6.000
ATV 71HU55M3	22	1	30	–	90	1	**VW3 A4 554**	6.000
ATV 71HU75M3, HD11M3X	22	0.5	60	–	94	1	**VW3 A4 555**	11.000
ATV 71HD15M3X	22	0.3	100	–	260	1	**VW3 A4 556**	16.000
ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X	22	0.15	230	–	400	1	**VW3 A4 557**	45.000
ATV 71HD55M3X	35	0.049	429	855	278	1	**VW3 A4 562**	50.000
ATV 71HD75M3X	35	0.038	613	1150	307	1	**VW3 A4 563**	59.000
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz								
ATV 71H075N4, HU15N4 ATV 71W075N4, WU15N4 ATV 71P075N4Z, PU15N4Z	5	10	4	–	45	1	**VW3 A4 551**	1.500
ATV 71HU22N4…HU40N4 ATV 71WU22N4…WU40N4 ATV 71PU22N4Z…PU40N4Z	5	4	10	–	65	1	**VW3 A4 552**	3.000
ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71WU55N4, WU75N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	22	2	16	–	75	1	**VW3 A4 553**	3.500
ATV 71HD11N4, HD15N4 ATV 71WD11N4, WD15N4	22	1	30	–	90	1	**VW3 A4 554**	6.000
ATV 71HD18N4, HD22N4 ATV 71WD18N4, WD22N4	22	0,5	60	–	94	1	**VW3 A4 555**	11.000
ATV 71HD30N4…HD55N4 ATV 71WD30N4…WD55N4	22	0.3	100	–	260	1	**VW3 A4 556**	16.000
ATV 71HD75N4, HD90N4 ATV 71WD75N4	22	0.155	184	370	220	1	**VW3 A4 558**	31.000
ATV 71HC11N4	35	0.12	222	445	230	1	**VW3 A4 559**	35.000
ATV 71HC13N4	35	0.098	264	530	245	1	**VW3 A4 560**	43.000
ATV 71HC16N4	50	0.066	344	685	258	1	**VW3 A4 561**	47.000
ATV 71HC20N4	50	0.060	450	849	335	1	**VW3 A4 569**	70.000
ATV 71HC25N4, HC28N4	50	0.038	613	1150	307	1	**VW3 A4 564**	73.000
ATV 71HC31N4	50	0.032	720	1352	428	1	**VW3 A4 565**	82.000
ATV 71HC40N4	50	0.060	450	849	335	2	**VW3 A4 569**	70.000
ATV 71HC50N4	50	0.038	613	1150	307	2	**VW3 A4 564**	73.000

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: passive filters

Passive filters
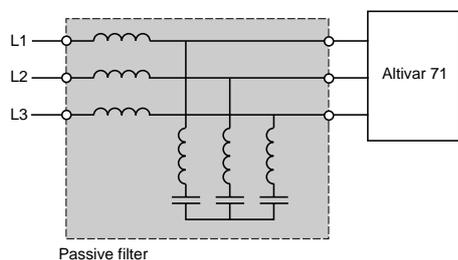
Passive filter

The passive filter is used to reduce current harmonics with total harmonic distortion factors of less than 16% or 10%. These ratios may be reduced to 10% or 5% if the filter is used with a DC choke, see pages 78 to 81.

The reactive power increases at low load. To eliminate this reactive power, the filter capacitors can be disconnected via the drive, see page 145.

Application
Reduction of current harmonics in order to use drives in the first environment.

General characteristics

Degree of protection			IP 20
Maximum relative humidity			Class F humidity without condensation 5%…85%
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	5…+40 without derating
	Storage	°C	-25…+55
Maximum operating altitude		m	1000 without derating

Electrical characteristics

Range		400 V	460 V
Nominal voltage ± 10%	V	380…415 $\sim$	440…480 $\sim$
Operating frequency		50 ±5 %	60 ± 5%
Overload capacity		1.5 x In (A)	
Efficiency		98% (2% of thermal losses)	
THDI *(1)*	%	≤ 16	
Cos φ		At 75% of the line current: 0.85 At 100% of the line current: 0.99 At 150% of the line current: 1	

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity	VW3 A4 601…604		16 mm^2
	VW3 A4 605…609		50 mm^2
	VW3 A4 610, 611		Connected on a bar, Ø 12.5
	VW3 A4 612, 613, 619		Connected on a bar, Ø 16.5
	VW3 A4 621, 622		16 mm^2
	VW3 A4 623…627		50 mm^2
	VW3 A4 628, 629		Connected on a bar, Ø 12.5
	VW3 A4 630…633, 639		Connected on a bar, Ø 16.5
	VW3 A4 641…644		16 mm^2
	VW3 A4 645…648		50 mm^2
	VW3 A4 649		Connected on a bar, Ø 12.5
	VW3 A4 650, 651, 656, 657		Connected on a bar, Ø 16.5
	VW3 A4 661…663		16 mm^2
	VW3 A4 664…666		50 mm^2
	VW3 A4 667, 668		Connected on a bar, Ø 12.5
	VW3 A4 669…671, 676, 677		Connected on a bar, Ø 16.5

(1) The total current harmonic distortion (THDI) is indicated for a total voltage harmonic distortion (THDU) < 2% and a short-circuit ratio (RSCE) > 66%, and only for the nominal current of the passive filter. If these conditions are not adhered to, the total current harmonics will be reduced without any guarantee of level.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: passive filters

Passive filters: 3-phase power supply 400 V 50 Hz

Motor rating		For drives	Line supply Line current	Filter In (2)	Quantity per drive	Reference	Weight
kW	HP		A	A			kg
THDI 16% (1)							
0.75	1	ATV 71H075N4 ATV 71W075N4 ATV 71P075N4Z	2.50	6	1	**VW3 A4 601**	15.000
1.5	2	ATV 71HU15N4 ATV 71WU15N4 ATV 71PU15N4Z	3.60	6	1	**VW3 A4 601**	15.000
2.2	3	ATV 71HU22N4 ATV 71WU22N4 ATV 71PU22N4Z	5.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 601**	15.000
3	–	ATV 71HU30N4 ATV 71WU30N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z	6.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 601**	15.000
4	5	ATV 71HU40N4 ATV 71WU40N4 ATV 71PU40N4Z	7.80	10	1	**VW3 A4 602**	19.000
5.5	7.5	ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71WU55N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z	10.00	10	1	**VW3 A4 602**	19.000
7.5	10	ATV 71HU75N4 ATV 71WU75N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	14.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 603**	21.000
11	15	ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	19.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 603**	21.000
15	20	ATV 71HD15N4 ATV 71WD15N4	26.00	26	1	**VW3 A4 604**	22.000
18.5	25	ATV 71HD18N4 ATV 71WD18N4	32.00	35	1	**VW3 A4 605**	34.000
22	30	ATV 71HD22N4 ATV 71WD22N4	38.00	43	1	**VW3 A4 606**	38.000
30	40	ATV 71HD30N4 ATV 71WD30N4	52.00	72	1	**VW3 A4 607**	56.000
37	50	ATV 71HD37N4 ATV 71WD37N4	63.00	72	1	**VW3 A4 607**	56.000
45	60	ATV 71HD45N4 ATV 71WD45N4	77.00	101	1	**VW3 A4 608**	69.000
55	75	ATV 71HD55N4 ATV 71WD55N4	91.00	101	1	**VW3 A4 608**	69.000
75	100	ATV 71HD75N4 ATV 71WD75N4	126.00	144	1	**VW3 A4 609**	97.000
THDI 10%							
90	125	ATV 71HD90N4	149.00	144	1	**VW3 A4 609**	97.000
110	150	ATV 71HC11N4	182.00	180	1	**VW3 A4 610**	103.000
132	200	ATV 71HC13N4	218.00	216	1	**VW3 A4 611**	112.000
160	250	ATV 71HC16N4	287.00	289	1	**VW3 A4 612**	135.000
200	300	ATV 71HC20N4	353.50	370	1	**VW3 A4 613**	155.000
220	350	ATV 71HC25N4	364.00	370	1	**VW3 A4 613**	155.000
250	400	ATV 71HC25N4	415.00	216	2	**VW3 A4 611**	112.000
280	450	ATV 71HC28N4	485.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 612**	135.000
315	500	ATV 71HC31N4	543.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 612**	135.000
355	–	ATV 71HC40N4	588.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 612**	135.000
400	600	ATV 71HC40N4	664.00	325	2	**VW3 A4 619**	155.000
500	700	ATV 71HC50N4	840.00	289	3	**VW3 A4 612**	135.000

(1) By adding a DC choke (see page 78) to **ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4** *and* **ATV 71P●●●N4Z** *drives, we get a THD ≤ 10%.*
This DC choke is supplied as standard with **ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4** *drives.*
These reduced current harmonics are obtained on condition that the THDU is <2% and the RSCE >66%, and only for the nominal filter current.
(2) In: nominal filter current

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: passive filters

Passive filters: 3-phase power supply 400 V 50 Hz							
Motor rating		**For drives**	**Line supply** **Line current**	**Filter** **In** *(2)*	**Quantity per drive**	**Reference**	**Weight**
kW	*HP*		**A**	**A**			**kg**
THDI 10% *(1)*							
0.75	*1*	ATV 71H075N4 ATV 71W075N4 ATV 71P075N4Z	2.50	6	1	**VW3 A4 621**	21.000
1.5	*2*	ATV 71HU15N4 ATV 71WU15N4 ATV 71PU15N4Z	3.60	6	1	**VW3 A4 621**	21.000
2.2	*3*	ATV 71HU22N4 ATV 71WU22N4 ATV 71PU22N4Z	5.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 621**	21.000
3	*–*	ATV 71HU30N4 ATV 71WU30N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z	6.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 621**	21.000
4	*5*	ATV 71HU40N4 ATV 71WU40N4 ATV 71PU40N4Z	7.80	10	1	**VW3 A4 622**	27.000
5.5	*7.5*	ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71WU55N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z	10.00	10	1	**VW3 A4 622**	27.000
7.5	*10*	ATV 71HU75N4 ATV 71WU75N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	14.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 623**	28.000
11	*15*	ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	19.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 623**	28.000
15	*20*	ATV 71HD15N4 ATV 71WD15N4	26.00	26	1	**VW3 A4 624**	40.000
18.5	*25*	ATV 71HD18N4 ATV 71WD18N4	32.00	35	1	**VW3 A4 625**	49.000
22	*30*	ATV 71HD22N4 ATV 71WD22N4	38.00	43	1	**VW3 A4 626**	52.000
30	*40*	ATV 71HD30N4 ATV 71WD30N4	52.00	72	1	**VW3 A4 627**	88.000
37	*50*	ATV 71HD37N4 ATV 71WD37N4	63.00	72	1	**VW3 A4 627**	88.000
45	*60*	ATV 71HD45N4 ATV 71WD45N4	77.00	101	1	**VW3 A4 628**	150.000
55	*75*	ATV 71HD55N4 ATV 71WD55N4	91.00	101	1	**VW3 A4 628**	150.000
75	*100*	ATV 71HD75N4 ATV 71WD75N4	126.00	144	1	**VW3 A4 629**	167.000
THDI 5%							
90	*125*	ATV 71HD90N4	149.00	144	1	**VW3 A4 629**	167.000
110	*150*	ATV 71HC11N4	182.00	180	1	**VW3 A4 630**	178.000
132	*200*	ATV 71HC13N4	218.00	216	1	**VW3 A4 631**	224.000
160	*250*	ATV 71HC16N4	287.00	289	1	**VW3 A4 632**	271.000
200	*300*	ATV 71HC20N4	353.50	370	1	**VW3 A4 633**	320.000
220	*350*	ATV 71HC25N4	364.00	370	1	**VW3 A4 633**	320.000
250	*400*	ATV 71HC25N4	415.00	216	2	**VW3 A4 631**	224.000
280	*450*	ATV 71HC28N4	485.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 632**	271.000
315	*500*	ATV 71HC31N4	543.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 632**	271.000
355	*–*	ATV 71HC40N4	588.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 632**	271.000
400	*600*	ATV 71HC40N4	664.00	325	2	**VW3 A4 639**	284.000
500	*700*	ATV 71HC50N4	840.00	289	3	**VW3 A4 632**	271.000

*(1) By adding a DC choke (see page 78) to **ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4** and **ATV 71P●●●N4Z** drives, we get a THD ≤ 5%.*
*This DC choke is supplied as standard with **ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4** drives.*
These reduced current harmonics are obtained on condition that the THDU is <2% and the RSCE >66%, and only for the nominal filter current.
(2) In: nominal filter current

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: passive filters

Passive filters: 3-phase power supply 460 V 60 Hz						
Motor rating		**For drives**	**Line supply**	**Filter**	**Quantity per drive**	**Reference**	**Weight**
			Line current	In *(2)*			
kW	*HP*		**A**	**A**			**kg**
THDI 16% *(1)*							
0.75	*1*	ATV 71H075N4 ATV 71W075N4 ATV 71P075N4Z	2.50	6	1	**VW3 A4 641**	15.000
1.5	*2*	ATV 71HU15N4 ATV 71WU15N4 ATV 71PU15N4Z	3.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 641**	15.000
2.2	*3*	ATV 71HU22N4 ATV 71WU22N4 ATV 71PU22N4Z	5.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 641**	15.000
3	*–*	ATV 71HU30N4 ATV 71WU30N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z	6.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 641**	15.000
4	*5*	ATV 71HU40N4 ATV 71WU40N4 ATV 71PU40N4Z	7.00	10	1	**VW3 A4 642**	19.000
5.5	*7.5*	ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71WU55N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z	10.00	10	1	**VW3 A4 642**	19.000
7.5	*10*	ATV 71HU75N4 ATV 71WU75N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	13.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 643**	23.000
11	*15*	ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	19.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 643**	23.000
15	*20*	ATV 71HD15N4 ATV 71WD15N4	24.00	26	1	**VW3 A4 644**	34.000
18.5	*25*	ATV 71HD18N4 ATV 71WD18N4	32.00	35	1	**VW3 A4 645**	42.000
22	*30*	ATV 71HD22N4 ATV 71WD22N4	35.00	35	1	**VW3 A4 645**	42.000
30	*40*	ATV 71HD30N4 ATV 71WD30N4	44.00	43	1	**VW3 A4 646**	45.000
37	*50*	ATV 71HD37N4 ATV 71WD37N4	58.70	72	1	**VW3 A4 647**	61.000
45	*60*	ATV 71HD45N4 ATV 71WD45N4	68.00	72	1	**VW3 A4 647**	61.000
55	*75*	ATV 71HD55N4 ATV 71WD55N4	82.60	101	1	**VW3 A4 648**	75.000
75	*100*	ATV 71 HD75N4 ATV 71 WD75N4	108.00	101	1	**VW3 A4 648**	75.000
THDI 10%							
90	*125*	ATV 71HD90N4	134.00	180	1	**VW3 A4 649**	107.000
110	*150*	ATV 71HC11N4	163.00	180	1	**VW3 A4 649**	107.000
132	*200*	ATV 71HC13N4	192.00	217	1	**VW3 A4 656**	119.000
160	*250*	ATV 71HC16N4	235.00	289	1	**VW3 A4 650**	145.000
200	*300*	ATV 71HC20N4	300.00	370	1	**VW3 A4 651**	185.000
220	*350*	ATV 71HC25N4	330.00	370	1	**VW3 A4 651**	185.000
250	*400*	ATV 71HC25N4	400.00	217	2	**VW3 A4 656**	119.000
280	*450*	ATV 71HC28N4	440.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 650**	145.000
315	*500*	ATV 71HC31N4	470.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 650**	145.000
355	*–*	ATV 71HC40N4	530.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 650**	145.000
400	*600*	ATV 71HC40N4	590.00	325	2	**VW3 A4 657**	165.000
500	*700*	ATV 71HC50N4	730.00	370	2	**VW3 A4 651**	185.000

*(1) By adding a DC choke (see page 78) to **ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4** and **ATV 71P●●●N4Z** drives, we get a THD ≤ 10%.*
*This DC choke is supplied as standard with **ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4** drives.*
*These reduced current harmonics are obtained on condition that the THDU is <2% and the RSCE >66%, and only for the nominal filter current.*
(2) In: nominal filter current

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: reduction of current harmonics
Option: passive filters

Passive filters: 3-phase power supply 460 V 60 Hz

Motor rating		For drives	Line supply	Filter	Quantity per drive	Reference	Weight
			Line current	In (2)			
kW	HP		A	A			kg
THDI 10% (1)							
0.75	1	ATV 71H075N4 ATV 71W075N4 ATV 71P075N4Z	2.50	6	1	**VW3 A4 661**	21.000
1.5	2	ATV 71HU15N4 ATV 71WU15N4 ATV 71PU15N4Z	3.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 661**	21.000
2.2	3	ATV 71HU22N4 ATV 71WU22N4 ATV 71PU22N4Z	4.20	6	1	**VW3 A4 661**	21.000
3	–	ATV 71HU30N4 ATV 71WU30N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z	6.00	6	1	**VW3 A4 661**	21.000
4	5	ATV 71HU40N4 ATV 71WU40N4 ATV 71PU40N4Z	7.00	10	1	**VW3 A4 662**	27.000
5.5	7.5	ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z	10.00	10	1	**VW3 A4 662**	27.000
7.5	10	ATV 71HU75N4 ATV 71WU75N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	13.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 663**	28.000
11	15	ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	19.00	19	1	**VW3 A4 663**	28.000
15	20	ATV 71HD15N4 ATV 71WD15N4	24.00	26	1	**VW3 A4 664**	41.000
18.5	25	ATV 71HD18N4 ATV 71WD18N4	32.00	35	1	**VW3 A4 665**	49.000
22	30	ATV 71HD22N4 ATV 71WD22N4	35.00	35	1	**VW3 A4 665**	49.000
30	40	ATV 71HD30N4 ATV 71WD30N4	44.00	43	1	**VW3 A4 666**	56.000
37	50	ATV 71HD37N4 ATV 71WD37N4	58.70	72	1	**VW3 A4 667**	80.000
45	60	ATV 71HD45N4 ATV 71WD45N4	68.00	72	1	**VW3 A4 668**	98.000
55	75	ATV 71HD55N4 ATV 71WD55N4	82.60	101	1	**VW3 A4 668**	98.000
75	100	ATV 71HD75N4 ATV 71WD75N4	108.00	101	1	**VW3 A4 668**	98.000
THDI 5%							
90	125	ATV 71HD90N4	134.00	180	1	**VW3 A4 669**	151.000
110	150	ATV 71HC11N4	163.00	180	1	**VW3 A4 669**	151.000
132	200	ATV 71HC13N4	192.00	217	1	**VW3 A4 676**	171.000
160	250	ATV 71HC16N4	235.00	289	1	**VW3 A4 670**	215.000
200	300	ATV 71HC20N4	300.00	370	1	**VW3 A4 671**	250.000
220	350	ATV 71HC25N4	330.00	370	1	**VW3 A4 671**	250.000
250	400	ATV 71HC25N4	400.00	217	2	**VW3 A4 676**	171.000
280	450	ATV 71HC28N4	440.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 670**	215.000
315	500	ATV 71HC31N4	470.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 670**	215.000
355	–	ATV 71HC40N4	530.00	289	2	**VW3 A4 670**	215.000
400	600	ATV 71HC40N4	590.00	325	2	**VW3 A4 677**	240.000
500	700	ATV 71HC50N4	730.00	370	2	**VW3 A4 671**	250.000

*(1) By adding a DC choke (see page 78) to **ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4** and **ATV 71P●●●N4Z** drives, we get a THD ≤ 5%.*
*This DC choke is supplied as standard with **ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4** drives.*
These reduced current harmonics are obtained on condition that the THDU is <2% and the RSCE >66%, and only for the nominal filter current.
(2) In: nominal filter current

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: additional EMC input filters

ATV 71H●●●M3
ATV 71●●●●N4
with integrated filter
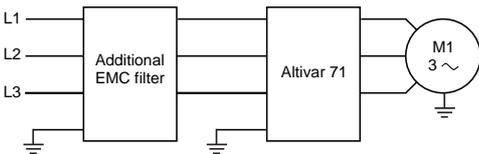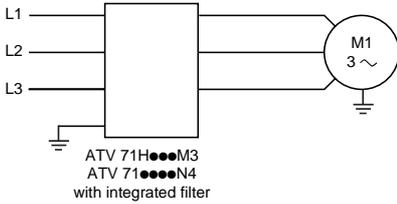
Integrated filters

Altivar 71 drives, except for the ATV 71H●●●M3X, have built-in radio interference input filters to meet the EMC standard for variable speed electrical power drive "products" IEC/EN 61800-3, edition 2, category C2 or C3 in environment 1 or 2 and to comply with the European directive on EMC (electromagnetic compatibility).

For drives	Maximum length of shielded cable according to EN 55011 class A *(1)*			
	Group 1 *(2)*		Group 2 *(2)*	
	LF *(3)*	HF *(3)*	LF *(3)*	HF *(3)*
	m	m	m	m
ATV 71H037M3…HU22M3	10	5	–	–
ATV 71HU30M3…HU75M3	–	–	10	5
ATV 71H075N4…HU40N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU40N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU40N4Z	10	5	–	–
ATV 71HU55N4…HD15N4 ATV 71WU55N4…WD15N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z…PU75N4Z	–	–	10	5
ATV 71HD18N4…HC50N4 ATV 71WD18N4…WD75N4	–	–	50	25

Additional EMC input filters

Applications

Additional EMC input filters can be used to meet more stringent requirements and are designed to reduce conducted emissions on the line supply below the limits of standard EN 55011 group 1, class A or B *(2)*.
For ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 and ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z drives, the additional EMC filters can be mounted beside or under the device. They act as a support for the drives and are attached to them via tapped holes.
For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives, the additional EMC filters can only be mounted beside the drive.

Use according to the type of network

Use of these additional filters is only possible on TN (connected to neutral) and TT (neutral to earth) type networks.

Standard IEC/EN 61800-3, appendix D2.1, states that on IT networks (impedance or isolated neutral), filters can cause permanent insulation monitors to operate in a random manner.
In addition, the effectiveness of additional filters on this type of network depends on the type of impedance between neutral and earth, and therefore cannot be predicted. In the case of a machine which needs to be installed on an IT network, the solution would be to insert an isolation transformer and place the machine locally on a TN or TT network.

(1) Maximum lengths for shielded cables connecting motors to drives, for a factory-set switching frequency of 2.5 or 4 kHz depending on the rating see page 12.
If motors are connected in parallel, it is the sum of all cable lengths that should be taken into account.
(2) See page 10.
(3) LF: low switching frequency. HF: high switching frequency.
These frequencies depend on the drive rating:

For drives	Switching frequency	
	LF	HF
	kHz	kHz
ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71H075N4…HD30N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD30N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z	4	4.1…16
ATV 71HD37N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD37N4…WD75N4	2…2.5	2.6…12
ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4	2…4	4.1…8

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: additional EMC input filters

General characteristics

EMC filter type			VW3 A4 401…408	VW3 A4 410…413
Conformity to standards			EN 133200	
Degree of protection			IP 20 and IP 41 on upper part	IP 00 IP 30 with kits VW3 A9 601, 602
Maximum relative humidity			93% without condensation or dripping water conforming to IEC 68-2-3	
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	-10…+50	-25…+45
	Storage	°C	-40…+65	-25…+85
Maximum operating altitude		m	1000 without derating 1000…3000 derating the current by 1% per additional 100 m. Limited to 2000 m for the "Corner Grounded" distribution network	
Vibration resistance			1.5 mm peak to peak from 3…13 Hz, 1 gn peak from 13…150 Hz, in accordance with IEC 60068-2-6	
Shock resistance			15 gn for 11 ms conforming to IEC/EN 60068-2-27	
Maximum nominal voltage	50/60 Hz 3-phase	V	240 +10% 480 +10%	

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity and tightening torque	VW3 A4 401		$4 \ mm^2$ (AWG 10). 0.6 Nm	
	VW3 A4 402		$6 \ mm^2$ (AWG 8). 1.5 Nm	
	VW3 A4 403		$10 \ mm^2$ (AWG 6). 1.5 Nm	
	VW3 A4 404		$16 \ mm^2$ (AWG 4). 2 Nm	
	VW3 A4 405…407		$50 \ mm^2$ (AWG 0). 6 Nm	
	VW3 A4 408		$150 \ mm^2$ (300 kcmil). 25 Nm	
	VW3 A4 409		$25 \ mm^2$ (AWG 2). 4 Nm	
	VW3 A4 410…412		Bar connection, M10 –	
	VW3 A4 413		Bar connection, 2 x M12 –	

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: additional EMC input filters

Additional EMC input filters

For drives	Maximum length of shielded cable (1)				In (2)	Il (3)	Loss (4)	Reference	Weight
	EN 55011 (5) class A Gr1		EN 55011 (5) class B Gr1						
	LF (6)	HF (6)	LF (6)	HF (6)					
	m	m	m	m	A	mA	W		kg
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz									
ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3	100	50	50	20	12	4	10	**VW3 A4 401**	2.200
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3	100	50	50	20	26	4.4	18	**VW3 A4 402**	4.000
ATV 71HU55M3	100	50	50	20	35	3	24	**VW3 A4 403**	5.800
ATV 71HU75M3	100	50	50	20	46	10	19	**VW3 A4 404**	7.000
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X	100	50	50	25	72	33	34	**VW3 A4 405**	12.000
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X	100	50	50	25	90	33	34	**VW3 A4 406**	15.000
ATV 71HD30M3X...HD45M3X	100	50	50	25	180	80	58	**VW3 A4 408**	40.000
ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X	100	50	50	25	273	285	60	**VW3 A4 410**	22.000
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz									
ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU22N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	100	50	50	20	12	7	5	**VW3 A4 401**	2.200
ATV 71HU30N4, HU40N4 ATV 71WU30N4, WU40N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	100	50	50	20	26	8	6	**VW3 A4 402**	4.000
ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4 ATV 71WU55N4,WU75N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	100	50	50	20	35	7	14	**VW3 A4 403**	5.800
ATV 71HD11N4 ATV 71WD11N4	100	50	50	20	46	14	13	**VW3 A4 404**	7.000
ATV 71HD15N4 (7), HD18N4 ATV 71WD15N4 (7), WD18N4	300	200	100	100	72	60	14	**VW3 A4 405**	12.000
ATV 71HD22N4 ATV 71WD22N4	300	200	100	100	90	60	11	**VW3 A4 406**	15.000
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4 ATV 71WD30N4, WD37N4	300	200	100	100	92	60	30	**VW3 A4 407**	17.000
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4	300	200	100	100	180	140	58	**VW3 A4 408**	40.000
ATV 71HD90N4…HC13N4	300	150	50	25	273	500	60	**VW3 A4 410**	22.000
ATV 71HC16N4…HC28N4	300	150	50	25	546	500	125	**VW3 A4 411**	25.000
ATV 71HC31...HC40N4	300	150	50	25	728	500	210	**VW3 A4 412**	25.000
ATV 71HC50N4	300	150	50	25	1456	200	380	**VW3 A4 413**	34.000

(1) The filter selection tables give the maximum lengths for shielded cables connecting motors to drives for a switching frequency of 1 to 16 kHz (see page 12). These limits are given as examples only as they vary depending on the stray capacitance of the motors and the cables used. If motors are connected in parallel, it is the sum of the cable lengths that should be taken into account.
(2) Filter nominal current.
(3) Maximum earth leakage current at 230 V and at 400 V 50 Hz on a TT network.
(4) Via thermal dissipation.
(5) See page 10.
(6) LF: low switching frequency. HF: high switching frequency. These frequencies depend on the drive rating:

For drives	Switching frequency	
	LF	HF
	kHz	kHz
ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71H075N4…HD11N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD11N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z	4	4.1…16
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4…HD30N4 ATV 71WD15N4…WD30N4	3.5...4	4.1…12
ATV 71HD18M3X...HD45M3X ATV 71HD37N4...HD75N4 ATV 71WD37N4…WD75N4	2…2.5	2.6…12
ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X	2…4	4.1…8
ATV 71HD90N4...HC50N4	2…4	4.1…8

*(7) It is possible to use a special filter **VW3 A4 409** with an leakage current Il (3) of 14 mA which enables a maximum motor cable length of 100 m.*

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Option: additional EMC input filters

IP 30 protection kits			
Description	**For filters**	**Reference**	**Weight kg**
Mechanical device consisting of an IP 30 cover and cable clips	VW3 A4 410, 411	**VW3 A9 601**	–
	VW3 A4 412, 413	**VW3 A9 602**	–

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: output filters

The Altivar 71 drive includes as standard a software function used to limit overvoltages at the motor terminals.
Depending on the cable lengths or the type of application, it may be necessary to use output filters:
■ Motor chokes used to limit the dv/dt
■ Sinus filters that are particularly effective for long cable runs

Cable length *(2)*	10…50 m	50…100 m	100…150 m	150…300 m	300…600 m	600…1000 m
Shielded cable						
ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71H075N4…HD15N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD15N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z	Software function *(1)*	Motor choke		–		
ATV 71H●●●M3X ATV 71HD18N4…HC50N4 ATV 71WD18N4…WD75N4	Software function *(1)*		Motor choke	–		
Unshielded cable						
ATV 71H037M3...HU15M3 ATV 71H075N4...HU22N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU22N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	Software function *(1)*		Motor choke or sinus filter	–		
ATV 71HU22M3...HU30M3 ATV 71HU30N4…HU55N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z…PU55N4Z ATV 71WU30N4…WU55N4	Software function *(1)*		Motor choke		Sinus filter	–
ATV 71HU40M3…HU75M3 ATV 71HU75N4…HD15N4 ATV 71WU75N4…WD15N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z	Software function *(1)*		Motor choke		Sinus filter	
ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X ATV 71HD18N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD18N4…WD75N4	Software function *(1)*			Motor choke	Sinus filter	
ATV 71HD55M3X…HD75M3X ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4	Software function *(1)*			Motor choke	2 motor chokes in series	–

(1) The software function limits the overvoltage at the motor terminals to twice the DC bus voltage.
For any application with braking cycles, the DC bus voltage rises to more than the supply voltage multiplied by $\sqrt{2}$.
You must check the electrical characteristics of the motor before using this function.
(2) For an application with several motors connected in parallel, the cable length must include all cabling.
Recommended types of cable:
■ Shielded cables: "GORSE" cable, type GUOSTV-LS/LH; "PROTOFLEX" cable, type EMV2YSL CY,
■ Unshielded cables: "GORSE" cable, type H07 RN-F4GXX; "BELDEN" cable, type 2950X

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: output filters
Option: motor chokes

Motor chokes

Altivar 71

Motor choke
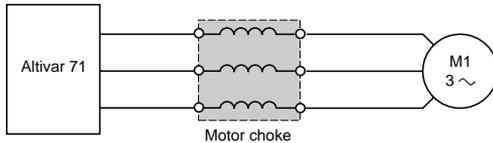
Altivar 71 drives have been developed to operate with the following maximum motor cable lengths:

For drives	Maximum length of motor cable (1)	
	Shielded cable	Unshielded cable
	m	**m**
ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD18N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z	50	100
ATV 71HD18M3X…HD75M3X ATV 71HD22N4…HC50N4 ATV 71WD22N4…WD75N4	100	200

The motor choke enables operation with motor cables above these maximum lengths and/or limits the dv/dt to 500 V/µs at the motor terminals.

It is also used to:
■ Limit overvoltages on the motor terminals to:
□ 1000 V to 400 V ∿ (rms value)
□ 1150 V to 460 V ∿ (rms value)
■ Filter interference caused by opening a contactor placed between the filter and the motor
■ Reduce the motor earth leakage current.

General characteristics (2)

Type of choke			VW3 A5 101…103	VW3 A5 104…108
Drive switching frequency	ATV 71H●●●M3 ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71H075N4…HD30N4 ATV 71W075N4…WD30N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z	**kHz**	4	
	ATV 71HD18M3X…HD75M3X ATV 71HD37N4…HC50N4 ATV 71WD37N4…WD75N4	**kHz**	2.5	
Maximum drive output frequency		**Hz**	100	
Degree of protection			IP 00	IP 00 IP 20 with kits VW3 A9 612 and VW3 A9 613
Thermal protection			By temperature controlled switch	–
Temperature controlled switch (3)	Tripping temperature	**°C**	125	–
	Maximum voltage	**V**	250 ∿	–
	Maximum current	**A**	0.5	–
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	**°C**	-10…+50	
	Storage	**°C**	-25…+70	

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity and tightening torque	VW3 A5 101, 102		10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.5 Nm
	VW3 A5 103		Connected on a bar, Ø 11 mm –
	VW3 A5 104		Connected on a tag connector, M10 –
	VW3 A5 105, 106		Connected on a tag connector, M12 –
	VW3 A5 107, 108		Connected on a tag connector, 2 x M12 –

(1) These values are given for a switching frequency of 2.5 or 4 kHz depending on the rating.
(2) Choke performance is ensured by not exceeding the above cable lengths. For an application with several motors connected in parallel, the cable length must include all cabling. If a cable longer than that recommended is used, the motor chokes may overheat.
(3) The contact should be connected in the sequence (use for signalling or controlling the line contactor).

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: output filters
Option: motor chokes

VW3 A5 101

Motor chokes							
For drives		**Maximum length of motor cable** *(1)*		**Loss**	**Nominal current**	**Sold in lots of**	**Reference**	**Weight**
		Shielded	**Un-shielded**					
		m	**m**	**W**	**A**			**kg**
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz								
ATV 71H037M3…HU22M3		150	300	150	12	–	**VW3 A5 101**	5.500
ATV 71HU30M3…HU75M3		200	260	250	48	–	**VW3 A5 102**	8.000
		300	300	350	90	–	**VW3 A5 103**	10.000
ATV 71HD11M3X…HD22M3X		150	300	350	90	–	**VW3 A5 103**	10.000
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X		150	300	430	215	3	**VW3 A5 104**	17.300
ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X		150	300	475	314	3	**VW3 A5 105**	29.600
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz								
ATV 71H075N4…HU40N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU40N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU40N4Z		75	90	150	12	–	**VW3 A5 101**	5.500
		85	95	250	48	–	**VW3 A5 102**	8.000
		160	200	350	90	–	**VW3 A5 103**	10.000
ATV 71HU55N4…HD18N4 ATV 71WU55N4…WD18N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z…PU75N4Z		85	95	250	48	–	**VW3 A5 102**	8.000
		160	200	350	90	–	**VW3 A5 103**	10.000
		200	300	430	215	3	**VW3 A5 104**	17.300
ATV 71HD22N4, HD30N4 ATV 71WD22N4, WD30N4		140	170	350	90	–	**VW3 A5 103**	10.000
		150	300	430	215	3	**VW3 A5 104**	17.300
ATV 71HD37N4 ATV 71WD37N4		97	166	350	90	–	**VW3 A5 103**	10.000
		200	300	430	215	3	**VW3 A5 104**	17.300
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4 ATV 71WD45N4…WD75N4		150	300	430	215	3	**VW3 A5 104**	17.300
ATV 71HD90N4,		200	300	430	215	3	**VW3 A5 104**	17.300
ATV 71HC11N4, HC13N4		150	250	475	314	3	**VW3 A5 105**	29.600
ATV 71HC16N4, HC20N4		250	300	530	481	3	**VW3 A5 106**	44.400
ATV 71HC25N4	Motor P 220 kW	250	300	530	481	3	**VW3 A5 106**	44.400
	Motor P 250 kW	200	250	598	759	3	**VW3 A5 107**	64.500
ATV 71HC28N4, HC31N4		200	250	598	759	3	**VW3 A5 107**	64.500
ATV 71HC40N4	Motor P 355 kW	200	250	598	759	3	**VW3 A5 107**	64.500
	Motor P 400 kW	250	300	682	1188	3	**VW3 A5 108**	99.200
ATV 71HC50N4		250	300	682	1188	3	**VW3 A5 108**	99.200

(1) Maximum length given for a switching frequency of 2.5 or 4 kHz depending on the rating of the fan, see characteristics page 95.

Ⓔ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: output filters
Option: motor chokes

IP 20 protection kits			
Description	**For filters**	**Reference**	**Weight kg**
Mechanical kit including an IP 20 cover and cable clamps	VW3 A5 104, 105	**VW3 A9 612**	–
	VW3 A5 106…108	**VW3 A9 613**	–

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: output filters
Option: sinus filters

Sinus filters
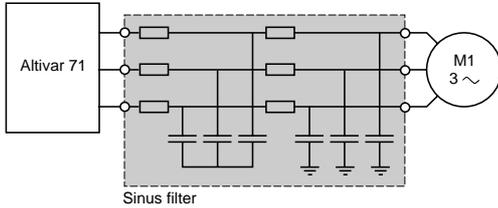
Sinus filter

Sinus filters allow Altivar 71 drives to operate with longer motor cables (up to 1000 m).

For ATV 71H075M3…HD45M3X, ATV 71●U15N4...●D75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives, it also enables the use of unshielded cables while still complying with the standards on radiated EMC emissions (EN55011 class A Gr1).

For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives, the sinus filter only operates with a drive voltage/frequency ratio.

Applications

For ATV 71H075M3…HD45M3X, ATV 71●U15N4... ●D75N4 and
ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives, applications requiring:
■ Long cable runs
■ Mechanical restrictions preventing the use of shielded cables
■ An intermediate transformer between the drive and the motor
■ Motors connected in parallel

For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4...HC50N4 drives, applications requiring:
■ An intermediate transformer between the drive and the motor

General characteristics

Type of sinus filter			VW3 A5 201…206	VW3 A5 207…211
Degree of protection			IP 20	IP 00
Atmospheric pollution			3C2, 3B1, 3S1 conforming to IEC 721.3.3	
Degree of pollution			2 conforming to standard EN 50178	
Vibration resistance			1.5 mm from 3...13 Hz, 1 gn from 13...200 Hz, conforming to IEC 60068-2	
Shock resistance			15 gn for 11 ms conforming to IEC 60068-2-27	
Maximum relative humidity			95%	
Ambient air temperature around the device	Operation	°C	-10...+40 without derating From 40...50°C with current derating of 1.5% per additional °C	
	Storage	°C	-40…+65	
Maximum operating altitude		m	1000 without derating From 1000…3000 with current derating of 1% per additional 100 m	
Switching frequency		kHz	4...8	
Output frequency		Hz	0...100	
Voltage drop			< 10%	
Maximum voltage		V	500 ∼	
Maximum current			1.5 x nominal current for 60 s	
Maximum length of motor cable	Unshielded cable	m	600 or 1000 depending on the drive rating, see page 94	

Connection characteristics

Maximum connection capacity and tightening torque	VW3 A5 201		4 mm² (AWG 10) 0.6 Nm
	VW3 A5 202		6 mm² (AWG 8) 1.5 Nm
	VW3 A5 203		10 mm² (AWG 6) 1.5 Nm
	VW3 A5 204		25 mm² (AWG 2) 4 Nm
	VW3 A5 205		50 mm² (AWG 0) 6 Nm
	VW3 A5 206, 207		95 mm² (AWG 4/0) 20 Nm
	VW3 A5 208, 209		Connected on a bar, Ø 11 mm –
	VW3 A5 210		Connected on a bar, Ø 14 mm –
	VW3 A5 211		Connected on a bar, 4 x Ø 11 mm –

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71: output filters
Option: sinus filters

Sinus filters					
For drives		**Nominal current**	**Loss at 100 Hz**	**Reference**	**Weight**
		A	**W**		**kg**
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz					
ATV 71H075M3, HU15M3 *(1)*		11	50	**VW3 A5 201**	8.000
ATV 71HU22M3, HU30M3		16	70	**VW3 A5 202**	11.000
ATV 71HU40M3... HU75M3		33	120	**VW3 A5 203**	22.000
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X		66	180	**VW3 A5 204**	45.000
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X		95	250	**VW3 A5 205**	60.000
ATV 71HD30M3X... HD45M3X		180	400	**VW3 A5 206**	120.000
ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X		300	1360	**VW3 A5 208**	165.000
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz					
ATV 71HU15N4...HU40N4 *(1)* ATV 71WU15N4…WU40N4 ATV 71PU15N4Z...PU40N4Z		11	50	**VW3 A5 201**	8.000
ATV 71HU55N4 ATV 71WU55N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z		16	70	**VW3 A5 202**	11.000
ATV 71HU75N4...HD15N4 ATV 71WU75N4 ATV 71PU75N4Z		33	120	**VW3 A5 203**	22.000
ATV 71HD18N4... HD30N4 ATV 71WD18N4…WD30N4		66	180	**VW3 A5 204**	45.000
ATV 71HD37N4, HD45N4 ATV 71WD37N4, WD45N4		95	250	**VW3 A5 205**	60.000
ATV 71HD55N4, HD75N4 ATV 71WD55N4, WD75N4		180	400	**VW3 A5 206**	120.000
ATV 71HD90N4, HC11N4		200	945	**VW3 A5 207**	130.000
ATV 71HC13N4, HC16N4		300	1360	**VW3 A5 208**	165.000
ATV 71HC20N4		400	1900	**VW3 A5 209**	190.000
ATV 71HC25N4	Motor P 220 kW	400	1900	**VW3 A5 209**	190.000
	Motor P 250 kW	600	2370	**VW3 A5 210**	260.000
ATV 71HC28N4, HC31N4		600	2370	**VW3 A5 210**	260.000
ATV 71HC40N4	Motor P 355 kW	600	2370	**VW3 A5 210**	260.000
	Motor P 400 kW	1200	5150	**VW3 A5 211**	600.000
ATV 71HC50N4		1200	5150	**VW3 A5 211**	600.000

(1) For ATV 71H075M3, ATV 71HU15M3 and ATV 71HU15N4 drives, it is advisable to use a lower category of motor with a sinus filter.

Combinations

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Table showing possible combinations of ATV 71H●●●M3 and ATV 71H●●●M3X drive options

Motor		Drive	Options				
			DC choke	Line choke	Additional EMC input filter	Motor choke	IP 20 motor choke kit
kW	HP						
Single phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz							
0.37	0.5	**ATV 71H075M3**	–	–	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101	–
0.75	1	**ATV 71HU15M3**	–	–	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101	–
1.5	2	**ATV 71HU22M3**	–	–	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 101	–
2.2	3	**ATV 71HU30M3**	–	–	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
3	–	**ATV 71HU40M3**	–	VW3 A58 501	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
4	5	**ATV 71HU55M3**	–	VW3 A58 502	VW3 A4 403	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
5.5	7.5	**ATV 71HU75M3**	–	VW3 A58 502	VW3 A4 404	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz							
0.37	0.5	**ATV 71H037M3**	VW3 A4 501	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101	–
0.75	1	**ATV 71H075M3**	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101	–
1.5	2	**ATV 71HU15M3**	VW3 A4 505	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101	–
2.2	3	**ATV 71HU22M3**	VW3 A4 506	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 101	–
3	–	**ATV 71HU30M3**	VW3 A4 507	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
4	5	**ATV 71HU40M3**	VW3 A4 508	VW3 A4 554	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
5.5	7.5	**ATV 71HU55M3**	VW3 A4 508	VW3 A4 554	VW3 A4 403	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
7.5	10	**ATV 71HU75M3**	VW3 A4 509	VW3 A4 555	VW3 A4 404	VW3 A5 102, 103	–
11	15	**ATV 71HD11M3X**	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 555	VW3 A4 405	VW3 A5 103	–
15	20	**ATV 71HD15M3X**	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 405	VW3 A5 103	–
18.5	25	**ATV 71HD18M3X**	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 557	VW3 A4 406	VW3 A5 103	–
22	30	**ATV 71HD22M3X**	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 557	VW3 A4 406	VW3 A5 103	–
30	40	**ATV 71HD30M3X**	VW3 A4 512	VW3 A4 557	VW3 A4 408	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
37	50	**ATV 71HD37M3X**	VW3 A4 512	VW3 A4 557	VW3 A4 408	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
45	60	**ATV 71HD45M3X**	VW3 A4 512	VW3 A4 557	VW3 A4 408	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
55	75	**ATV 71HD55M3X**	–	VW3 A4 562	VW3 A4 410	VW3 A5 105	VW3 A9 612
75	100	**ATV 71HD75M3X**	–	VW3 A4 563	VW3 A4 410	VW3 A5 105	VW3 A9 612
Pages		22	81	84	92	96	97

Table showing possible combinations of options common to all Altivar 71 drives

For drives	Logic input adapter 115 V ∿	Remote graphic display terminal	Encoder interface cards			I/O cards (1)		"Controller Inside" programmable card	PowerSuite software workshop for PC or Pocket PC
			RS 422 compatible differential outputs	Open collector outputs	Push-pull outputs	Logic	Extended		
ATV 71H●●●●●	VW3 A3 101	VW3 A1 101	VW3 A3 401, 402	VW3 A3 403, 404	VW3 A3 405 …407	VW3 A3 201	VW3 A3 202	VW3 A3 501	VW3 A8 104, 105
Pages	26	38	41	41	41	43	43	51	208

(1) Maximum combination: 2 cards, in accordance with the compatibility table below:

Type of card	Logic I/O VW3 A3 201	Extended I/O VW3 A3 202	Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501	Communication VW3 A3 3●●
Logic I/O VW3 A3 201				
Extended I/O VW3 A3 202				
Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501				
Communication VW3 A3 3●●				

▮ *Possible to combine*

▮ *Not possible to combine*

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

Sinus filter	Braking resistor	Hoist resistor	Flush-mounting kit (inside dust and damp proof enclosure)	UL Type 1 conformity kit (outside enclosure)	IP 21 or IP 31 conformity kit (outside enclosure)	Control card fan kit
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 202	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 202	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 503	VW3 A9 203	VW3 A9 103	–
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 504	VW3 A9 204	VW3 A9 104	–
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 202	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 202	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 503	VW3 A9 203	VW3 A9 103	–
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 504	VW3 A9 204	VW3 A9 104	–
VW3 A5 204	VW3 A7 705	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A9 505	VW3 A9 205	VW3 A9 105	–
VW3 A5 204	VW3 A7 706	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A9 505	VW3 A9 205	VW3 A9 105	–
VW3 A5 205	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 806	VW3 A9 506	VW3 A9 206	VW3 A9 106	VW3 A9 404
VW3 A5 205	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 807	VW3 A9 506	VW3 A9 206	VW3 A9 106	VW3 A9 404
VW3 A5 206	VW3 A7 708	VW3 A7 807	VW3 A9 508	VW3 A9 217	VW3 A9 117	VW3 A9 406
VW3 A5 206	VW3 A7 709	VW3 A7 808	VW3 A9 508	VW3 A9 217	VW3 A9 117	VW3 A9 406
VW3 A5 206	VW3 A7 709	VW3 A7 808	VW3 A9 508	VW3 A9 217	VW3 A9 117	VW3 A9 406
VW3 A5 208	VW3 A7 713	VW3 A7 809	VW3 A9 510	VW3 A9 209	VW3 A9 109	–
VW3 A5 208	VW3 A7 714	VW3 A7 810	VW3 A9 511	VW3 A9 210	VW3 A9 110	–
99	63	65	27	29	30	26

Communication cards *(1)*							
Ethernet TCP/IP	Modbus/ Uni-Telway	Fipio standard	Substitution Fipio	Modbus Plus	Profibus DP	DeviceNet	INTERBUS
VW3 A3 310	VW3 A3 303	VW3 A3 311	VW3 A3 301	VW3 A3 302	VW3 A3 307	VW3 A3 309	VW3 A3 304
58 and 214	58, 221 and 229	58 and 218	58 and 218	58 and 226	58	58	58

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Table showing possible combinations of ATV 71H●●●N4 drive options

Motor		Drive	Option						
			DC choke	Line choke	Passive filter *(1)*	Additional EMC input filter	IP 30 EMC filter kit	Motor choke	IP 20 motor choke kit
kW	HP								
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz									
0.75	1	**ATV 71H075N4**	VW3 A4 501	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401	–	VW3 A5 10●	–
1.5	2	**ATV 71HU15N4**	VW3 A4 502	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401	–	VW3 A5 10●	–
2.2	3	**ATV 71HU22N4**	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401	–	VW3 A5 10●	–
3	–	**ATV 71HU30N4**	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 402	–	VW3 A5 10●	–
4	5	**ATV 71HU40N4**	VW3 A4 504	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 402	–	VW3 A5 10●	–
5.5	7.5	**ATV 71HU55N4**	VW3 A4 505	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 403	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
7.5	10	**ATV 71HU75N4**	VW3 A4 506	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 403	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
11	15	**ATV 71HD11N4**	VW3 A4 507	VW3 A4 554	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 404	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
15	20	**ATV 71HD15N4**	VW3 A4 508	VW3 A4 554	VW3 A4 6●4	VW3 A4 405	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
18.5	25	**ATV 71HD18N4**	VW3 A4 508	VW3 A4 555	VW3 A4 6●5	VW3 A4 405	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
22	30	**ATV 71HD22N4**	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 555	VW3 A4 6●6	VW3 A4 406	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
30	40	**ATV 71HD30N4**	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●7	VW3 A4 407	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
37	50	**ATV 71HD37N4**	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●7	VW3 A4 407	–	VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612
45	60	**ATV 71HD45N4**	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●8	VW3 A4 408	–	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
55	75	**ATV 71HD55N4**	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●8	VW3 A4 408	–	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
75	100	**ATV 71HD75N4**	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 558	VW3 A4 6●9	VW3 A4 408	–	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
90	125	**ATV 71HD90N4**	–	VW3 A4 558	VW3 A4 6●9	VW3 A4 410	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612
110	150	**ATV 71HC11N4**	–	VW3 A4 559	VW3 A4 6●0	VW3 A4 410	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 105	VW3 A9 612
132	200	**ATV 71HC13N4**	–	VW3 A4 560	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 410	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 105	VW3 A9 612
160	250	**ATV 71HC16N4**	–	VW3 A4 561	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 411	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 106	VW3 A9 613
200	300	**ATV 71HC20N4**	–	VW3 A4 569	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 411	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 106	VW3 A9 613
220	350	**ATV 71HC25N4**	–	VW3 A4 562	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 411	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 106	VW3 A9 613
250	400	**ATV 71HC25N4**	–	VW3 A4 564	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 411	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 107	VW3 A9 613
280	450	**ATV 71HC28N4**	–	VW3 A4 564	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 411	VW3 A9 601	VW3 A5 107	VW3 A9 613
315	500	**ATV 71HC31N4**	–	VW3 A4 565	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 412	VW3 A9 602	VW3 A5 107	VW3 A9 613
355	–	**ATV 71HC40N4**	–	VW3 A4 569	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 412	VW3 A9 602	VW3 A5 107	VW3 A9 613
400	600	**ATV 71HC40N4**	–	VW3 A4 569	VW3 A4 6●9	VW3 A4 412	VW3 A9 602	VW3 A5 108	VW3 A9 613
500	700	**ATV 71HC50N4**	–	VW3 A4 564	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 413	VW3 A9 602	VW3 A5 108	VW3 A9 613
Pages		23	81	84	86	92	93	96	97

Table showing possible combinations of options common to all Altivar 71 drives

For drives	Logic input adapter 115 V ∼	Remote graphic display terminal	Encoder interface cards			I/O cards *(2)*		"Controller Inside" programmable card	PowerSuite software workshop for PC or Pocket PC
			RS 422 compatible differential outputs	Open collector outputs	Push-pull outputs	Logic	Extended		
ATV 71H●●●N4	VW3 A3 101	VW3 A1 101	VW3 A3 401, 402	VW3 A3 403, 404	VW3 A3 405 …407	VW3 A3 201	VW3 A3 202	VW3 A3 501	VW3 A8 104, 105
Pages	26	38	41	41	41	43	43	51	208

(1) There are special passive filters for a 460 V ∼ supply, see pages 88 and 89.
(2) Maximum combination: 2 cards, in accordance with the compatibility table below:

Type of card	Logic I/O VW3 A3 201	Extended I/O VW3 A3 202	Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501	Communication VW3 A3 3●●
Logic I/O VW3 A3 201				
Extended I/O VW3 A3 202				
Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501				
Communication VW3 A3 3●●				

▮ *Possible to combine*

▯ *Not possible to combine*

Telemecanique

Sinus filter	Resistance braking unit	Braking resistor	Hoist resistor	Flush-mounting kit (inside dust and damp proof enclosure)	UL Type 1 conformity kit (outside enclosure)	IP 21 or IP 31 conformity kit (outside enclosure)	Control card fan kit
–	–	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 201	–	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 201	–	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 501	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101	–
VW3 A5 201	–	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 201	–	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 502	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102	–
VW3 A5 202	–	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 503	VW3 A9 203	VW3 A9 103	–
VW3 A5 203	–	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 503	VW3 A9 203	VW3 A9 103	–
VW3 A5 203	–	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 504	VW3 A9 204	VW3 A9 104	–
VW3 A5 203	–	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 505	VW3 A9 205	VW3 A9 105	–
VW3 A5 204	–	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 505	VW3 A9 205	VW3 A9 105	–
VW3 A5 204	–	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 506	VW3 A9 206	VW3 A9 106	VW3 A9 404
VW3 A5 204	–	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A9 507	VW3 A9 207	VW3 A9 107	VW3 A9 405
VW3 A5 205	–	VW3 A7 705	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A9 507	VW3 A9 207	VW3 A9 107	VW3 A9 405
VW3 A5 205	–	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A9 509	VW3 A9 208	VW3 A9 108	VW3 A9 407
VW3 A5 206	–	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A9 509	VW3 A9 208	VW3 A9 108	VW3 A9 407
VW3 A5 206	–	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 806	VW3 A9 509	VW3 A9 208	VW3 A9 108	VW3 A9 407
VW3 A5 207	–	VW3 A7 710	VW3 A7 811	VW3 A9 510	VW3 A9 209	VW3 A9 109	–
VW3 A5 207	–	VW3 A7 711	VW3 A7 812	VW3 A9 511	VW3 A9 210	VW3 A9 110	–
VW3 A5 208	–	VW3 A7 711	VW3 A7 812	VW3 A9 512	VW3 A9 211	VW3 A9 111	–
VW3 A5 208	–	VW3 A7 712	VW3 A7 813	VW3 A9 513	VW3 A9 212	VW3 A9 112	–
VW3 A5 209	VW3 A7 101	VW3 A7 715	VW3 A7 814	VW3 A9 514, 515	VW3 A9 213, 214	VW3 A9 113, 114	–
VW3 A5 209	VW3 A7 101	VW3 A7 716	VW3 A7 815	VW3 A9 514, 515	VW3 A9 213, 214	VW3 A9 113, 114	–
VW3 A5 210	VW3 A7 101	VW3 A7 716	VW3 A7 815	VW3 A9 514, 515	VW3 A9 213, 214	VW3 A9 113, 114	–
VW3 A5 210	VW3 A7 101	VW3 A7 716	VW3 A7 815	VW3 A9 514, 515	VW3 A9 213, 214	VW3 A9 113, 114	–
VW3 A5 210	VW3 A7 102	VW3 A7 717	VW3 A7 816	–	–	VW3 A9 115	–
VW3 A5 210	VW3 A7 102	VW3 A7 717	VW3 A7 816	–	–	VW3 A9 115	–
VW3 A5 211	VW3 A7 102	VW3 A7 717	VW3 A7 816	–	–	VW3 A9 115	–
VW3 A5 211	VW3 A7 102	VW3 A7 718	VW3 A7 817	–	–	VW3 A9 116	–
99	61	63	65	27	29	30	26

| Communication cards (2)							
Ethernet TCP/IP	Modbus/ Uni-Telway	Fipio standard	Substitution Fipio	Modbus Plus	Profibus DP	DeviceNet	INTERBUS
VW3 A3 310	VW3 A3 303	VW3 A3 311	VW3 A3 301	VW3 A3 302	VW3 A3 307	VW3 A3 309	VW3 A3 304
58 and 214	58, 221 and 229	58 and 218	58 and 218	58 and 226	58	58	58

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Table showing possible combinations of ATV 71W●●●N4 drive options

Motor		Drive	Option			
			DC choke	Line choke	Passive filter *(1)*	Additional EMC filter
kW	HP					
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz						
0.75	1	ATV 71W075N4	VW3 A4 501	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401
1.5	2	ATV 71WU15N4	VW3 A4 502	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401
2.2	3	ATV 71WU22N4	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401
3	–	ATV 71WU30N4	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 402
4	5	ATV 71WU40N4	VW3 A4 504	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 402
5.5	7.5	ATV 71WU55N4	VW3 A4 505	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 403
7.5	10	ATV 71WU75N4	VW3 A4 506	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 403
11	15	ATV 71WD11N4	VW3 A4 507	VW3 A4 554	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 404
15	20	ATV 71WD15N4	VW3 A4 508	VW3 A4 554	VW3 A4 6●4	VW3 A4 405
18.5	25	ATV 71WD18N4	VW3 A4 508	VW3 A4 555	VW3 A4 6●5	VW3 A4 405
22	30	ATV 71WD22N4	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 555	VW3 A4 6●6	VW3 A4 406
30	40	ATV 71WD30N4	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●7	VW3 A4 407
37	50	ATV 71WD37N4	VW3 A4 510	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●7	VW3 A4 407
45	60	ATV 71WD45N4	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●8	VW3 A4 408
55	75	ATV 71WD55N4	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 556	VW3 A4 6●8	VW3 A4 408
75	100	ATV 71WD75N4	VW3 A4 511	VW3 A4 558	VW3 A4 6●9	VW3 A4 408
Pages		24	81	84	86	92

Table showing possible combinations of options common to all Altivar 71 drives

For drives	Logic input adapter 115 V ∿	Remote graphic display terminal	Encoder interface cards			I/O cards *(2)*		"Controller Inside" programmable card	PowerSuite software workshop for PC or Pocket PC
			RS 422 compatible differential outputs	Open collector outputs	Push-pull outputs	Logic	Extended		
ATV 71W●●●N4	VW3 A3 101	VW3 A1 101	VW3 A3 401, 402	VW3 A3 403, 404	VW3 A3 405 …407	VW3 A3 201	VW3 A3 202	VW3 A3 501	VW3 A8 104, 105
Pages	26	38	41	41	41	43	43	51	208

(1) There are special passive filters for a 460 V ∿ supply, see pages 88 and 89.
(2) Maximum combination: 2 cards, in accordance with the compatibility table below:

Type of card	Logic I/O VW3 A3 201	Extended I/O VW3 A3 202	Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501	Communication VW3 A3 3●●
Logic I/O VW3 A3 201				
Extended I/O VW3 A3 202				
Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501				
Communication VW3 A3 3●●				

▮ *Possible to combine*

▮ *Not possible to combine*

Telemecanique

Motor choke	IP 20 motor choke kit	Sinus filter	Braking resistor	Hoist resistor	Equipped IP 54 plate
VW3 A5 10●	–	–	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A7 901
VW3 A5 10●	–	VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A7 901
VW3 A5 10●	–	VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A7 901
VW3 A5 10●	–	VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A7 901
VW3 A5 10●	–	VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A7 901
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 202	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A7 902
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A7 902
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A7 903
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 703	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A7 904
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 204	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A7 904
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 204	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A7 905
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 204	VW3 A7 704	VW3 A7 804	VW3 A7 906
VW3 A5 10●	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 205	VW3 A7 705	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A7 906
VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 205	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A7 907
VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 206	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 805	VW3 A7 907
VW3 A5 104	VW3 A9 612	VW3 A5 206	VW3 A7 707	VW3 A7 806	VW3 A7 907
96	97	99	63	65	26

Communication cards *(2)*

Ethernet TCP/IP	Modbus/ Uni-Telway	Fipio standard	Substitution Fipio	Modbus Plus	Profibus DP	DeviceNet	INTERBUS
VW3 A3 310	VW3 A3 303	VW3 A3 311	VW3 A3 301	VW3 A3 302	VW3 A3 307	VW3 A3 309	VW3 A3 304
58 and 214	58, 221 and 229	58 and 218	58 and 218	58 and 226	58	58	58

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Table showing possible combinations of ATV 71P●●●N4Z drive options

Motor		Drive	Options					
			DC choke	Line choke	Passive filter	Additional EMC filter	Motor choke	IP 20 motor choke kit
kW	*HP*							
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz								
0.75	*1*	**ATV 71P075N4Z**	VW3 A4 501	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101	–
1.5	*2*	**ATV 71PU15N4Z**	VW3 A4 502	VW3 A4 551	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101, 102, 103	–
2.2	*3*	**ATV 71PU22N4Z**	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 401	VW3 A5 101, 102, 103	–
3	*–*	**ATV 71PU30N4Z**	VW3 A4 503	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●1	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 101, 102, 103	–
4	*5*	**ATV 71PU40N4Z**	VW3 A4 504	VW3 A4 552	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 402	VW3 A5 101, 102, 103	–
5.5	*7.5*	**ATV 71PU55N4Z**	VW3 A4 505	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 6●2	VW3 A4 403	VW3 A5 102, 103, 104	VW3 A9 612
7.5	*10*	**ATV 71PU75N4Z**	VW3 A4 506	VW3 A4 553	VW3 A4 6●3	VW3 A4 403	VW3 A5 102, 103, 104	VW3 A9 612
Pages		25	81	84	86	92	96	97

Table showing possible combinations of options common to all Altivar 71 drives

For drives	Logic input adapter 115 V ∼	Remote graphic display terminal	Encoder interface cards			I/O cards *(2)*		"Controller Inside" programmable card	PowerSuite software workshop for PC or Pocket PC
			RS 422 compatible differential outputs	Open collector outputs	Push-pull outputs	Logic	Extended		
ATV 71P●●●N4Z	VW3 A3 101	VW3 A1 101	VW3 A3 401, 402	VW3 A3 403, 404	VW3 A3 405 …407	VW3 A3 201	VW3 A3 202	VW3 A3 501	VW3 A8 104, 105
Pages	26	38	41	41	41	43	43	51	208

(1) There are special passive filters for a 460 V ∼ supply, see pages 88 and 89.
(2) Maximum combination: 2 cards, in accordance with the compatibility table below:

Type of card	Logic I/O VW3 A3 201	Extended I/O VW3 A3 202	Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501	Communication VW3 A3 3●●
Logic I/O VW3 A3 201				
Extended I/O VW3 A3 202				
Programmable "Controller Inside" VW3 A3 501				
Communication VW3 A3 3●●				

Possible to combine

Not possible to combine

Telemecanique

Sinus filter	Braking resistor	Hoist resistor	Kits for mounting inside dust and damp proof enclosure	Fan	UL Type 1 conformity kit (outside enclosure)	IP 21 or IP 31 conformity kit (outside enclosure)
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 801	VZ3 V1 203	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 801	VZ3 V1 203	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 801	VW3 A9 801	VZ3 V1 203	VW3 A9 201	VW3 A9 101
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 802	VZ3 V1 209	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102
VW3 A5 201	VW3 A7 701	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 802	VZ3 V1 209	VW3 A9 202	VW3 A9 102
VW3 A5 202	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 802	VW3 A9 803	VZ3 V1 204	VW3 A9 203	VW3 A9 103
VW3 A5 203	VW3 A7 702	VW3 A7 803	VW3 A9 803	VZ3 V1 204	VW3 A9 203	VW3 A9 103
63	63	65	28	28	29	30

Communication cards (2)							
Ethernet TCP/IP	Modbus/ Uni-Telway	Fipio standard	Substitution Fipio	Modbus Plus	Profibus DP	DeviceNet	INTERBUS
VW3 A3 310	VW3 A3 303	VW3 A3 311	VW3 A3 301	VW3 A3 302	VW3 A3 307	VW3 A3 309	VW3 A3 304
58 and 214	58, 221 and 229	58 and 218	58 and 218	58 and 226	58	58	58

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X, ATV 71H075N4...HD18N4 variable speed drives

Without option card	1 option card *(1)*	2 option cards *(1)*	Common front view
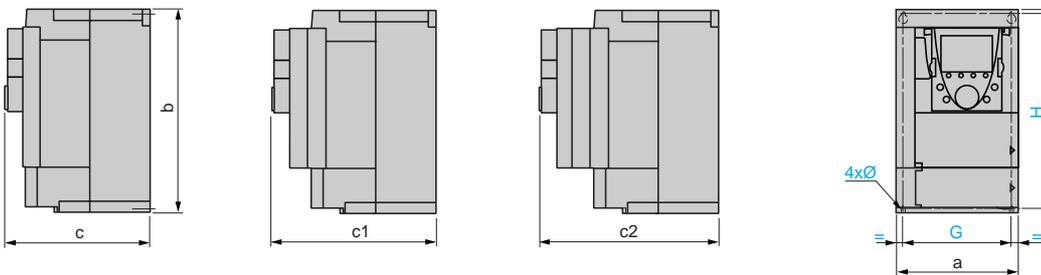
ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	c2	G	H	K	Ø
037M3...U15M3, 075N4...U22N4	130	230	175	198	221	113.5	220	5	5
U22M3...U40M3, U30N4, U40N4	155	260	187	210	233	138	249	4	5
U55M3, U55N4, U75N4	175	295	187	210	233	158	283	6	5
U75M3, D11N4	210	295	213	236	259	190	283	6	6
D11M3X, D15M3X, D15N4, D18N4	230	400	213	236	259	210	386	8	6

ATV 71HD18M3X...45M3X, ATV 71HD22N4...HD37N4 variable speed drives

Without option card	1 option card *(1)*	2 option cards *(1)*	Common front view
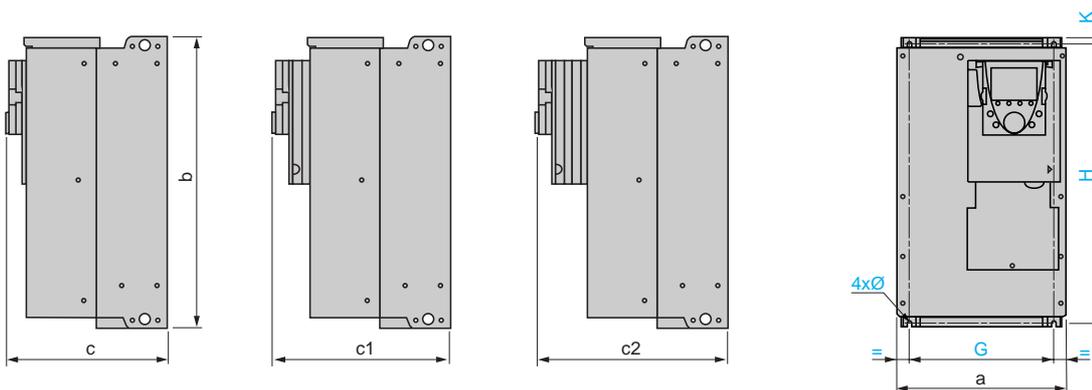
ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	c2	G	H	K	Ø
D18M3X, D22M3X, D22N4	240	420	236	259	282	206	403	10	6
D30N4, D37N4	240	550	266	289	312	206	529	10	6
D30M3X...D45M3X	320	550	266	289	312	280	524	10	9

ATV 71HD45N4...HD75N4 variable speed drives

Without option card	1 option card *(1)*	2 option cards *(1)*	Common front view

(1) Option cards: I/O extension cards, communication cards or "Controller Inside" programmable card.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4...HC28N4 variable speed drives

With or without 1 option card *(1)*	2 option cards *(1)*	Common front view	ATV 71HC20N4…HC28N4 with braking unit VW3 A7 101

ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	G	H	K	K1	K2	Ø
D55M3X, D90N4	320	920	377	392	250	650	150	75	30	11.5
D75M3X, C11N4	360	1022	377	392	298	758	150	75	30	11.5
C13N4	340	1190	377	392	285	920	150	75	30	11.5
C16N4	440	1190	377	392	350	920	150	75	30	11.5
C20N4…C28N4	595	1190	377	392	540	920	150	75	30	11.5

ATV 71HC31N4…HC50N4 variable speed drives

With or without 1 option card *(1)*	2 option cards *(1)*	ATV 71HC31N4, HC40N4 Front view	ATV 71HC50N4 Front view

ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	G	J	J1	H	K	K1	K2	Ø
C31N4, C40N4	890	1390	377	392	417	70	380	1120	150	75	30	11.5
C50N4	1120	1390	377	392	532	70	495	1120	150	75	30	11.5

(1) Option cards: I/O extension cards, communication cards or "Controller Inside" programmable card.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Variable speed drives without graphic display terminal
ATV 71H●●●M3Z, ATV 71HD11M3XZ, HD15M3XZ, ATV 71H075N4Z…HD18N4Z, ATV 71P●●●N4Z

Without option card (1)	1 option card (1)	2 option cards (1)	Common front view
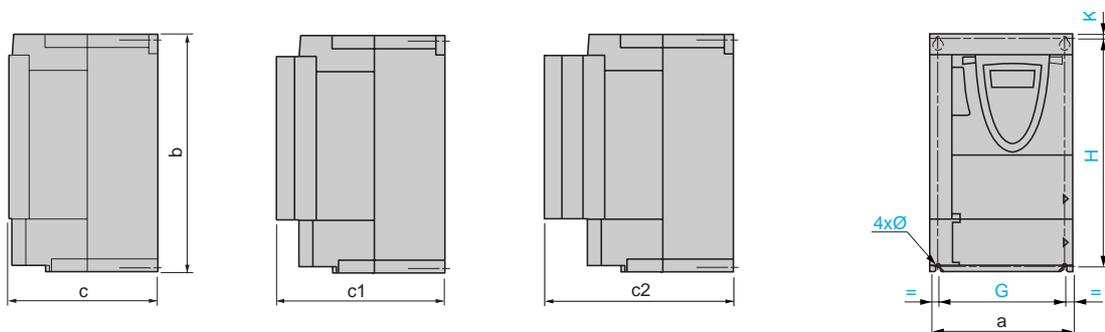
ATV 71	a	b	c	c1	c2	G	H	K	Ø
H037M3Z…HU15M3Z, H075N4Z…HU22N4Z P075N4Z, PU22N4Z	130	230	149	172	195	113.5	220	5	5
HU22M3Z…HU40M3Z, HU30N4Z, HU40N4Z PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	155	260	161	184	207	138	249	4	5
HU55M3Z, HU55N4Z, HU75N4Z PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	175	295	161	184	207	158	283	6	6
HU75M3Z, HD11N4Z	210	295	187	210	233	190	283	6	6
HD11M3XZ, HD15M3XZ HD15N4Z, HD18N4Z	230	400	187	210	233	210	386	8	6

Variable speed drives without graphic display terminal
ATV 71HD22N4Z...HD37N4Z

Without option card	1 option card (1)	2 option cards (1)	Common front view
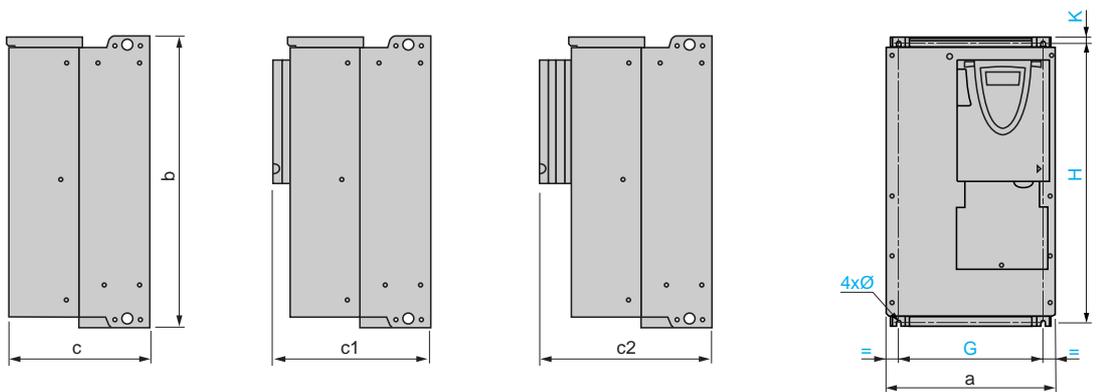
ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	c2	G	H	K	Ø
D22N4Z	240	420	210	233	256	206	403	11,4	6
D30N4Z, D37N4Z	240	550	230	253	276	206	531,5	11,4	6

(1) Option cards: I/O extension cards, multi-pump cards, "Controller Inside" programmable card, communication cards.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Variable speed drives without graphic display terminal
ATV 71HD45N4Z...HD75N4Z

With or without 1 option card (1)	2 option cards (1)	Common front view
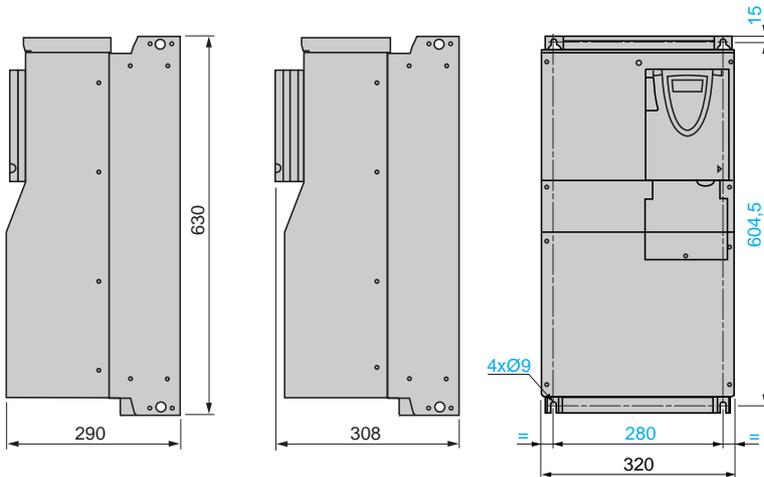
630

290

308

15

604,5

4xØ9

= 280 =

320

(1) Option cards: I/O extension cards, communication cards or "Controller Inside" programmable card.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9	Characteristics: pages 10 to 17	References: pages 22 to 25	Schemes: pages 134 to 151	Functions: pages 172 to 203

Telemecanique

111

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Variable speed drives without DC choke
ATV 71HD55M3XD, HD75M3XD, ATV 71HD90N4D...HC28N4D

With or without 1 option card (1)	2 option cards (1)	Common front view	ATV 71HC20N4D...HC28N4D with braking unit VW3 A7 101
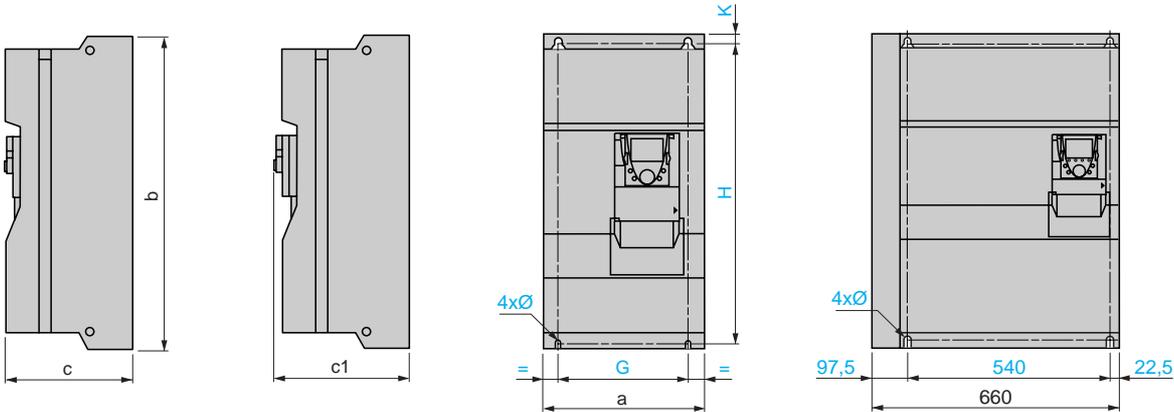
ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	G	H	K	Ø
D55M3XD, D90N4D	310	680	377	392	250	650	15	11.5
D75M3XD, C11N4D	350	782	377	392	298	758	12	11.5
C13N4D	330	950	377	392	285	920	15	11.5
C16N4D	430	950	377	392	350	920	15	11.5
C20N4D…C28N4D	585	950	377	392	540	920	15	11.5

Variable speed drives without DC choke
ATV 71HC31N4D…HC50N4D

With or without 1 option card (1)	2 option cards (1)	ATV 71HC31N4D, HC40N4D Front view	ATV 71HC50N4D Front view
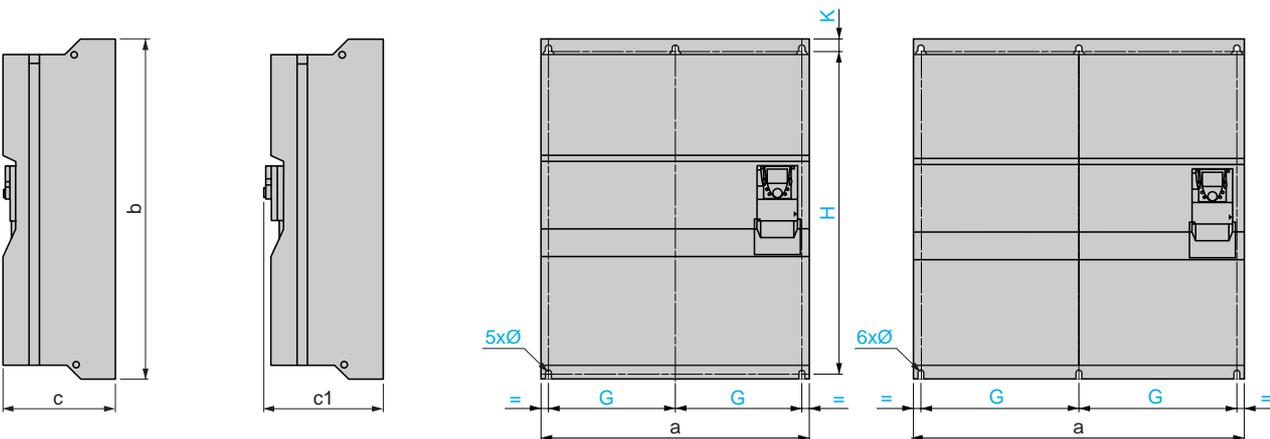
ATV 71H	a	b	c	c1	G	H	K	Ø
C31N4D, C40N4D	880	1150	377	392	417.5	1120	15	11.5
C50N4D	1110	1150	377	392	532.5	1120	15	11.5

(1) Option cards: I/O extension cards, multi-pump cards, "Controller Inside" programmable card or communication cards.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 12/IP 54 drives

ATV 71W075N4…WD75N4 variable speed drives
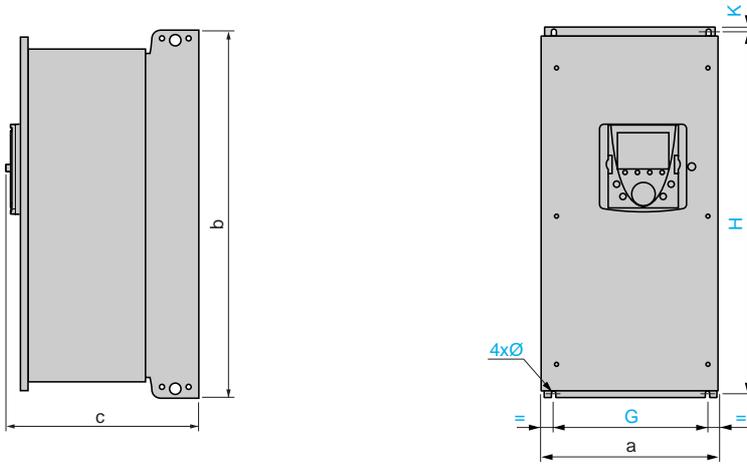
ATV 71W	a	b	c	G	H	K	Ø
075N4…U22N4	235	490	272	200	478	6	6
U30N4, U40N4	235	490	286	200	478	6	6
U55N4, U75N4	255	525	286	220	513	6	6
D11N4	290	560	315	250	544	8	6
D15N4, D18N4	310	665	315	270	650	10	6
D22N4	284	720	315	245	700	10	7
D30N4, D37N4	284	880	343	245	860	10	7
D45N4…D75N4	362	1000	364	300	975	10	9

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Accessories

EMC mounting plates *(1)*

Pour ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4, ATV 71P●●●N4Z

For ATV 71	a	b
H037M3…HU15M3 H075N4…HU22N4 P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	83	70
HU22M3…HU40M3 HU30N4, HU40N4	83	85
HU55M3 HU55N4, HU75N4	95	85
HU75M3…HD15M3X HD11N4…HD18N4	95	118

For ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71HD22N4…HD75N4
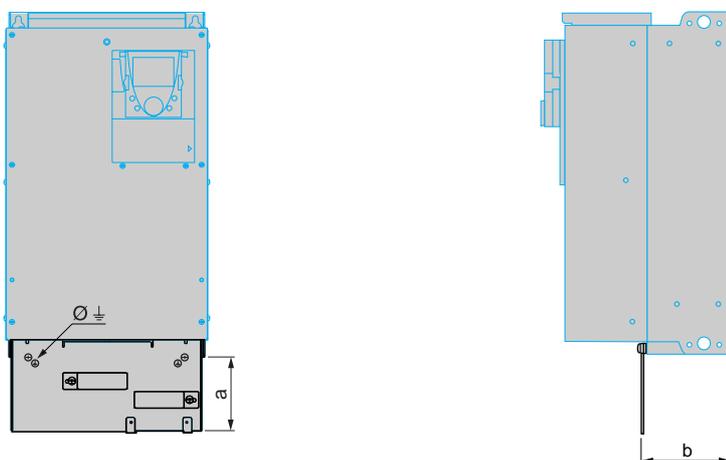
For ATV 71	a	b	Ø
HD18M3X, HD22M3X HD22N4	122	120	M5
HD30N4, HD37N4	113	127	M5
HD30M3X…HD45M3X	118	128	M8
HD45N4…HD75N4	118	173	M8

(1) Supplied with the drive apart from ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4. In the case of these drives the mounting plate is supplied with the UL Type 1 or IP 31 conformity kit, which must be ordered separately, see pages 29 and 30. Dimensions, see pages 118 and 119.

Control card fan kits VW3 A9 404…407

Mounting recommendations

Presentation:
page 26

References:
page 26

Functions:
pages 172 to 203

114

Telemecanique

Dimensions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Accessories

Kits for flush-mounting inside dust and damp proof enclosure

Installing the drive using the flush-mounting kit

Side view

For ATV 71 drives	c	Kit VW3
H037M3, HU15M3, H075N4…HU22N4	60	A9 501
HU22M3…HU55M3, HU30N4…HU75N4	70	A9 502, 503
HU75M3…HD15M3X, HD11N4…HD18N4	90	A9 504, 505
HD18M3X…HD45M3X, HD22N4…HD75N4	105	A9 506…509
HD55M3X, HD55M3XD, HD90N4…HD90N4D	150	A9 510
HD75M3X, HD75M3XD, HC11N4…HC28N4, HC11N4D…HC28N4D	250	A9 511…515

(1) Dust and damp proof enclosure.
(2) Kit for flush-mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure.
(3) Drive power section outside the enclosure.
(4) DC choke for ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and
ATV 71HD90N4…HC28N4 drives.

VW3 A9 501…505

Cut-outs and drill holes

VW3 A9 506

Cut-outs and drill holes

VW3	a	a1	b	b1	G	G1	H	H1
A9 501	222	170	397	351	205	17.5	127	15
A9 502	250	198	429.5	384.5	233	17.5	137.5	14
A9 503	267	215	465	419	250	17.5	149.5	14.5
A9 504	302	250	481.5	438	285	17.5	155	13
A9 505	324.5	270	584.5	537.5	305	17.5	189.5	15.5

(1) Ø 3.6 hole for M4 self-tapping screw.

(1) Ø 4.5 hole for M5 self-tapping screw.

VW3 A9 507

Cut-outs and drill holes

VW3 A9 508

Cut-outs and drill holes

(1) Ø 4.5 hole for M5 self-tapping screw.

(1) Ø 4.5 hole for M5 self-tapping screw.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Accessories

Kits for flush-mounting inside dust and damp proof enclosure (continued)

VW3 A9 509

Cut-outs and drill holes
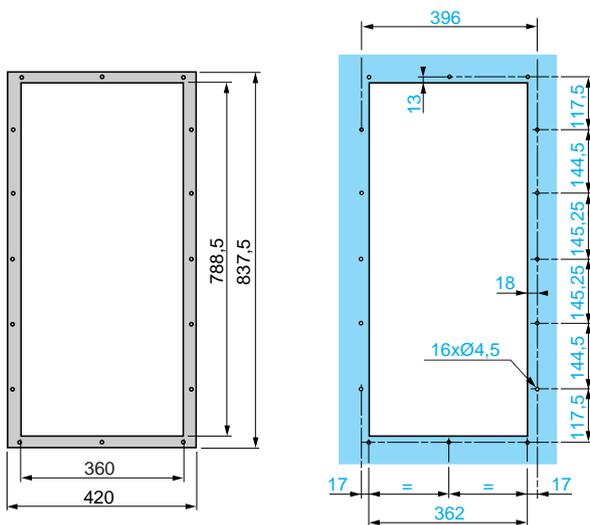
(1) Ø 4.5 hole for M5 self-tapping screw.

VW3 A9 510, 511

Cut-outs and drill holes without DC choke   **Cut-outs and drill holes with DC choke**
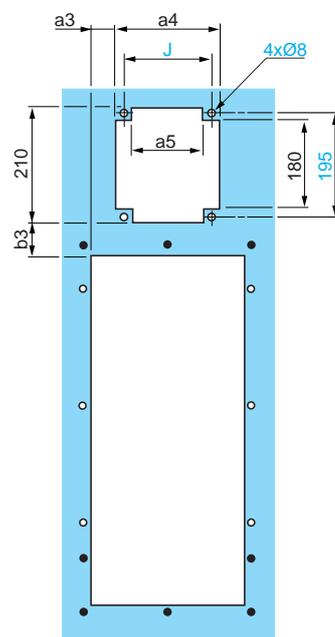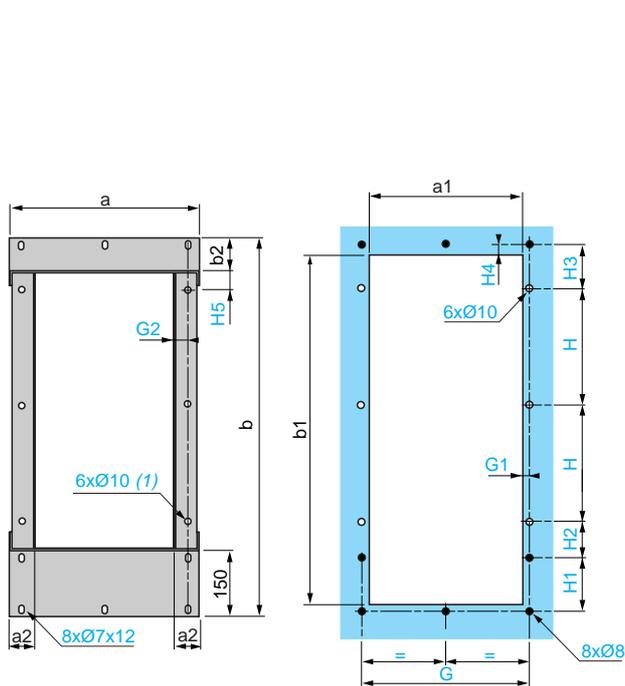
VW3	a	a1	a2	b	b1	b2	G	G1
A9 510	420	340	55	850	790	80	370	15
A9 511	440	360	45	885	845	66	396	18

VW3	G2	H	H1	H2	H3	H4	H5
A9 510	30	260	120	80	100	15	35
A9 511	23	310	70	91.5	83.5	10	27.5

VW3	a3	a4	a5	b3	J
A9 510	82.5	180	120	45	150
A9 511	87.5	190	130	35	160

(1) For fixing using an M8 screw min.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Accessories

Kits for flush-mounting inside dust and damp proof enclosure (continued)

VW3 A9 512, 513	VW3 A9 512	VW3 A9 513
Cut-outs and drill holes without DC choke	Cut-outs and drill holes with DC choke	Cut-outs and drill holes with DC choke
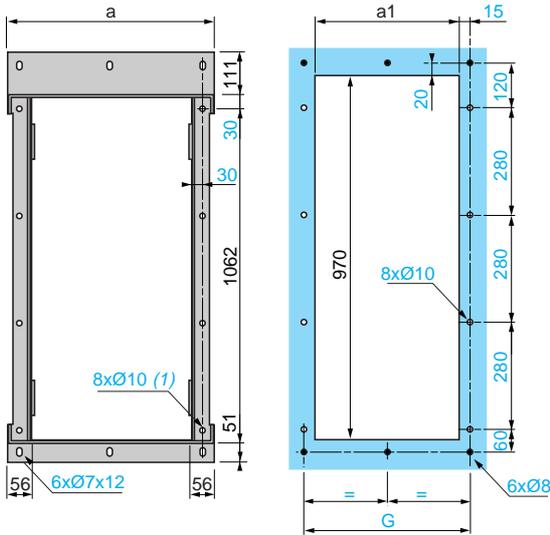
VW3	a	a1	G
A9 512	442	360	390
A9 513	542	460	490

(1) For fixing using an M8 screw min.
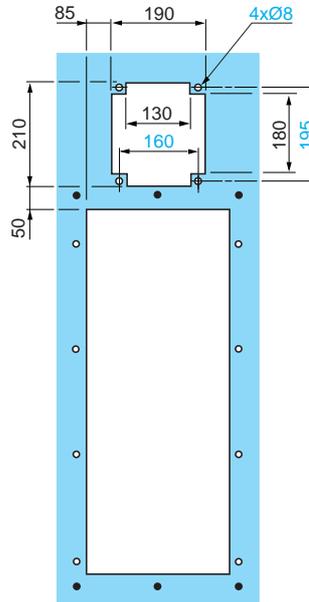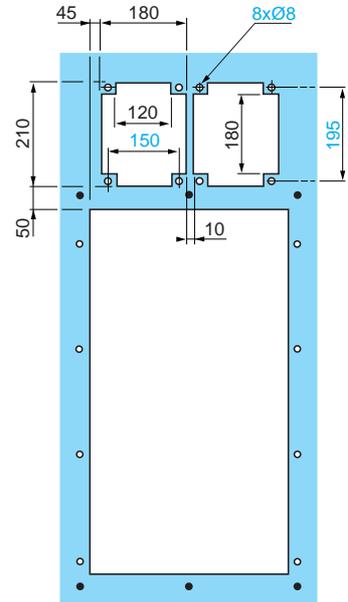
VW3 A9 514 (without braking unit), VW3 A9 515 (with braking unit)

	Cut-outs and drill holes without DC choke	Cut-outs and drill holes with DC choke
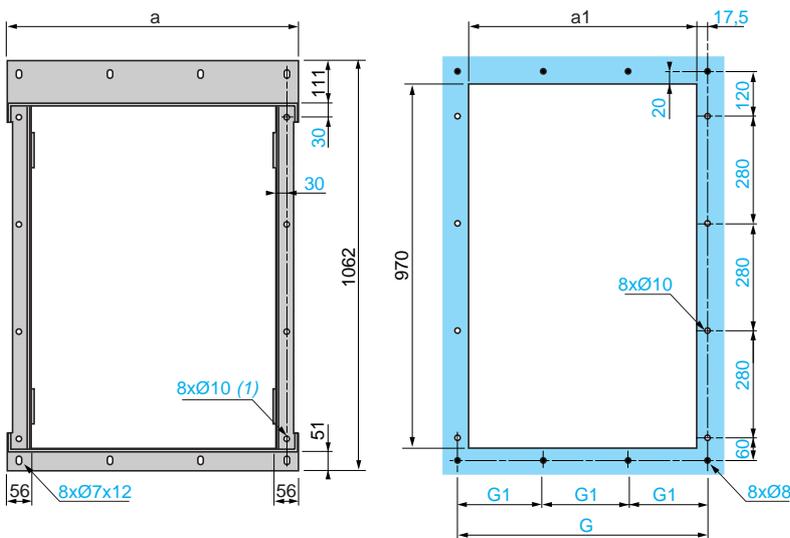
VW3	a	a1	G	G1
A9 514	697	610	645	215
A9 515	772	685	720	240

(1) For fixing using an M8 screw min.

VW3	a2
A9 514	90
A9 515	165

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Accessories
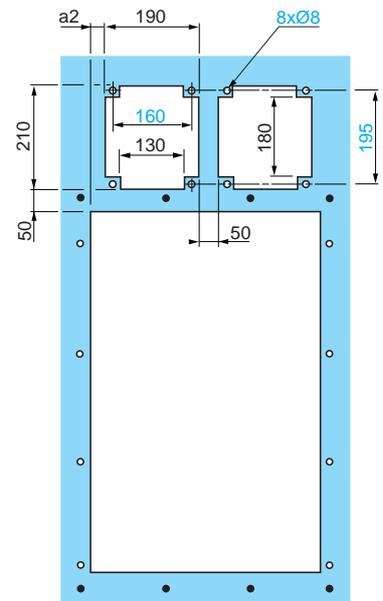
Kits for inside dust and damp proof enclosure
VW3 A9 801…803

Drill holes in the enclosure
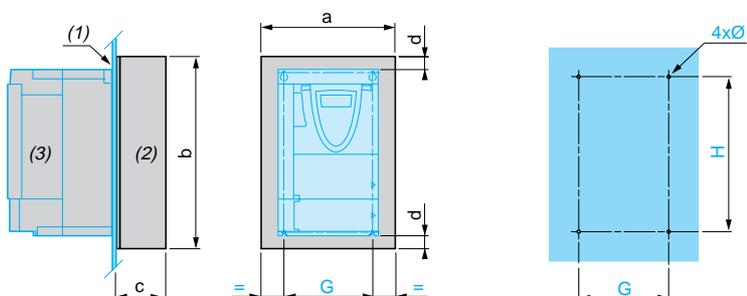
VW3	a	b	c	d	G	H	Ø
A9 801	150	226	80	2	113.5	220	M4
A9 802	175	450	80	95	138	249	M4
A9 803	300	700	83	203	158	283	M5

(1) Plate in the enclosure
(2) Kit VW3 A9 801, VW3 A9 802 or VW3 A9 803
(3) ATV 71P●●●N4Z drive

UL Type 1 conformity kit VW3 A9 2●●, IP 21 or IP 31 VW3 A9 1●● conformity kits

VW3 A9 201…205, 101…105

VW3	a	b
A9 201	132.6	31.4
A9 202	154.9	31.4
A9 203	177	31.4
A9 204	211.6	35.4
A9 205	231.6	38.9
A9 101	132.6	96.8
A9 102	154.9	104.1
A9 103	177	111.7
A9 104	211.6	128.9
A9 105	231.6	199.4

VW3 A9 206…208, 217, 106…108, 117

VW3	a	b
A9 206	240	59.9
A9 207	240	51.5
A9 217	320	48
A9 208	320	136
A9 106	240	75
A9 107	240	75
A9 117	320	75
A9 108	320	163

Telemecanique

Dimensions (continued)

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 71
Accessories

UL Type 1 conformity kit VW3 A9 2●●, IP 21 or IP 31 VW3 A9 1●● conformity kits (continued)

VW3 A9 209…214, VW3 A9 109…116	VW3 A9 209…213, VW3 A9 109…113, 115	VW3 A9 214, 114 (with braking unit)	VW3 A9 116
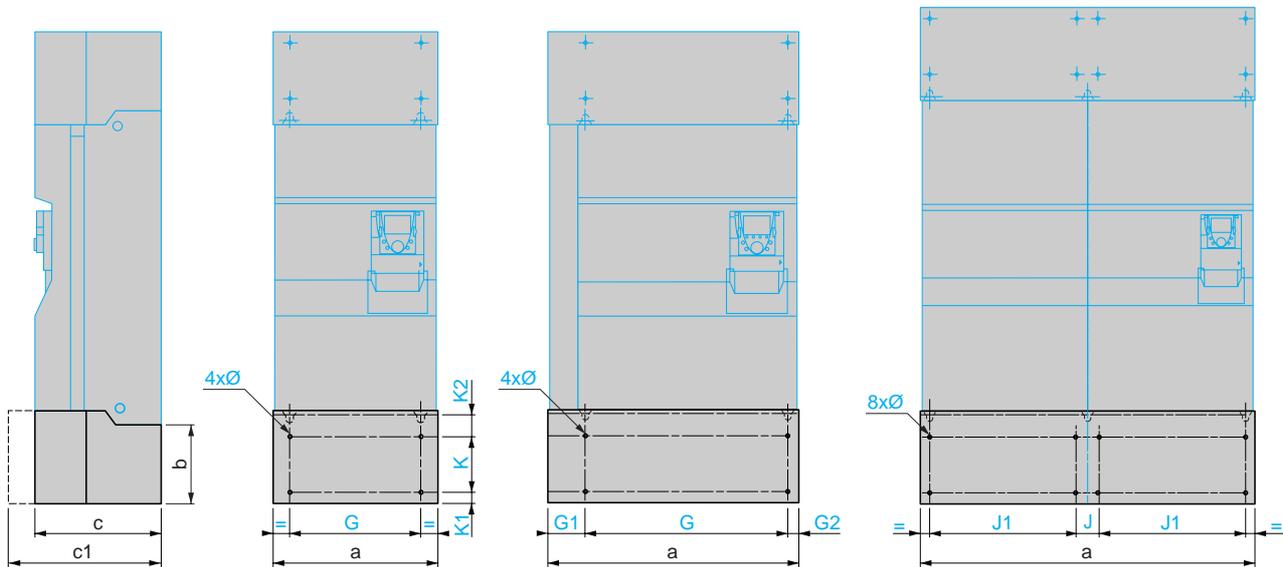
VW3	a	b	c	c1	G	G1	G2	K	K1	K2	Ø	J	J1
A9 209	334	220	377	–	250	–	–	95	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 210	374	300	377	–	298	–	–	172	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 211	345	315	377	–	285	–	–	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 212	445	375	377	–	350	–	–	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 213	600	375	377	–	540	–	–	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 214	670	375	377	–	540	102	27	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 109	334	220	377	–	250	–	–	95	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 110	374	300	377	–	298	–	–	172	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 111	345	315	377	–	285	–	–	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 112	445	375	377	–	350	–	–	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 113	600	375	377	–	540	–	–	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 114	670	375	377	–	540	102	27	250	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 115	895	475	–	477	835	–	–	350	65	75	11.5	–	–
A9 116	1125	475	–	477	–	–	–	350	65	75	11.5	70	495

Presentation:
pages 29 and 30

References:
pages 29 and 30

Functions:
pages 172 to 203

Ⓣ Telemecanique

119

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Dialogue, braking units, braking resistors

Remote graphic display terminal

IP 54 kit VW3 A1 102

Cut-outs and drill holes

35,2　12　6,5

162,1　144,3

115　104　=　=

5　100　114,5

4xØ3,5

IP 65 door VW3 A1 103

35,2　21,6　14,3

162,1　144,3
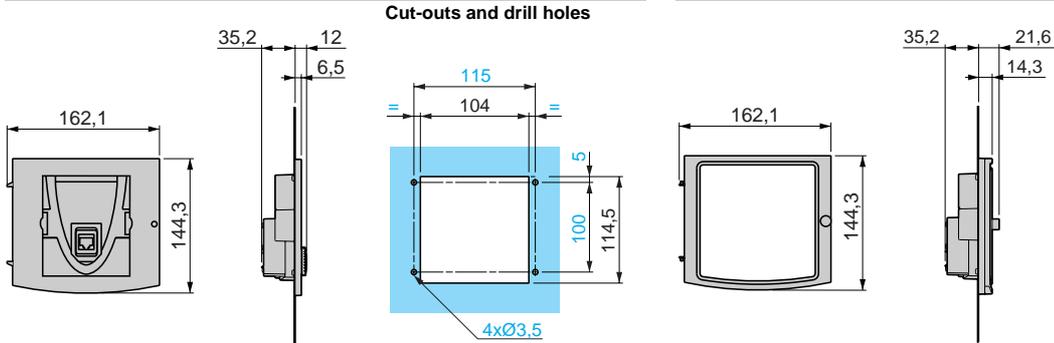
Braking units VW3 A7 101 *(1)*, **VW3 A7 102**

VW3 A7 102

c

a

G1　G　G1

H1

4xØ

b

H

H1
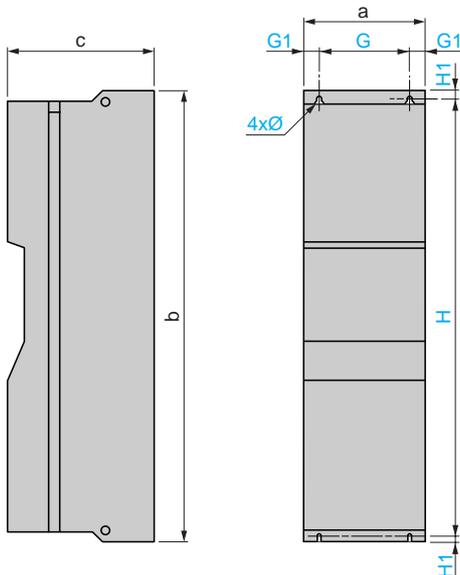
VW3	a	b	c	G	G1	H	H1	Ø
A7 101 *(1)*	75	950	377	–	–	–	–	–
A7 102	310	1150	377	265	22	1120	15	11.5

(1) Braking unit VW3 A7 101 can only be mounted on the left side of the drive, see page 109.

Braking resistors

VW3 A7 701…703

4xØ

a

b

H

c

G

Mounting recommendations

≥ 50　≥ 50　≥ 100　≥ 100

≥ 50　≥ 50　≥ 100　≥ 100
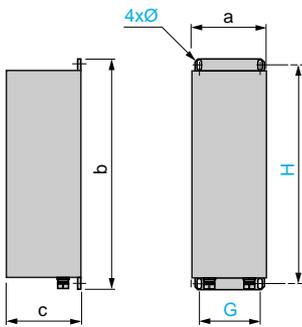
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	Ø
A7 701	95	293	95	70	275	6 x 12
A7 702	95	293	95	70	375	6 x 12
A7 703	140	393	120	120	375	6 x 12

Telemecanique
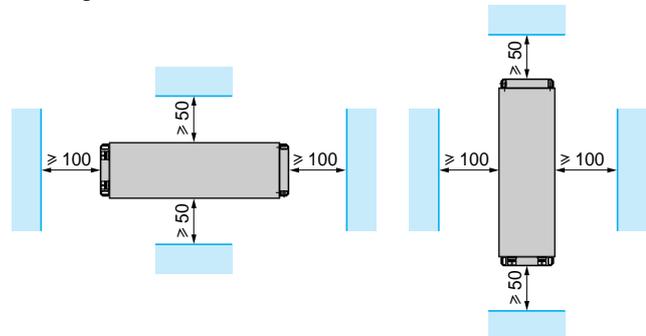
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Braking resistors

Braking resistors (continued)

VW3 A7 704…709

Mounting recommendations

4xØ9 240 484 380 301 200 ≥ 200 ≥ 200 ≥ 200
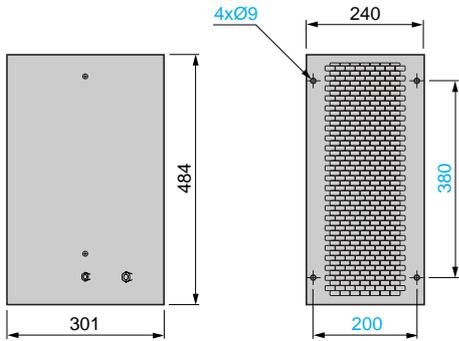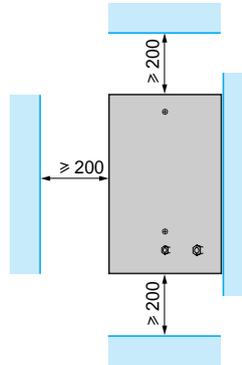
VW3 A7 710…712, 715…718 *(1)*

Mounting recommendations

a1 c1 b H a G c 4xØ13 ≥ 500 ≥ 500 ≥ 500
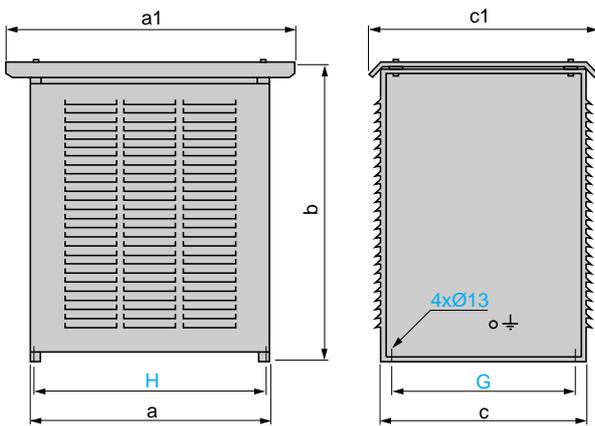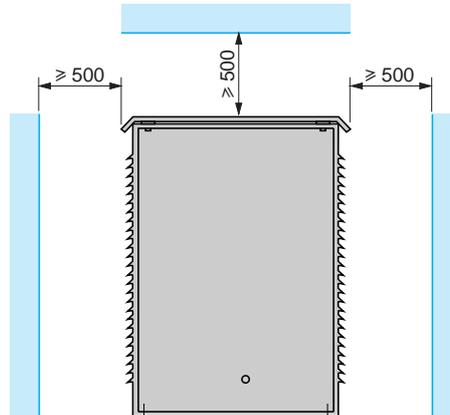
VW3	a	a1	b	c	c1	G	H
A7 710	860	1040	690	480	560	400	832
A7 711	960	1140	1150	380	460	300	932
A7 712	860	1040	1150	540	620	460	832
A7 715	960	1140	1150	540	620	460	932
A7 716	960	1140	1150	740	820	660	932
A7 717 *(1)*	960	1140	1150	540	620	460	932
A7 718 *(1)*	960	1140	1150	740	820	660	932

(1) The dimension is given for 1 component. References VW3 A7 717, 718 consist of two components; all components must be taken into account to determine the overall dimensions. A space of 300 mm must be left between each component.

VW3 A7 713, 714

Mounting recommendations

a1 c1 b H a G c 4xØ13 ≥ 500 ≥ 500 ≥ 500
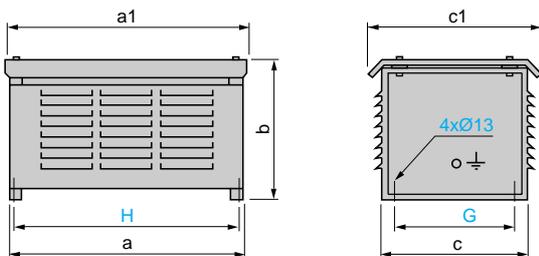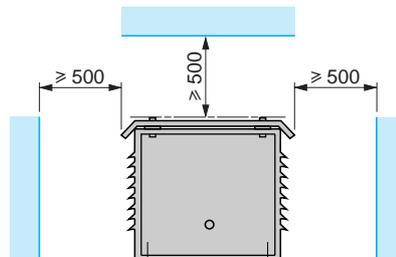
VW3	a	a1	b	c	c1	G	H
A7 713	760	790	440	480	540	400	732
A7 714	960	990	440	480	540	400	932

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Hoist resistors

Hoist resistors
VW3 A7 801…804, 807…809

Mounting recommendations
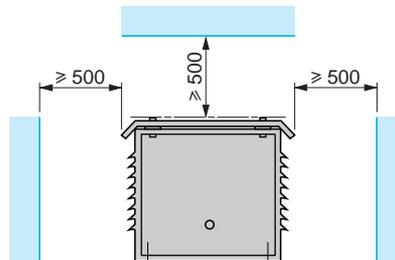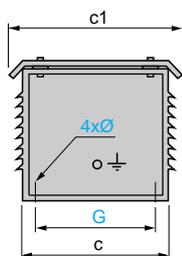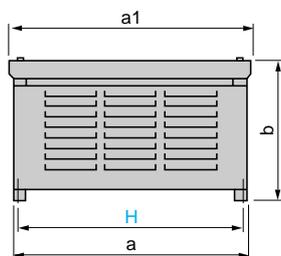
VW3	a	a1	b	c	c1	G	H	Ø
A7 801	490	452	203.5	153	202	95	470	10
A7 802	420	450	440	480	540	400	392	13
A7 803	580	610	440	480	540	400	552	13
A7 804	960	990	440	480	540	400	932	13
A7 807	860	890	440	480	540	400	832	13
A7 808	860	890	690	480	540	400	832	13
A7 809	860	890	690	480	450	400	832	13

VW3 A7 805, 806, 810…817 *(1)*

Mounting recommendations
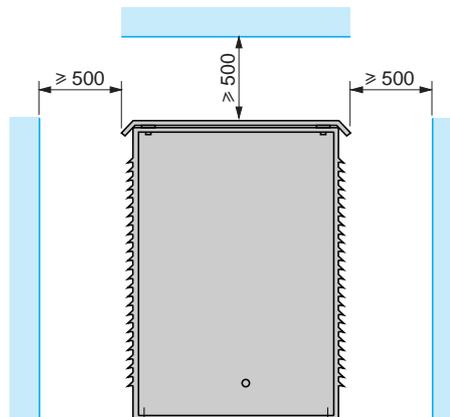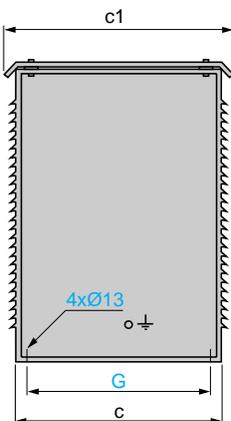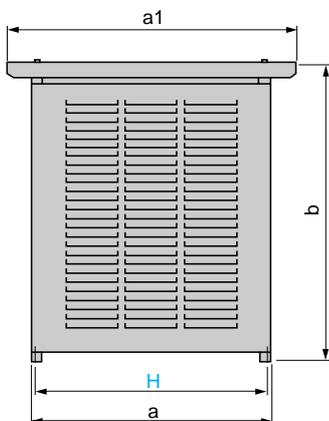
VW3	a	a1	b	c	c1	G	H
A7 805	860	1040	1150	540	620	460	832
A7 806	860	1040	1150	740	820	660	832
A7 810	860	1040	1150	540	620	460	832
A7 811	960	1140	1150	540	620	460	932
A7 812	960	1140	1150	740	820	660	932
A7 813 *(1)*	960	1140	1150	540	620	460	932
A7 814 *(1)*	960	1140	1150	540	620	460	932
A7 815 *(1)*	960	1140	1150	740	820	660	932
A7 816 *(1)*	960	1140	1150	740	820	660	932
A7 817 *(1)*	960	1140	1700	740	820	660	932

(1) The dimension is given for 1 component. References VW3 A7 813…815 consist of 2 components and references VW3 A7 816 and 817 consist of 3 components; all components must be taken into account to determine the overall dimensions. A space of 300 mm must be left between each component.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Network braking units

Network braking units

VW3 A7 201…205, 231, 232

Mounting recommendations
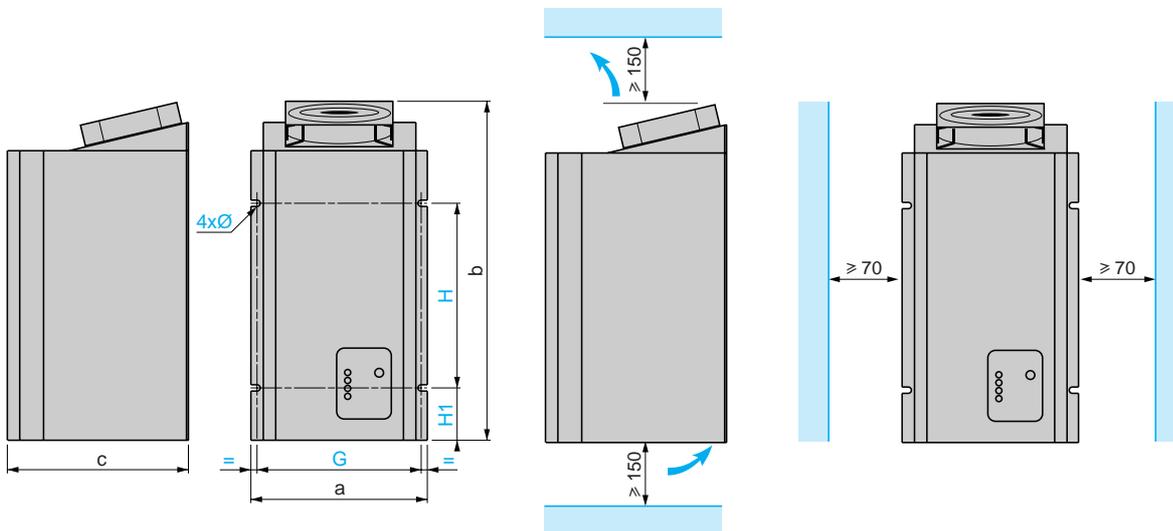
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	H1	Ø
A7 201, 202	270	500	295	260	260	80	7
A7 203…205, A7 231…232	270	580	295	260	340	80	7

VW3 A7 206…208, 233…237

Mounting recommendations
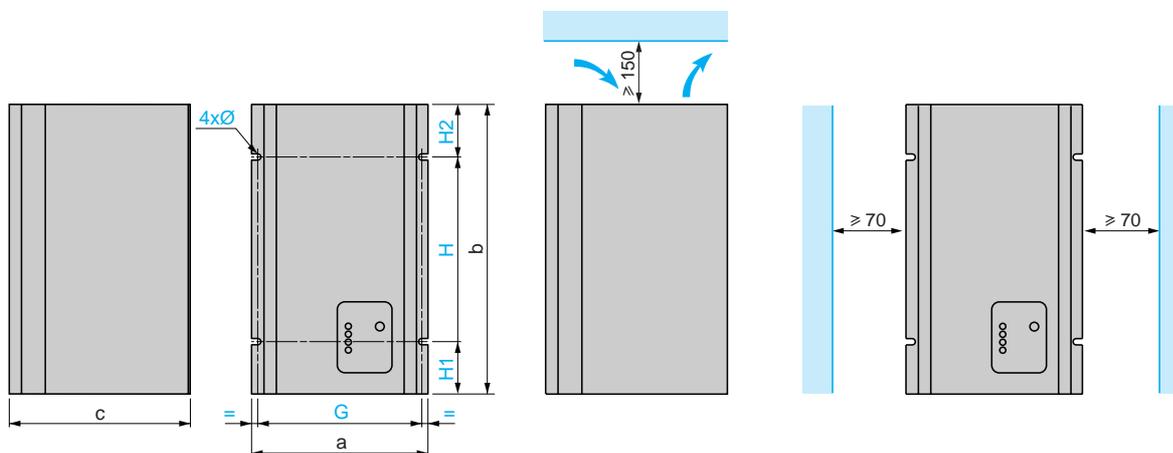
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	H1	H2	Ø
A7 206…208	245	700	272	260	440	80	180	7
A7 233…237	272	700	295	260	440	80	180	7

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Network braking units

Network braking units (continued)

VW3 A7 209, 210, 238, 239

Mounting recommendations
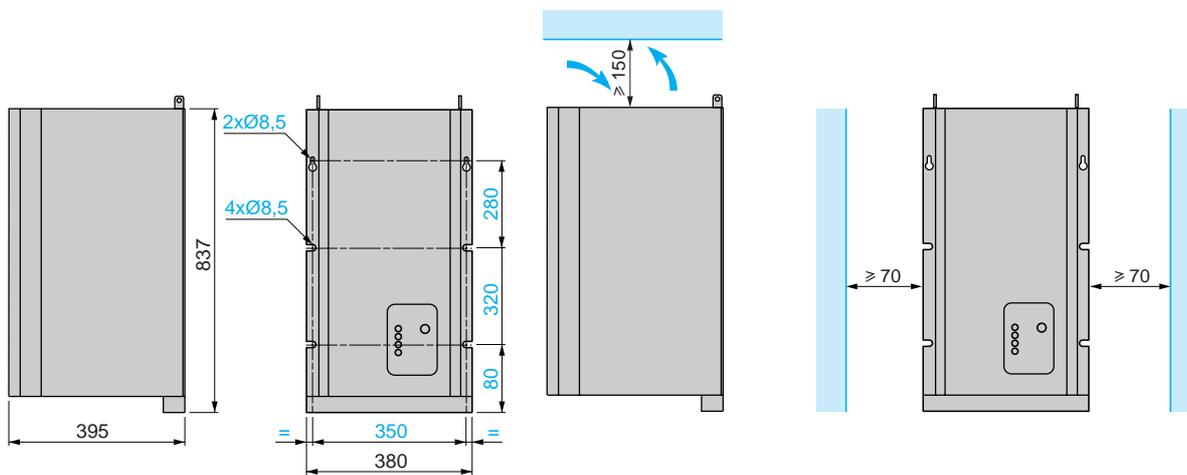
VW3 A7 211, 212, 240, 241

Mounting recommendations
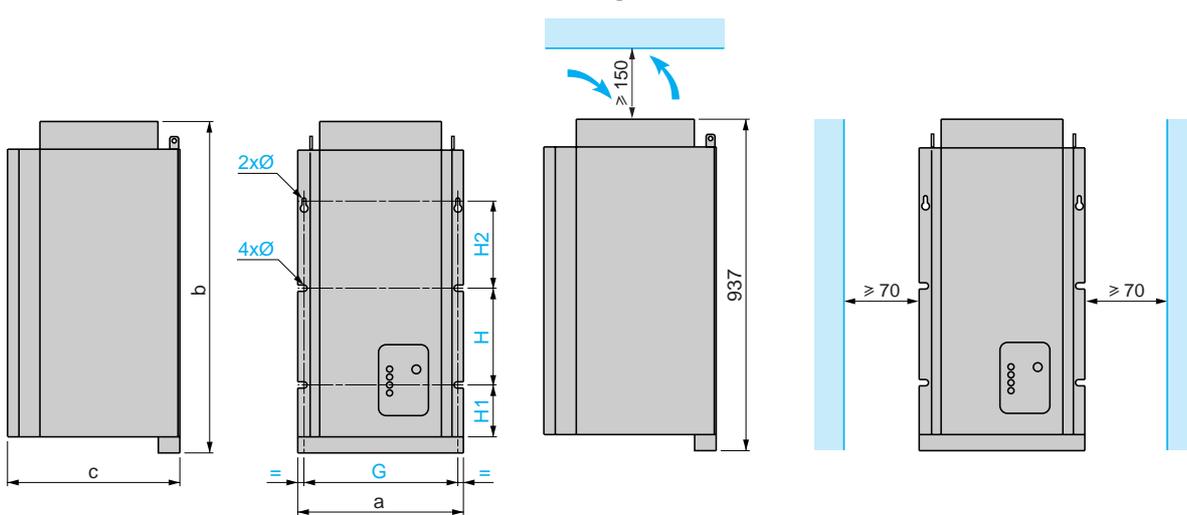
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	H1	H2	Ø
A7 211, 240	380	937	395	350	320	80	280	8.5
A7 212, 241	380	1037	395	350	320	80	280	8.5

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
DC chokes, line chokes

DC chokes

VW3 A4 501…510

4xØ
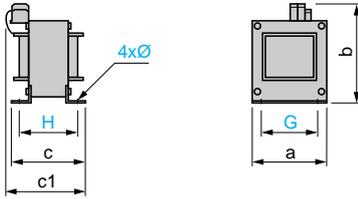
VW3	a	b	c	c1	G	H	Ø
A4 501	60	103	60	95	50	51	3.5
A4 502	60	103	77	118	50	68	3.5
A4 503	96	134	80	115	80	65	5.5
A4 504	96	134	79	115	80	64	5.5
A4 505	96	134	85	120	80	70	5.5
A4 506	96	134	89	120	80	74	5.5
A4 507	96	134	99	130	80	84	5.5
A4 508	108	142	112	145	90	97	5.5
A4 509	96	134	89	120	80	74	5.5
A4 510	126	171	120	170	105	103	7

VW3 A4 511, 512
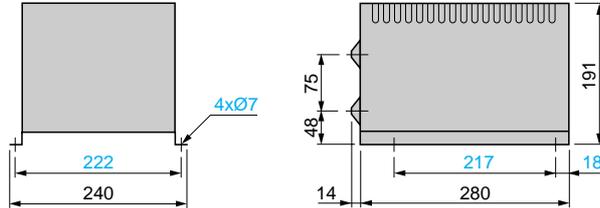
Line chokes

VW3 A58501, A58502

8xØ6x12
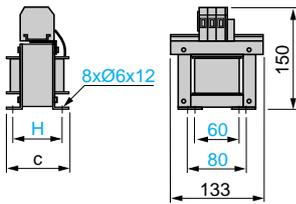
VW3	c	H
A58501	95	65
A58502	105	77

VW3 A4 551…555

8xØ
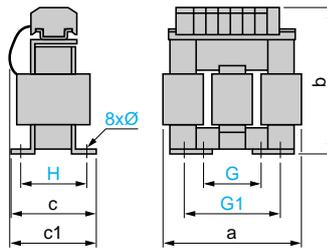
VW3	a	b	c	c1	G	G1	H	Ø
A4 551	100	135	55	60	40	60	42	6 x 9
A4 552, A4 553	130	155	85	90	60	80.5	62	6 x 12
A4 554	155	170	115	135	75	107	90	6 x 12
A4 555	180	210	125	165	85	122	105	6 x 12

VW3 A4 556

8xØ
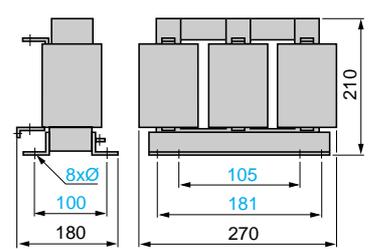
VW3	Ø
A4 556	11 x 22

VW3 A4 557

8xØ11x22

VW3 A4 558…565, 569

(1)

Ø

4xØ2

4xØ1
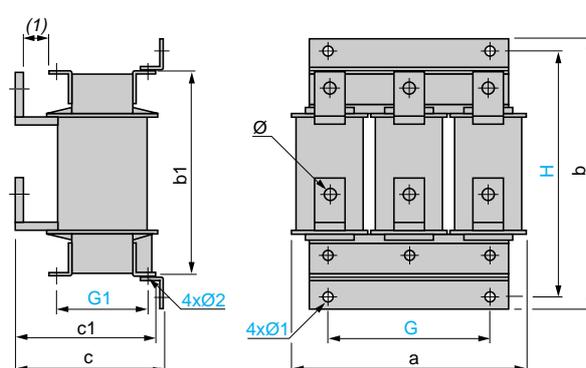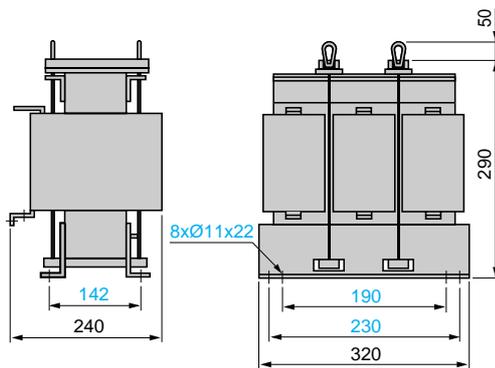
VW3	a	b	b1	c	c1	G	G1	H	Ø	Ø1	Ø2
A4 558	280	305	240	210	200	200	125	275	9	9	9
A4 559	280	330	260	210	200	200	125	300	11	9	9
A4 560, 561	320	380	300	210	200	225	150	350	11	9	9
A4 562…564	320	380	300	250	230	225	150	350	13	11	11
A4 565	385	440	340	275	250	300	125	400	2 x Ø13	13.5	13.5
A4 569	320	380	300	250	230	225	150	350	13	11	11

(1) 25 mm minimum.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Passive filters

Passive filters VW3 A4 601…609, 621…627, 641…648, 661…666
Mounting recommendations *(1)*

VW3 A4 601…604, 621, 622, 641…644, 661…663
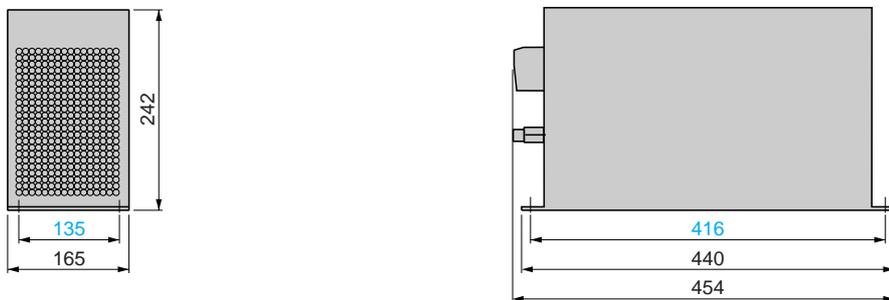
VW3 A4 605…609, 623…627, 645…648, 664…666
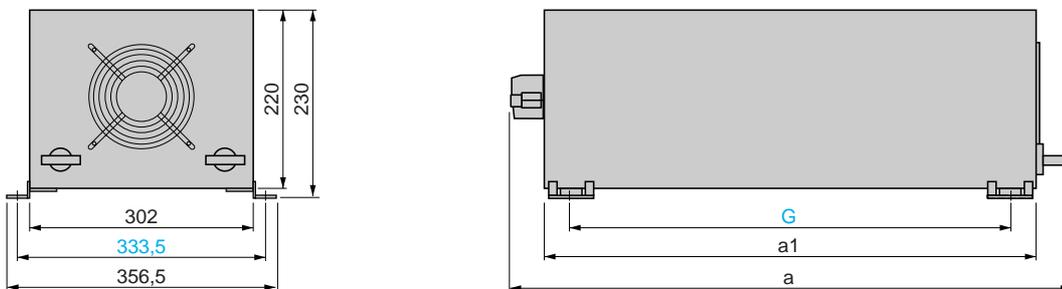
VW3	a	a1	G
A4 605, 606, 623…625, 645, 646, 664, 665	698	600	532.5
A4 607…609, 626, 627, 647, 648, 666	938	840	772.5

(1) Vertical mounting only

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71

Passive filters

Passive filters VW3 A4 610…613, 619, 628…633, 639, 649…651, 656, 657, 667…671, 676, 677

Mounting recommendations *(1)*
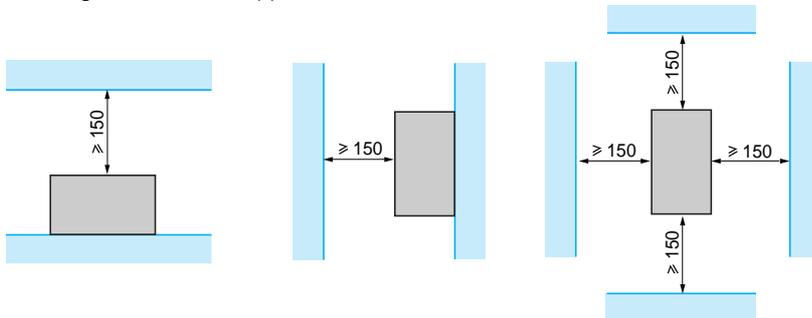
VW3 A4 610…613, 619, 628…632, 639, 649…651, 656, 657, 667…670, 676, 677
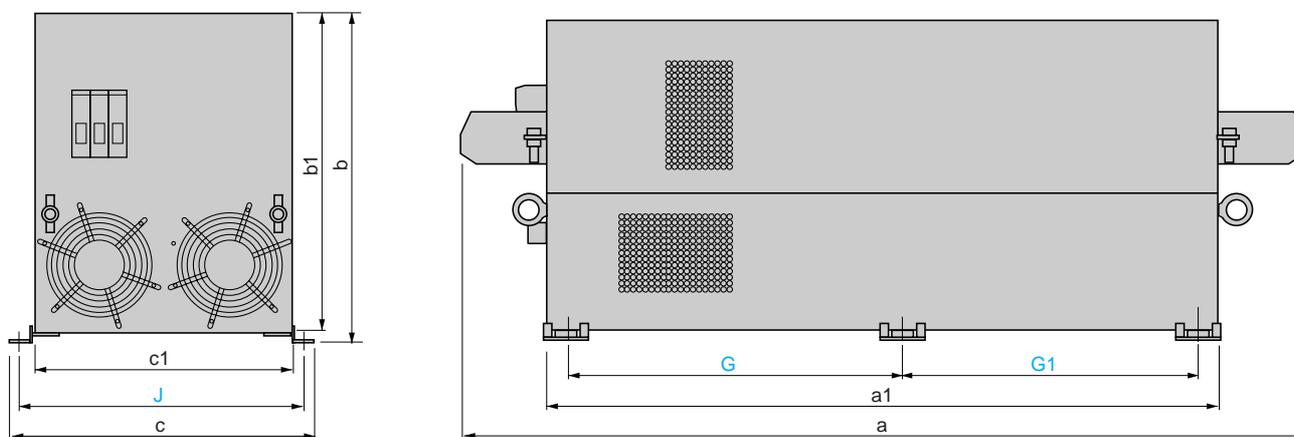
VW3	a	a1	b	b1	c	c1	G	G1	J
A4 610, 611, 628, 629, 649, 667, 668	1060	830	400	390	393	345	395	377	370
A4 612, 619, 630, 631, 650, 656, 657, 669	1160	900	419	409	454	406	430	412	430
A4 613, 632, 639, 651, 670, 676, 677	1330	1070	419	409	454	406	515	497	430

VW3 A4 633, 671
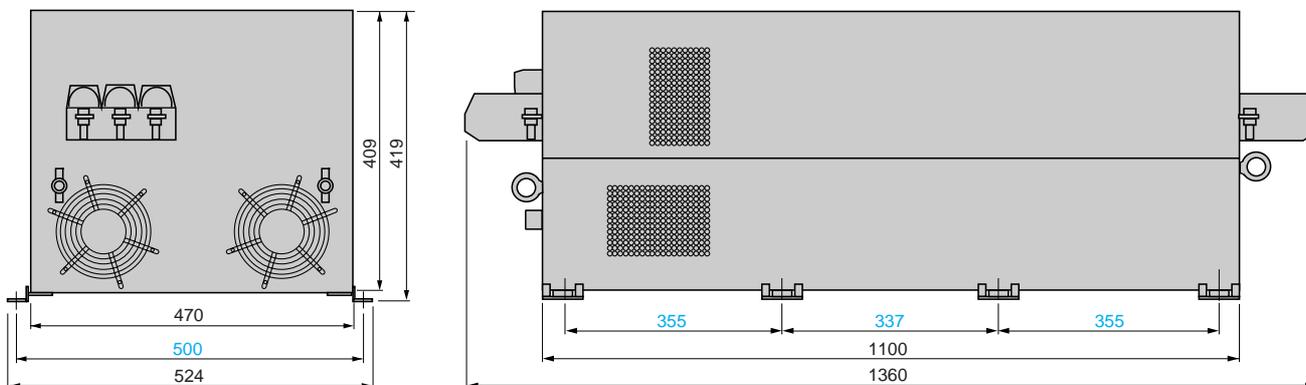
(1) Horizontal or vertical mounting.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Additional EMC input filters

Additional EMC input filters

VW3 A4 401…404

VW3 A4 405, 409
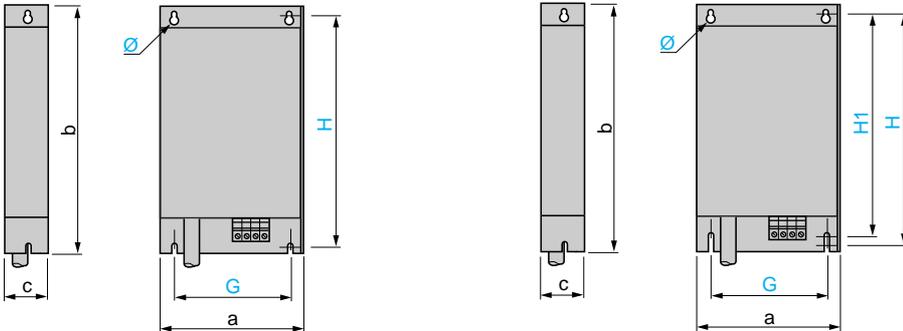
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	H1	Ø
A4 401	130	290	40	105	275	–	4.5
A4 402	155	324	50	130	309	–	4.5
A4 403	175	370	60	150	355	–	6.5
A4 404	210	380	60	190	365	–	6.5
A4 405	230	498.5	62	190	479.5	460	6.5
A4 409	230	498.5	62	190	479.5	460	6.5

VW3 A4 406…408
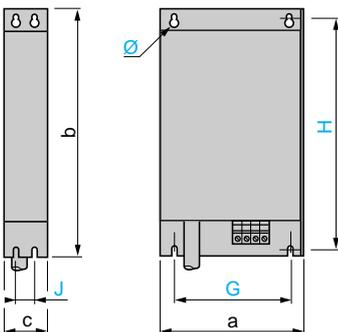
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	J	Ø
A4 406	240	522	79	200	502.5	40	9
A4 407	240	650	79	200	631	40	9
A4 408	320	750	119	280	725	80	9

Mounting the filter under the drive

Front view

Mounting the filter next to the drive

Front view
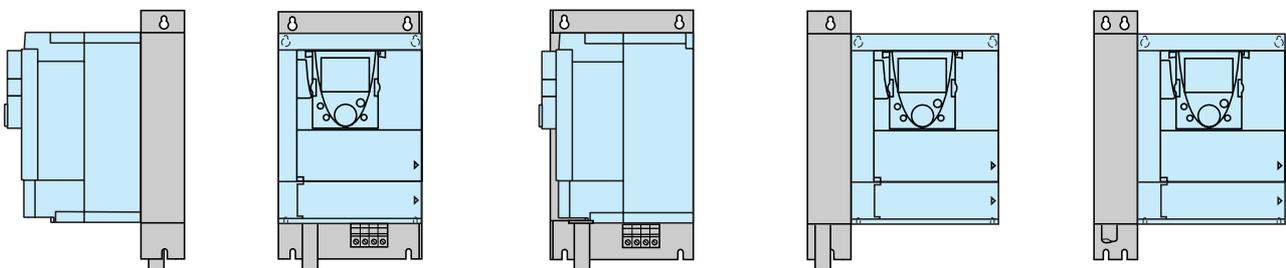
Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Additional EMC input filters

Additional EMC input filters (continued)

VW3 A4 410…413
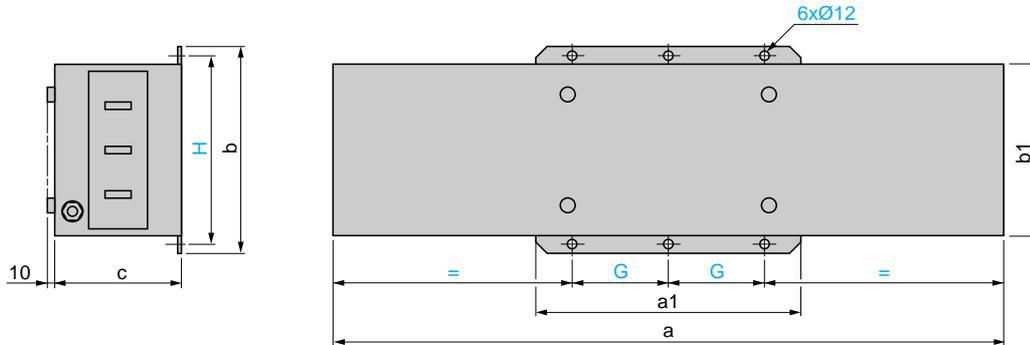
VW3	a	a1	b	b1	c	G	H
A4 410	800	302	261	219	139	120	235
A4 411	800	302	261	219	139	120	235
A4 412	900	352	281	239	174	145	255
A4 413	1000	401	301	259	164	170	275

IP 30 protection kits for filters VW3 A4 410…413
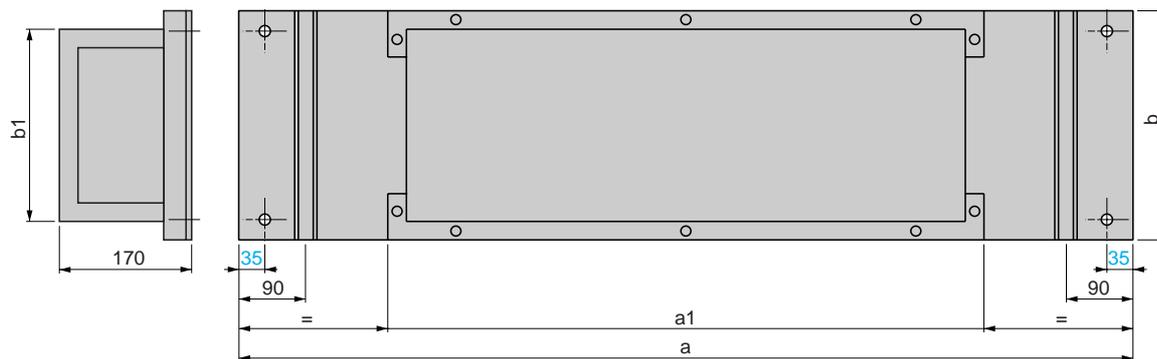
VW3	a	a1	b	b1
A9 601	1200	800	310	270
A9 602	1400	1000	350	310

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Motor chokes

Motor chokes (1)

VW3 A5 101, 102

Mounting recommendations (2)
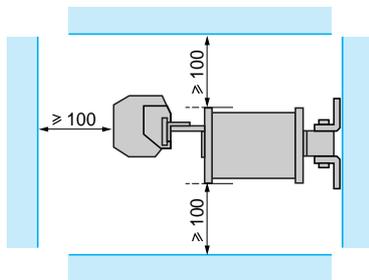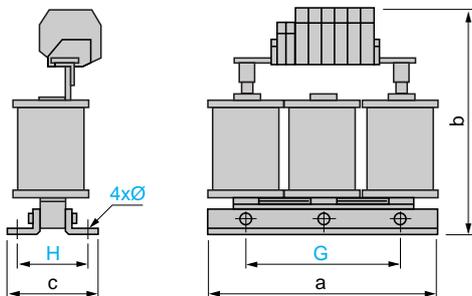
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	Ø
A5 101	190	210	90	170	45	8 x 12
A5 102	190	235	120	170	48	8 x 12

VW3 A5 103

Mounting recommendations (2)
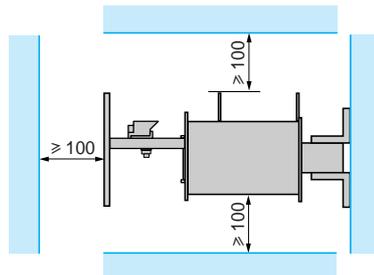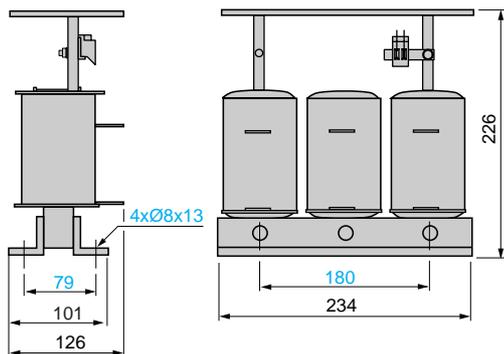
(1) It is essential that the motor chokes are mounted on a metal support (grille, frame, etc.)
(2) Because of the magnetic field and/or the heat dissipation, it is essential to follow the mounting recommendations provided.

Ⓣ Telemecanique

Dimensions (continued)

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 7
Motor chokes

Motor chokes (continued) *(1)*

VW3 A5 104, 105 *(2)*
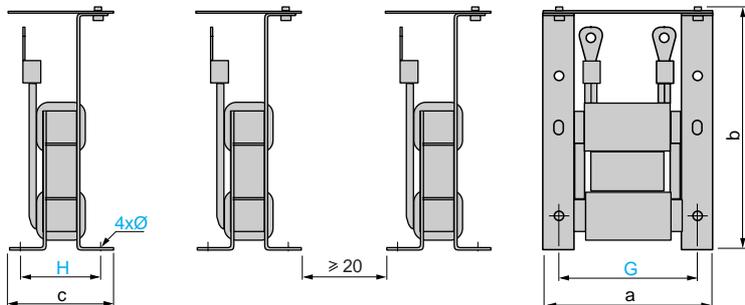
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	Ø
A5 104	170	250	100	150	75	9
A5 105	210	250	110	175	75	9 x 13

Mounting recommendations *(3)*
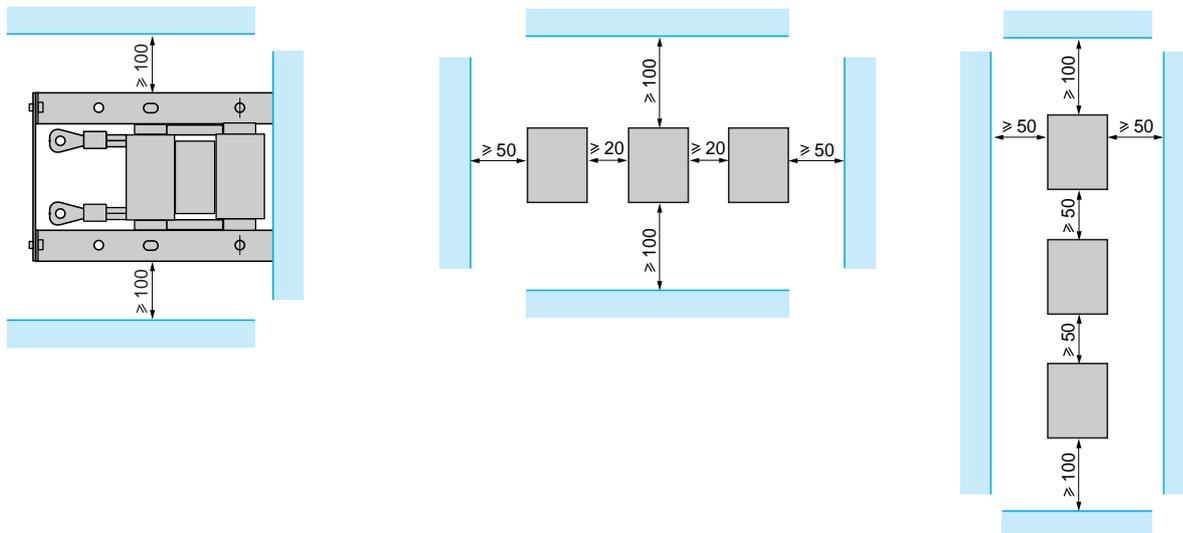
(1) It is essential that the motor chokes are mounted on a metal support (grille, frame, etc.)
(2) References VW3 A5 104 and 105 consist of 3 components.
(3) Because of the magnetic field and/or the heat dissipation, it is essential to follow the mounting recommendations provided.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Motor chokes

Motor chokes (continued) *(1)*

VW3 A5 106…108 *(2)*

4xØ

≥ 20
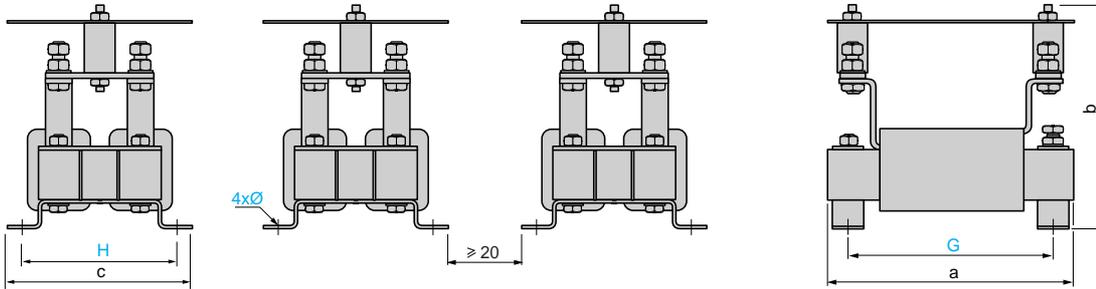
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	Ø
A5 106	245	250	200	225	175	9
A5 107	320	250	220	275	200	9
A5 108	370	250	230	325	200	9

Mounting recommendations *(3)*
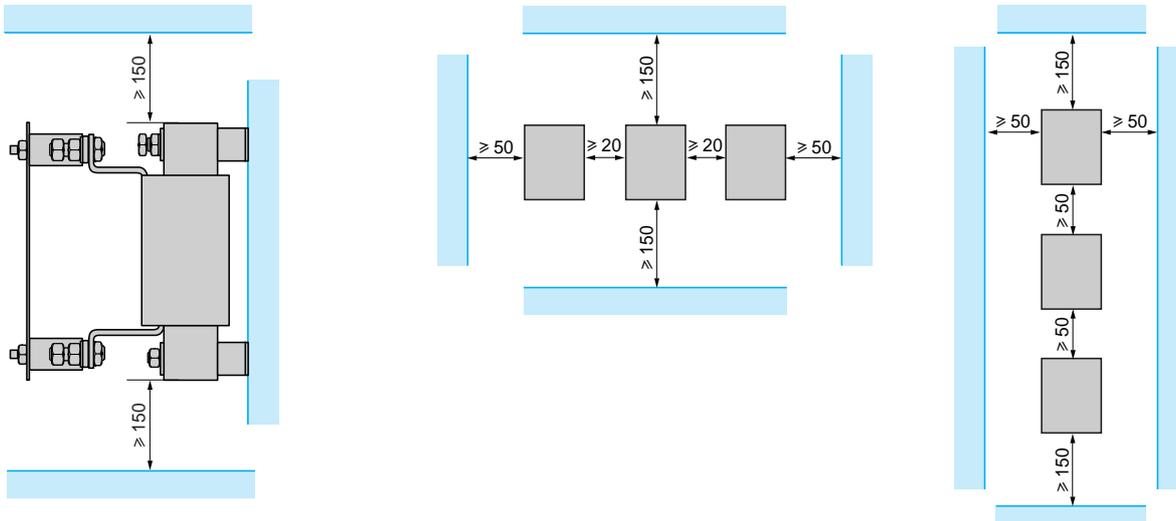
(1) It is essential that the motor chokes are mounted on a metal support (grille, frame, etc.)
(2) References VW3 A5 106…108 consist of 3 components.
(3) Because of the magnetic field and/or the heat dissipation, it is essential to follow the mounting recommendations provided.

IP 20 protection kits for chokes VW3 A5 104…108

344

4xØ
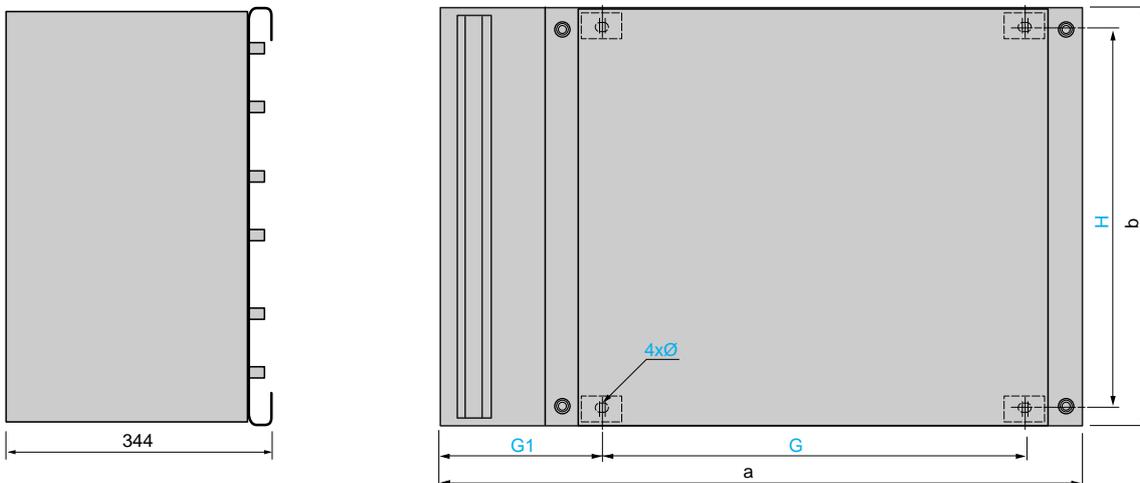
VW3	a	b	G	G1	H	Ø
A9 612	780	580	530	190	526	10 x 15
A9 613	1180	780	800	200	726	10 x 15

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Sinus filters

Sinus filters (1)

VW3 A5 201…206

Mounting recommendations
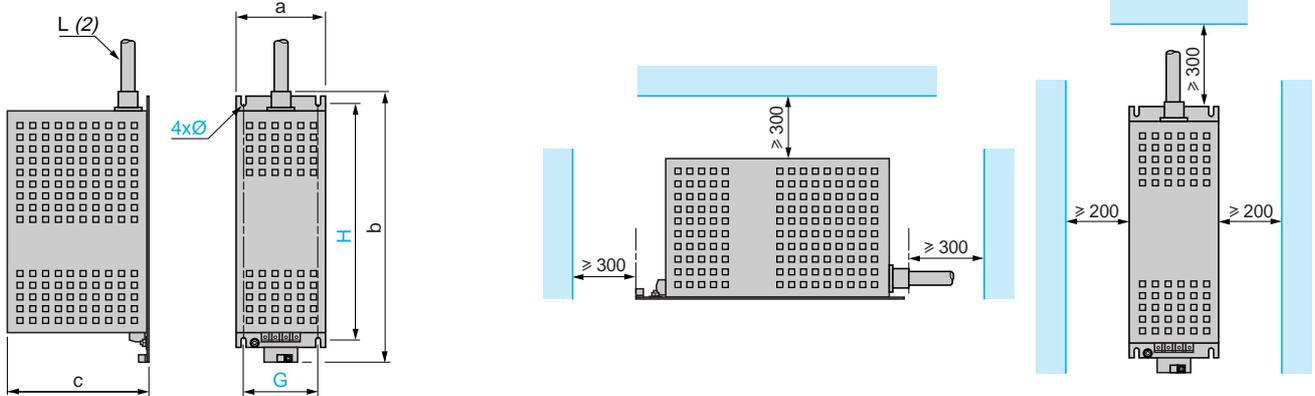
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	Ø	L (2)
A5 201	120	335	160	100	280	6.6	700
A5 202	120	405	190	100	350	6.6	900
A5 203	150	470	240	120	380	6.6	900
A5 204	210	650	280	160	530	8.6	1500
A5 205	250	780	360	200	650	11	1600
A5 206	310	1060	375	220	880	11	2700

VW3 A5 207

Mounting recommendations
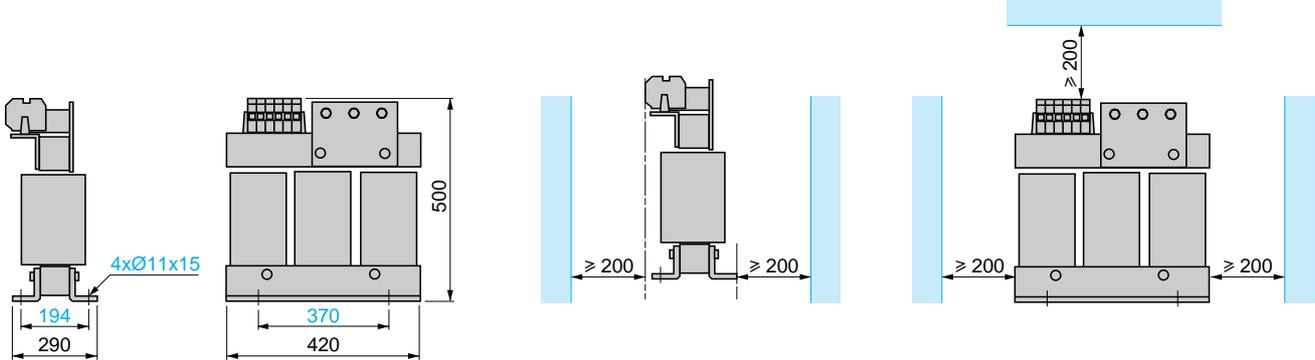
VW3 A5 208…211

Mounting recommendations
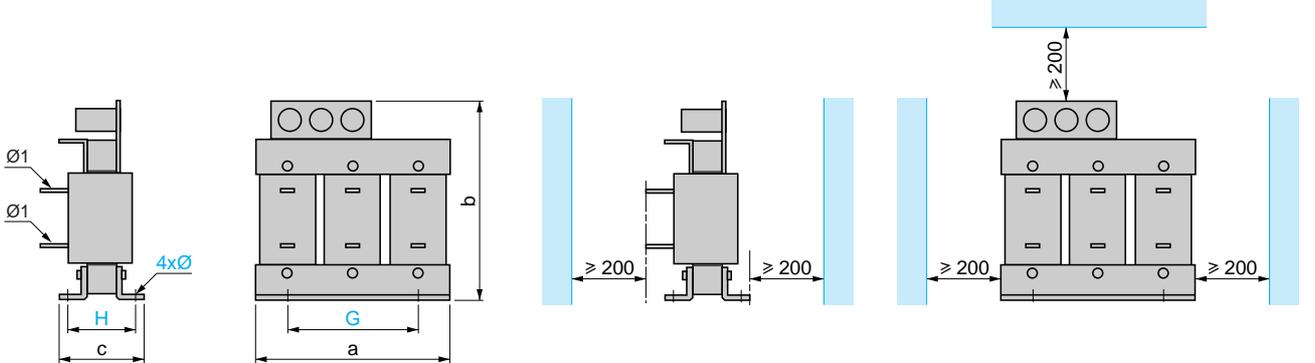
VW3	a	b	c	G	H	Ø	Ø1
A5 208	420	500	345	370	231	11 x 15	11
A5 209	480	600	340	430	238	13 x 18	11
A5 210	480	710	370	430	258	13 x 18	14
A5 211	620	930	500	525	352	13 x 22	4 x Ø11

(1) Sinus filters emit considerable heat and must not be placed underneath the drive.
(2) Length of the cable integrated in the sinus filter.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Safety requirements

"Power Removal" safety function

The Altivar 71 drive integrates the "Power Removal" safety function which prohibits unintended equipment operation. The motor no longer produces torque.

This safety function:
■ complies with the standard for safety of machinery N 954-1, category 3
■ complies with the standard for functional safety IEC/EN 61508, SIL2 capability (safety control-signalling applied to processes and systems)
The SIL (Safety Integrity Level) capability depends on the connection diagram for the drive and for the safety function. Failure to observe the setup recommendations could inhibit the SIL capability of the "Power Removal" safety function.
■ complies with draft product standard IEC/EN 61800-5-2 for both stop functions:
□ Safe Torque Off ("STO"): response time $\leq$ 100 ms
□ Safe Stop 1 ("SS1")

The "Power Removal" safety function has a redundant electronic architecture *(1)* which is monitored continuously by a diagnostics function.

This level SIL2 and category 3 safety function is certified as conforming to these standards by the INERIS certification body under a program of voluntary certification.

Categories relating to safety according to EN 954-1

Categories	Basic safety principle	Control system requirements	Behaviour in the event of a fault
B	Selection of components that conform to relevant standards	Control in accordance with good engineering practice	Possible loss of safety function
1	Selection of components and safety principles	Use of tried and tested components and proven safety principles	Possible loss of safety function, but with a lower probability than in **B**
2	Selection of components and safety principles	Cycklic testing. The test intervals must be appropriate to both the machine and its application	Fault detected at each test
3	Structure of the safety circuits	A single fault must not result in loss of the safety function. The fault must be detected if this is reasonably possible	Safety function ensured, except in the event of an accumulation of faults
4	Structure of the safety circuits	A single fault must not result in loss of the safety function. The fault must be detected when or before the safety function is next invoked. An accumulation of faults must not result in loss of the safety function.	Safety function always ensured

The machinery manufacturer is responsible for selecting the safety category.
The category depends of the level of risk factors given in standard EN 954-1.

Safety Integrity Levels (SIL) according to standard IEC/EN 61508

SIL1 according to standard IEC/EN 61508 is comparable with category 1 according to EN 954-1 (SIL1: mean probability of undetected hazardous failure per hour between 10^{-5} and 10^{-6}).
SIL2 according to standard IEC/EN 61508 is comparable with category 3 according to EN 954-1 (SIL2: mean probability of undetected failure per hour between 10^{-6} and 10^{-7}).

(1) Redundant: consists of mitigating the effects of failure of one component by means of the correct operation of another, assuming that faults do not occur simultaneously on both.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

134

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Safety requirements

"Power Removal" safety function considerations

The "Power Removal" safety function cannot be considered as a means of electrical disconnection of the motor (no electrical isolation); if necessary, a Vario switch disconnector must be used.

The "Power Removal" safety function is not designed to overcome any malfunction in the drive process control or application functions.

The output signals available on the drive must not be considered as safety signals (e.g. "Power Removal" active); these are Preventa-type safety module outputs which must be integrated into a safety control-signalling circuit.

The schemes on the following pages take into account conformity with standard IEC/EN 60204-1 which defines 3 categories of stop:

■ Category 0: stopping by immediate removal of the power from the actuators (e.g. uncontrolled stop)

■ Category 1: controlled stop maintaining the power on the actuators until the machine stops, then removal of the power when the actuators stop when the machine stops

■ Category 2: controlled stop maintaining the power on the actuators

Connection diagrams and applications

Conformity with category 1 of standard EN 954-1 and level SIL1 according to standard IEC/EN 61508

Use of the connection diagrams on pages 136 and 137 which use a line contactor or a Vario switch disconnector between the drive and the motor. In this case, the "Power Removal" safety function is not used and the motor stops in accordance with category 0 of standard IEC/EN 60204-1.

Conformity with category 3 of standard EN 954-1 and level SIL2 according to standard IEC/EN 61508

The connection diagrams use the "Power Removal" safety function of the Altivar 71 drive combined with a Preventa safety module to monitor the emergency stop circuits.

Machines with short freewheel stopping times (low inertia or high resistive torque, see page 138).

When the activation command is given on the PWR input with the controlled motor, the motor power supply is immediately switched off and the motor stops according to category 0 of standard IEC/EN 60204-1.

Restarting is not permitted even when the activation command is given after the motor has come to a complete stop ("STO").

This safe stop is maintained while the PWR input remains activated.

This diagram must also be used for hoisting applications.

On a "Power Removal" command, the drive requires the brake to be engaged, but a Preventa safety module contact must be inserted in series in the brake control circuit to engage it safely when a request is made to activate the "Power Removal" safety function.

Machines with long freewheel stopping times (high inertia or low resistive torque, see page 139).

When the activation command is given, deceleration of the motor controlled by the drive is first requested, then, following a time delay controlled by a Preventa-type fault relay which corresponds to the deceleration time, the "Power Removal" safety function is activated by the PWR input. The motor stops according to category 1 of standard IEC/EN 60204-1 ("SS1").

Periodic test

The "Power Removal" safety input must be activated at least once a year for preventive maintenance purposes. The drive must be switched off before preventive maintenance takes place, and then powered up again. If the power supply to the motor is not switched off during testing, safety integrity is no longer assured for the "Power Removal" safety function. The drive must therefore be replaced to ensure the operational safety of the machine or of the system process.

Variable speed drives
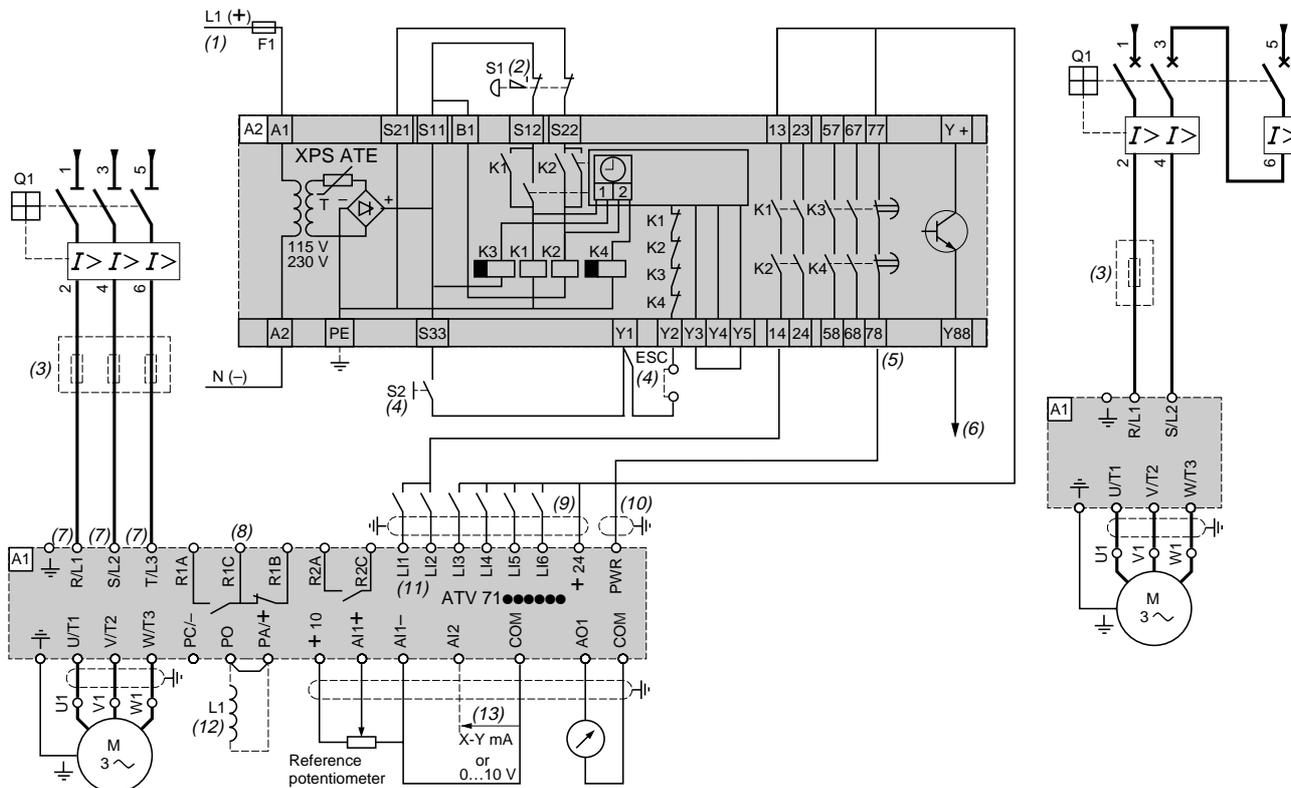# for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Schemes conforming to standards EN 954-1 category 1, IEC/EN 61508 SIL1 capability, in stopping category 0 according to IEC/EN 60204-1

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71●●●●N4, ATV 71P●●●N4Z

3-phase power supply with upstream breaking via contactor

ATV 71H075M3…HU75M3
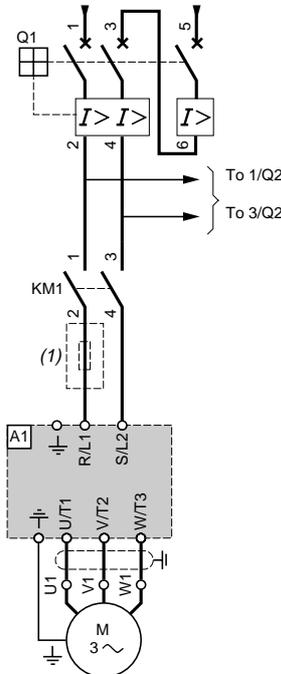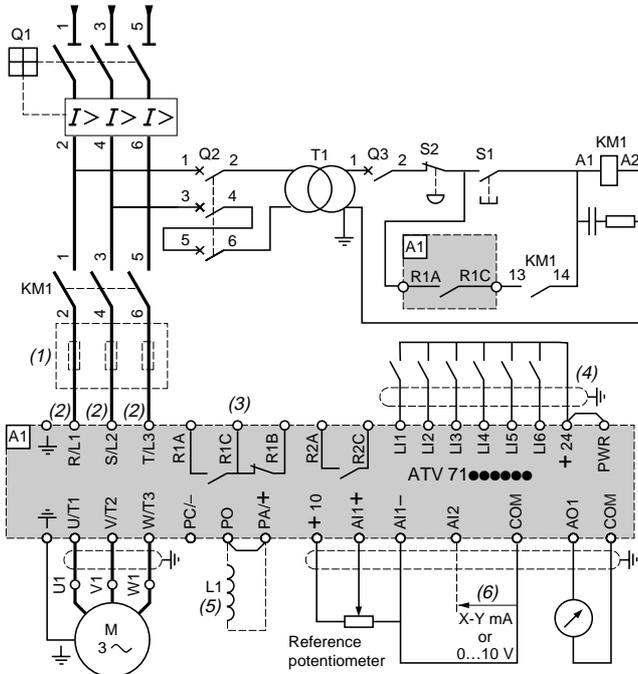
Power section for single phase power supply

Note: All terminals are located at the bottom of the drive. Fit interference suppressors to all inductive circuits near the drive or connected on the same circuit, such as relays, contactors, solenoid valves, fluorescent lighting, etc.

Components for use with the Altivar (for a complete list of references, see our "Motor starter solutions. Power control and protection components" specialist catalogue).

Reference	Description
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25
KM1	Contactor, see motor starters pages 152 to 157
L1	DC choke, see page 81
Q1	Circuit-breaker, see motor starters pages 152 to 157
Q2	GV2 L rated at twice the nominal primary current of T1
Q3	GB2 CB05
S1, S2	XB4 B or XB5 A pushbuttons
T1	100 VA transformer 220 V secondary

(1) Line choke (single phase or 3-phase), see page 84.
(2) For ATV 71HC40N4 drives combined with a 400 kW motor and ATV 71HC50N4, see page 140.
(3) Fault relay contacts. Used for remote signalling of the drive status
(4) Connection of the common for the logic inputs depends on the positioning of the SW1 switch: see schemes on page 141.
(5) DC choke as an option for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z.
*   Connected in place of the strap between the PO and PA/+ terminals. For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives,*
*   the choke is supplied with the drive; the customer is responsible for connecting it.*
(6) Software-configurable current (0…20 mA) or voltage (0…10 V) analog input.

Telemecanique

Schemes (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Schemes conforming to standards EN 954-1 category 1, IEC/EN 61508 SIL1 capability, in stopping category 0 according to IEC/EN 60204-1 (continued)

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71●●●●N4, ATV 71P●●●N4Z	ATV 71H075M3…HU75M3
3-phase power supply with downstream breaking via switch disconnector	Power section for single phase power supply
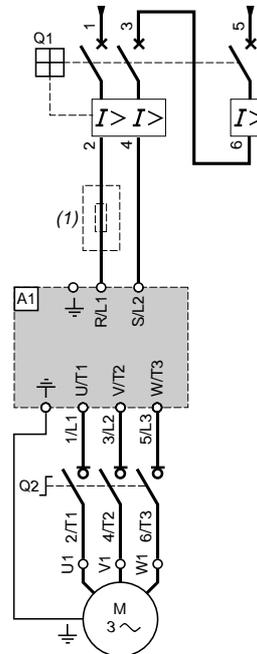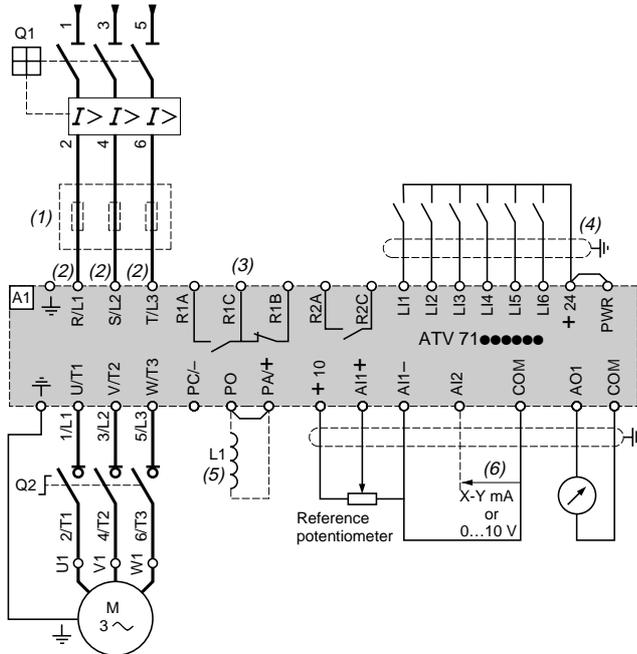
Note: All terminals are located at the bottom of the drive. Fit interference suppressors to all inductive circuits near the drive or connected on the same circuit, such as relays, contactors, solenoid valves, fluorescent lighting, etc.

Components for use with the Altivar (for a complete list of references, see our "Motor starter solutions. Power control and protection components" specialist catalogue).

Reference	Description
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25
L1	DC choke, see page 81
Q1	Circuit-breaker, see motor starters pages 152 to 157
Q2	Switch disconnector (Vario)

(1) Line choke (single phase or 3-phase), see page 84.
(2) For ATV 71HC40N4 drives combined with a 400 kW motor and ATV 71HC50N4, see page 140.
(3) Fault relay contacts. Used for remote signalling of the drive status.
(4) Connection of the common for the logic inputs depends on the positioning of the SW1 switch: see schemes on page 141.
(5) DC choke as an option for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z.
    Connected in place of the strap between the PO and PA/+ terminals. For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives,
    the choke is supplied with the drive; the customer is responsible for connecting it.
(6) Software-configurable current (0…20 mA) or voltage (0…10 V) analog input.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9	Characteristics: pages 10 to 17	References: pages 22 to 25	Dimensions: pages 108 to 133	Functions: pages 172 to 203

⊕ Telemecanique

137

Schemes (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Schemes conforming to standards EN 954-1 category 3, IEC/EN 61508 SIL2 capability, in stopping category 0 according to IEC/EN 60204-1

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71●●●●N4, ATV 71P●●●N4Z

3-phase power supply, low inertia machine, vertical movement

ATV 71H075M3…HU75M3
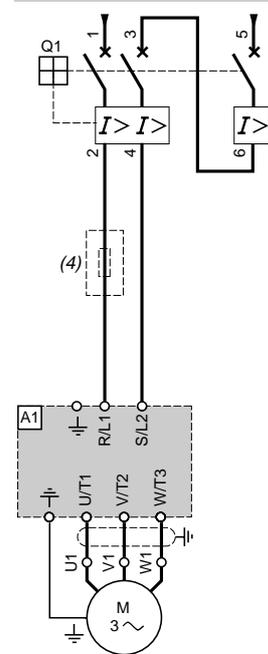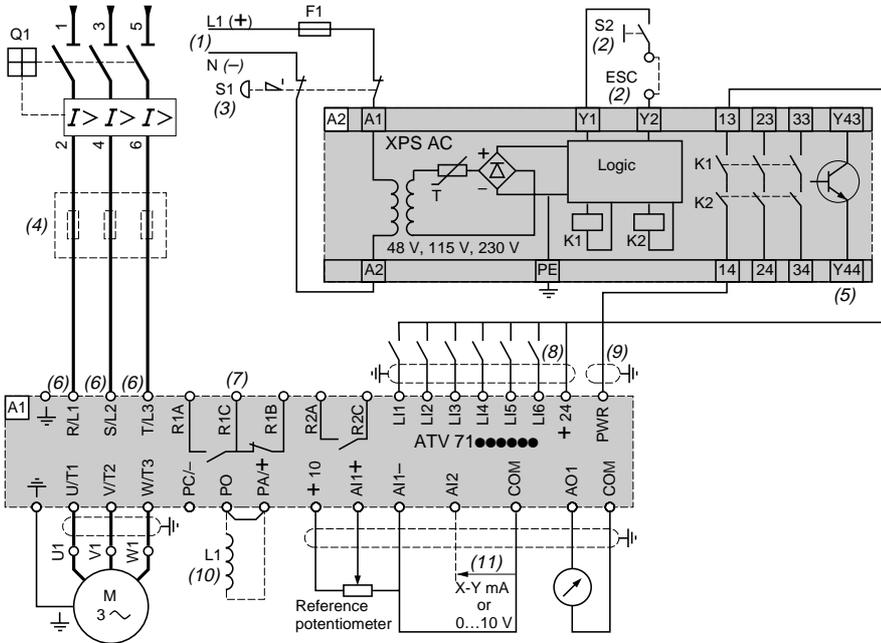
Power section for single phase power supply

Note: All terminals are located at the bottom of the drive. Fit interference suppressors to all inductive circuits near the drive or connected in the same circuit, such as relays, contactors, solenoid valves, fluorescent lighting, etc.

Components for use with the Altivar (for a complete list of references, see our "Motor starter solutions. Power control and protection components" and "Preventa safety solutions" specialist catalogues).

Reference	Description
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25
A2	Preventa XPS AC safety module for monitoring emergency stops and switches. One safety module can manage the "Power Removal" function for several drives on the same machine. In this case, each drive supplies its own PWR input terminal from its own +24 V via an independent safety contact on the XPS AC module.
F1	Fuse
L1	DC choke, see page 81
Q1	Circuit-breaker, see motor starters pages 152 to 157
S1	Emergency stop button with 2 contacts
S2	XB4 B or XB5 A pushbutton

(1) Power supply: ⎓ or 24 V ∿, 48 V ∿, 115 V ∿, 230 V ∿.
(2) S2: resets XPS AC module on power-up or after an emergency stop. ESC can be used to set external starting conditions.
(3) Requests freewheel stopping of the movement and activates the "Power Removal" safety function.
(4) Line choke (single phase or 3-phase), see page 84.
(5) The logic output can be used to signal that the machine is in a safe stop state.
(6) For ATV 71HC40N4 drives combined with a 400 kW motor and ATV 71HC50N4, see page 140.
(7) Fault relay contacts. Used for remote signalling of the drive status
(8) Connection of the common for the logic inputs depends on the positioning of the SW1 switch: see schemes on page 141.
(9) Standardized coaxial cable, type RG174/U according to MIL-C17 or KX3B according to NF C 93-550, external diameter 2.54 mm, maximum length 15 m. The cable shielding must be earthed.
(10) Optional DC choke for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z. Connected in place of the strap between the PO and PA/+ terminals. For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives, the choke is supplied with the drive; the customer is responsible for connecting it.
(11) Software-configurable current (0…20 mA) or voltage (0…10 V) analog input.

Schemes (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Schemes conforming to standards EN 954-1 category 3, IEC/EN 61508 SIL2 capability, in stopping category 1 according to IEC/EN 60204-1

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71H●●●N4, ATV 71P●●●N4Z

3-phase power supply, high inertia machine

ATV 71H075M3…HU75M3

Power section for single phase power supply

Note: All terminals are located at the bottom of the drive. Fit interference suppressors to all inductive circuits near the drive or connected on the same circuit, such as relays, contactors, solenoid valves, fluorescent lighting, etc.

Components for use with the Altivar (for a complete list of references, see our "Motor starter solutions. Power control and protection components" and "Preventa safety solutions" specialist catalogues).

Reference	Description
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25
A2 *(5)*	Preventa XPS ATE safety module for monitoring emergency stops and switches. One safety module can manage the "Power Removal" safety function for several drives on the same machine. In this case the time delay must be adjusted on the drive controlling the motor that requires the longest stopping time. In addition, each drive supplies its own PWR input terminal from its own +24 V via an independent safety contact on the XPS ATE module.
F1	Fuse
L1	DC choke, see page 81
Q1	Circuit-breaker, see motor starters pages 152 to 157
S1	Emergency stop button with 2 N/C contacts
S2	Run button

(1) Power supply: ⎓ or 24 V ∿, 115 V ∿, 230 V ∿.
(2) Requests controlled stopping of the movement and activates the "Power Removal" safety function.
(3) Line choke (single phase or 3-phase), see page 84.
(4) S2: resets XPS ATE module on power-up or after an emergency stop. ESC can be used to set external starting conditions.
(5) For stopping times requiring more than 30 seconds in category 1, use a Preventa XPS AV safety module which can provide a maximum time delay of 300 seconds.
(6) The logic output can be used to signal that the machine is in a safe state.
(7) For ATV 71HC40N4 drives combined with a 400 kW motor and ATV 71HC50N4, see page 140.
(8) Fault relay contacts. Used for remote signalling of the drive status
(9) Connection of the common for the logic inputs depends on the positioning of the SW1 switch: see schemes on page 141.
(10) Standardized coaxial cable, type RG174/U according to MIL-C17 or KX3B according to NF C 93-550, external diameter 2.54 mm, maximum length 15 m. The cable shielding must be earthed.
(11) Logic inputs LI1 and LI2 must be assigned to the direction of rotation: LI1 in the forward direction and LI2 in the reverse direction.
(12) Optional DC choke for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71●075N4…●D75N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z. Connected in place of the strap between the PO and PA/+ terminals. For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives, the choke is supplied with the drive; the customer is responsible for connecting it.
(13) Software-configurable current (0…20 mA) or voltage (0…10 V) analog input.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Power terminal connections for ATV 71HC40N4 combined with a 400 kW motor and ATV 71HC50N4

To circuit-breaker *(1)*   To DC bus –   To DC bus +

(2)

(3)   (3)

(3)   (3)

R/L1.1 S/L2.1 T/L3.1 R/L1.2 S/L2.2 T/L3.2 PC/– PC/– PO/1 PA/+ PA/+ PA/+ PA/+ PO/2

ATV 71HC40N4, HC50N4
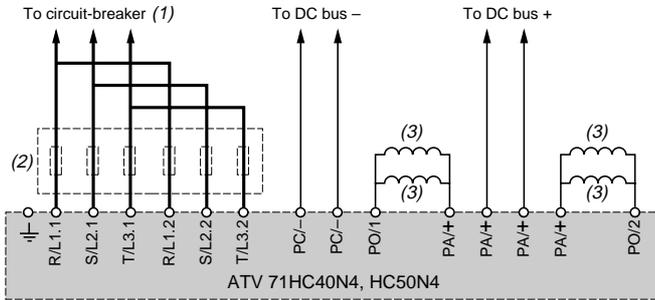
(1) For control section connections, see pages 136 to 139.
(2) Line choke, see page 84.
(3) DC chokes supplied as standard with the drive

VW3 A7 7●● braking resistors or VW3 A7 8●● hoist resistors, VW3 A7 1●● braking units

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4, ATV 71W●●●N4, ATV 71P●●●N4Z	**ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4…HC16N4**	**ATV 71HC20N4…HC50N4**

A1

PA/+   PB

Braking
resistor

A1

PA   PB

Braking
resistor

A1

BU/–   BU/+

BU/–   BU/+   PA
              PB

A2   Braking unit

TH   Braking
     resistor

(1)
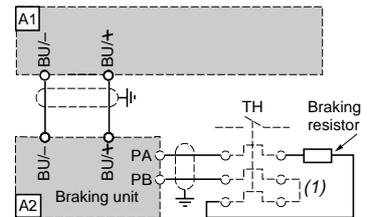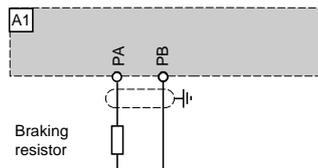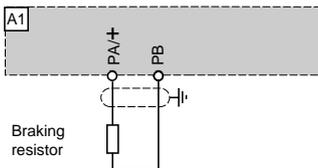
Components for use with the Altivar	
Reference	**Description**
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25
A2	Braking unit, if using a braking resistor or a hoist resistor, for ATV 71HC20N4…HC50N4, see pages 60 and 61
Braking resistor	See pages 62 and 63

(1) A thermal overload relay can be added.

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Examples of recommended schemes

Logic inputs

The SW1 switch is used to adapt operation of the logic inputs (LI) to the PLC output technology:
- Position the switch on Source (factory setting) if using PLC outputs with PNP transistors
- Position the switch on Sink Int or Sink Ext if using PLC outputs with NPN transistors

Internal power supply

Switch in "Source" position
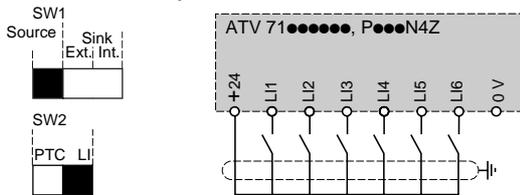
Switch in "Sink Int" position
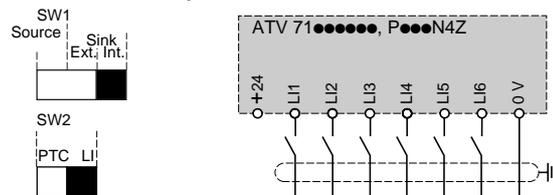
External power supply

Switch in "Source" position
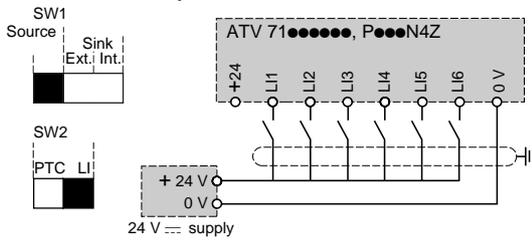
Switch in "Sink Ext" position
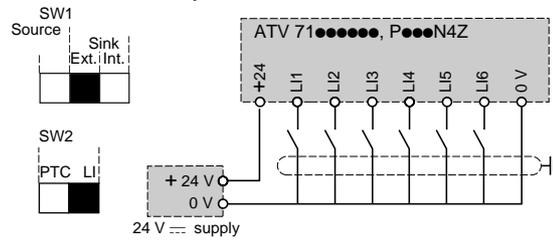
Input for PTC probes

The SW2 switch is used to operate the LI6 input:
- As a logic input by setting the SW2 switch to LI (factory setting)
- Or for protecting the motor via PTC probes by setting the SW2 switch to PTC
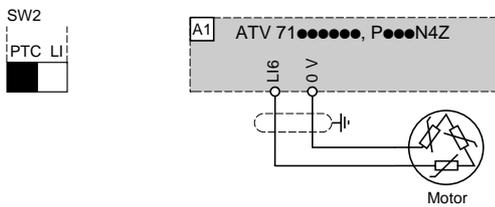
2-wire control and jog operation (JOG)

3-wire control and jog operation (JOG)

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Functions:
pages 172 to 203

Telemecanique

141

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
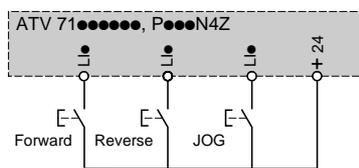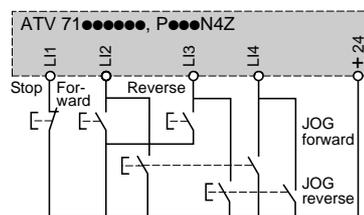
Examples of recommended schemes (continued)

Unipolar speed reference

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

+10 AI1+ AI1 – COM

Reference
potentiometer
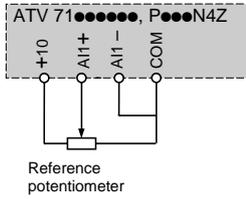
Bipolar speed reference

Requires a VW3 A3 201 or VW3 A3 202 I/O extension card

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

+10 AI1+ AI1 – COM

VW3 A3 20●

– 10

Reference
potentiometer
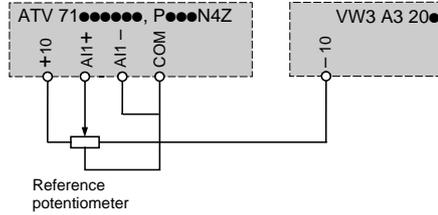
Speed reference using axis control

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

COM AI1+ AI1 –

0 V + I
Reference
± 10 V

Axis control
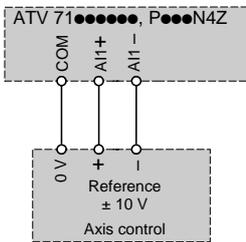
Separate control power supply

The separate control card can be powered by an external 24 V ⎓ supply

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

0 V P 24

0 V

+ 24 V

24 V ⎓ supply
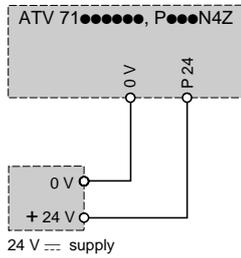
Analog input configured for voltage

External 0…10 V

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

AI2 COM

(0…10 V)

External + 10 V

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

AI2 COM

+ 10 V

Speed
reference
potentiometer
2.2 to 10 kΩ
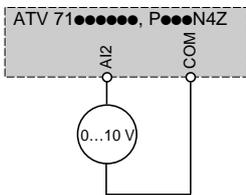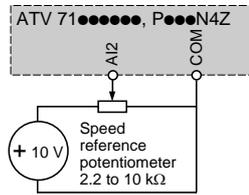
Analog input configured for current

0-20 mA, 4-20 mA, X-Y mA

ATV 71●●●●●●, P●●●N4Z

AI2 COM

Source
0-20 mA
4-20 mA
X-Y mA

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

142 ⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
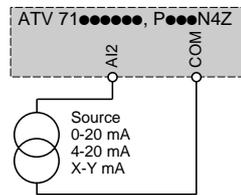
VW3 A3 201 and VW3 A3 202 I/O extension cards

Logic I/O

The SW3 or SW4 switch is used to adapt operation of the logic inputs (LI) to the PLC output technology:
- Position the switch on Source (factory setting) if using PLC outputs with PNP transistors
- Position the switch on Sink Int or Sink Ext if using PLC outputs with NPN transistors

Internal power supply

Switch in "Source" position
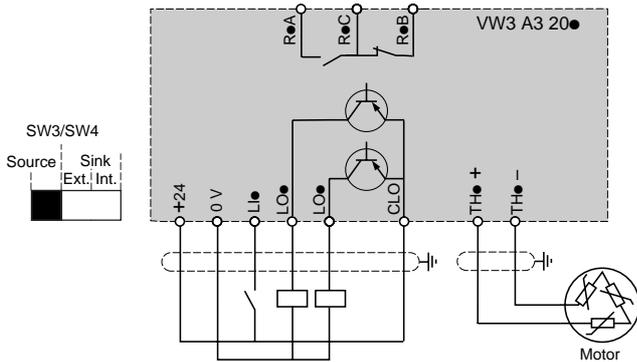
Switch in "Sink Int" position
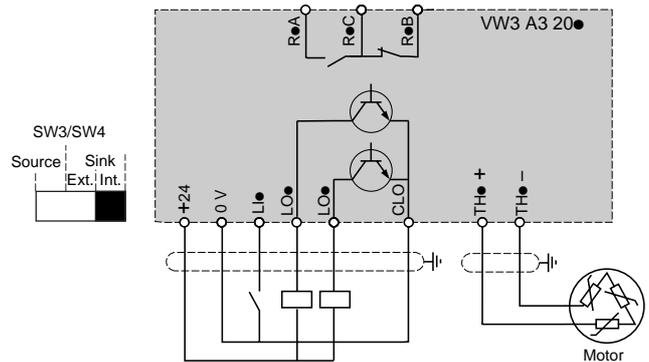
External power supply

Switch in "Source" position
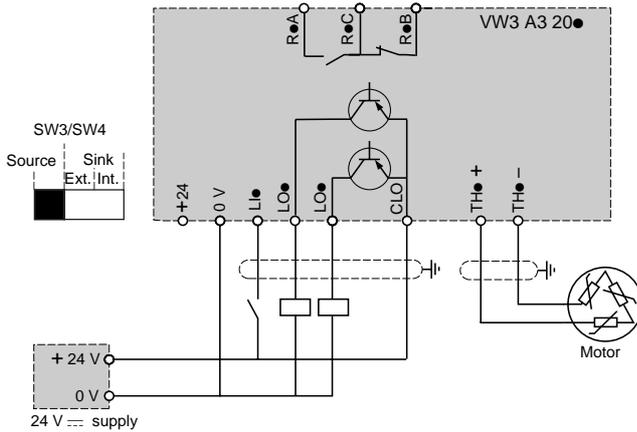
Switch in "Sink Ext" position
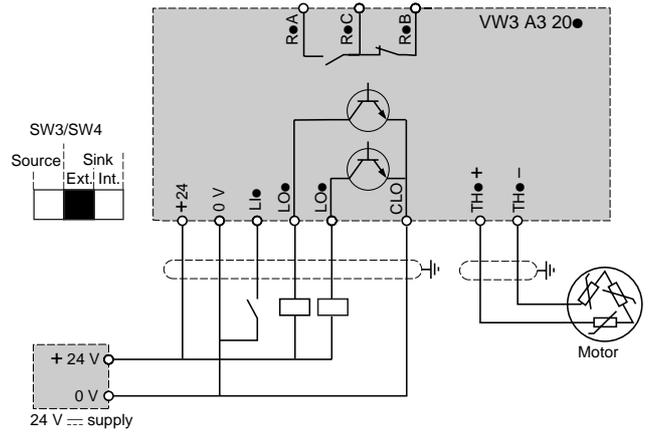
Analog I/O (only on VW3 A3 202 extended I/O card)
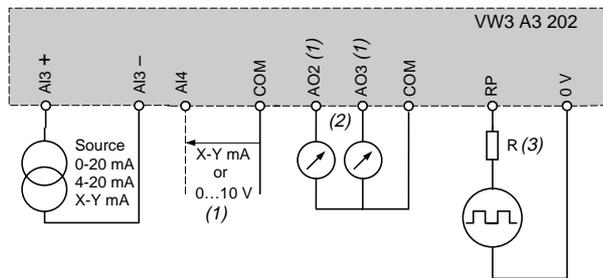
(1) Software-configurable current (0-20 mA) or voltage (0…10 V) analog input.
(2) Software-configurable current (0-20 mA) or voltage (± 10 V or 0…10 V) analog outputs, independent selection possible for each output via switch).
(3) R: add a resistor if the input voltage of the pulse train is greater than 5 V.
  Recommended values:

Input voltage V	Resistance Ω
12	510
15	910
24	1300

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

VW3 A3 401 to VW3 A3 407 encoder interface cards

Closed loop control

Wiring of encoders VW3 A3 401…407 A, $\overline{A}$, B, $\overline{B}$ signals	Wiring of encoders VW3 A3 403…407 AB signals	Wiring of encoders VW3 A3 403…407 A signal
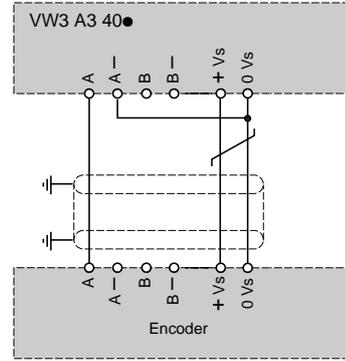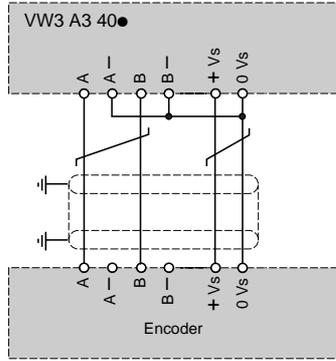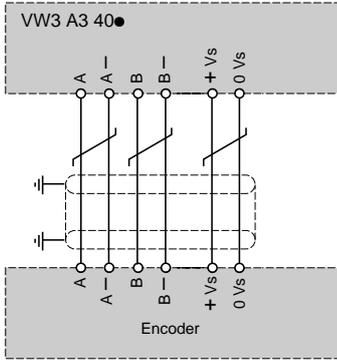
VW3 A3 501 "Controller Inside" programmable card

Card powered by the drive *(1)*
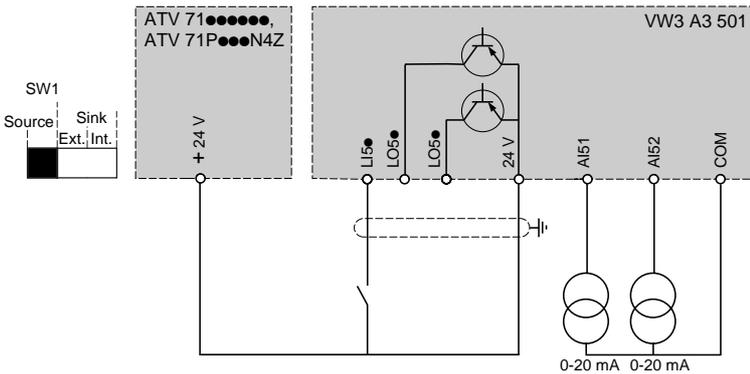
Card powered by external power supply
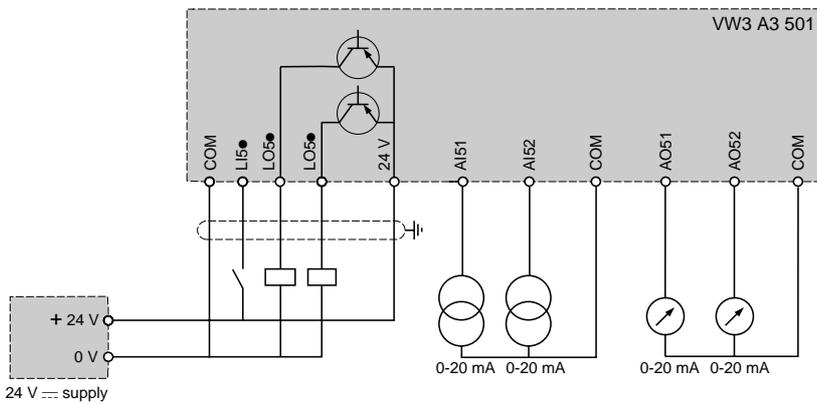
(1) Only if the power consumption is less than 200 mA; otherwise use an external power supply.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9	Characteristics: pages 10 to 17	References: pages 22 to 25	Dimensions: pages 108 to 133	Functions: pages 172 to 203

144

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

VW3 A4 6●● passive filters

Standard scheme
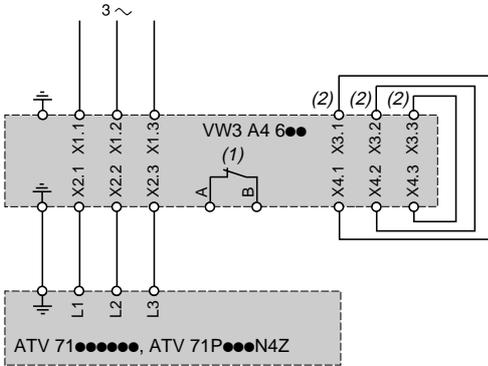
Scheme for controlling the filter via the drive according to the load
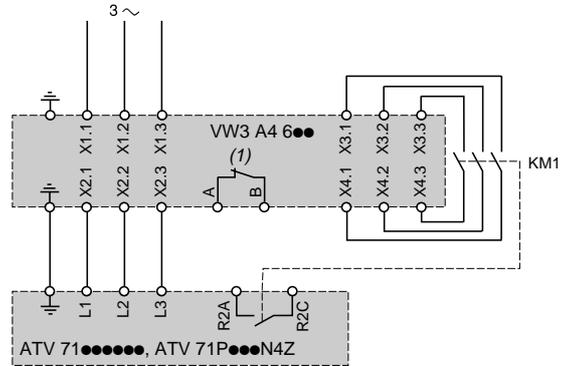
(1) Contact for indicating the thermal state of the passive filter.
(2) Cable supplied.

VW3 A4 4●● additional EMC input filters

3-phase power supply, 3-phase filter
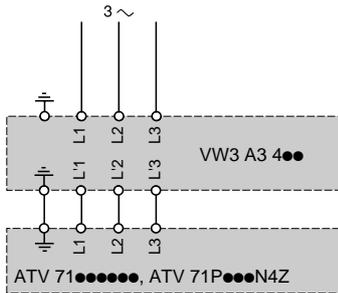
Single phase power supply, 3-phase filter
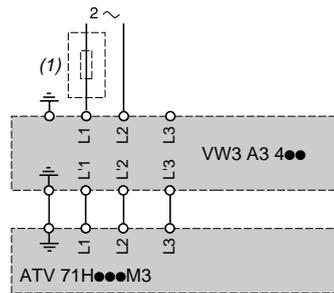
(1) Line choke compulsory for ATV 71HU40M3…HU75M3, see page 84.

Output filters

VW3 A5 1●● motor chokes

VW3 A5 2●● sinus filters

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
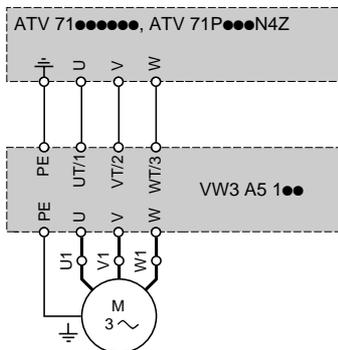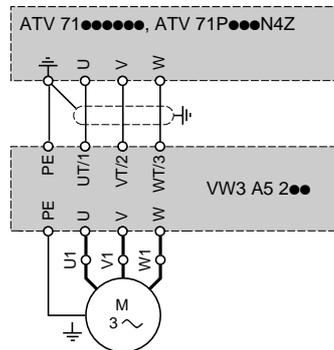
Network braking unit

Components for use with the Altivar (for a complete list of references, see our "Motor starter solutions. Power control and protection components" specialist catalogue).	
Reference	**Description**
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25
A2	Network braking unit, see page 75
F1	2 A fuse, 230 V∿
F2…F4	For fuses, see reference tables on page 75.
Q1	Earth fault circuit-breaker 300 mA. Protects against earth leakage faults.
	Rating: see motor starters on pages 152 to 157

(1) Additional EMC input filter if necessary, see page 92.
(2) Line choke recommended, see page 84.
(3) For ATV 71HC40N4 drives combined with a 400 kW motor and ATV 71HC50N4, see page 140.

Presentation:	Characteristics:	References:	Dimensions:	Functions:
pages 4 to 9	pages 10 to 17	pages 22 to 25	pages 108 to 133	pages 172 to 203

146

Telemecanique

Schemes (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Drives combined with a braking unit and wired onto the same DC bus
ATV 71HC20N4…HC50N4
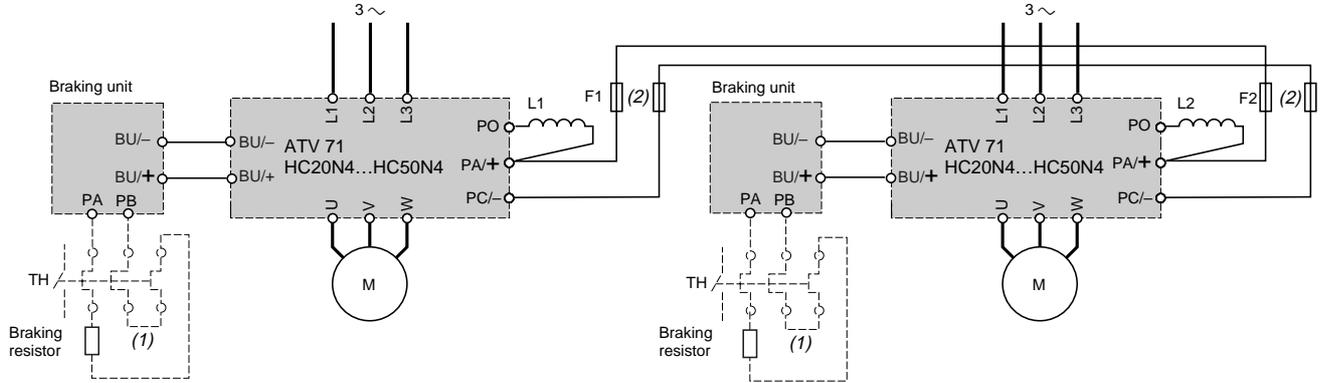
(1) A thermal overload relay can be added.
(2) Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses, see page 149. The function of the fuses is to protect the DC bus wiring in the event of a drive short-circuit.

Drives powered by external DC power supply
ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71●D22N4…●D75N4
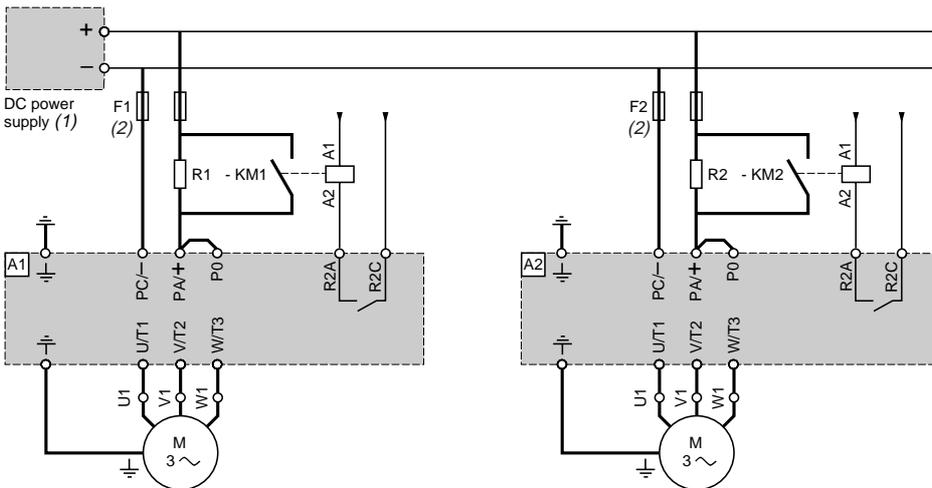
For drives A1, A2	Braking resistors R1, R2		Contactors (3) KM1, KM2
	Value	Reference	
	Ω		
ATV 71HD18M3X	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D32●●**
ATV 71HD22M3X	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D40●●**
ATV 71HD30M3X	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D65●●**
ATV 71HD37M3X	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D80●●**
ATV 71HD45M3X	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D80●●**
ATV 71HD22N4, WD22N4	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D25●●**
ATV 71HD30N4, WD30N4	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D32●●**
ATV 71HD37N4, WD37N4	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D38●●**
ATV 71HD45N4, WD45N4	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D40●●**
ATV 71HD55N4, WD55N4	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D50●●**
ATV 71HD75N4, WD75N4	5	**VW3 A7 707**	**LC1 D80●●**

(1) DC power supply not included.
(2) Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses, see page 149. The function of the fuses is to protect the DC bus wiring in the event of a drive short-circuit.
(3) See our "Motor starter solutions. Power control and protection components" specialist catalogue.

Note: *ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X, ATV 71●075N4…●D18N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives have an integrated pre-charge circuit.*
This is used to connect the DC power supply directly to the drive without the need for an external pre-charge circuit.

Schemes (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Connection diagrams for several drives in parallel on the DC bus

Drives with different ratings
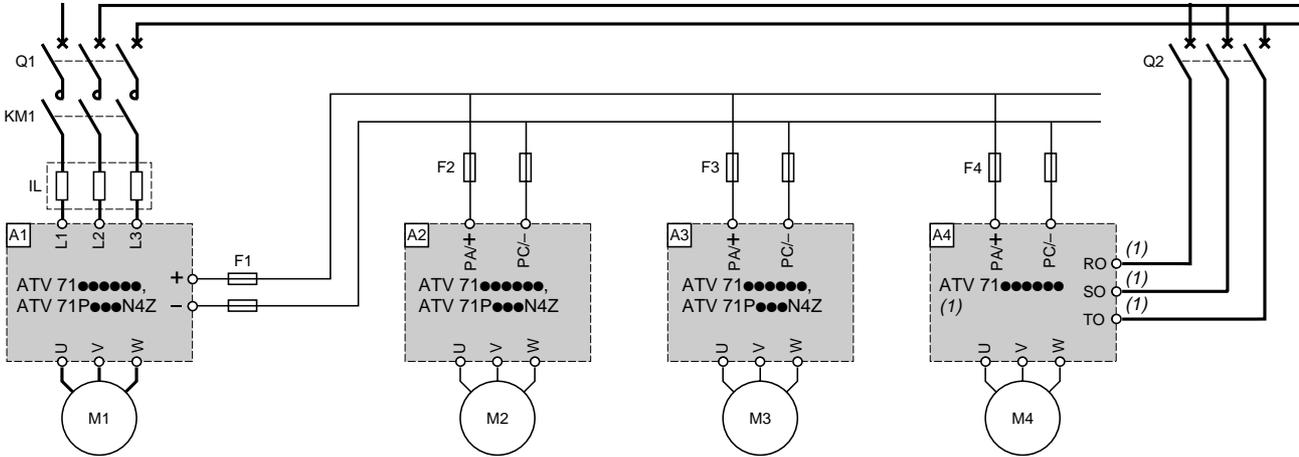
Reference	Description
A1	ATV 71 drive, see pages 22 to 25. Drive power = $\sum$ motor power ratings M1 + M2 + M3 + M4 + …
A2, A3, A4	ATV 71 drives powered by the DC bus. They must be protected using fast-acting semi-conductor fuses. Contactors on the DC circuit are ineffective as the switching action may cause the fuses to blow owing to the high load current.
F1	Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses, see page 149. Drive A1 powered by the AC supply with an output bus. The function of the fuse is to protect the internal diode bridge in the event of a short-circuit on the external DC bus.
F2, F3, F4	Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses, see page 149. Drives A2, A3 and A4 are powered by their DC bus and are not connected to the AC input. The function of the fuses is to protect the DC bus wiring in the event of a drive short-circuit.

(1) For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives, provide the fan power supply connection.

Drives with equivalent ratings
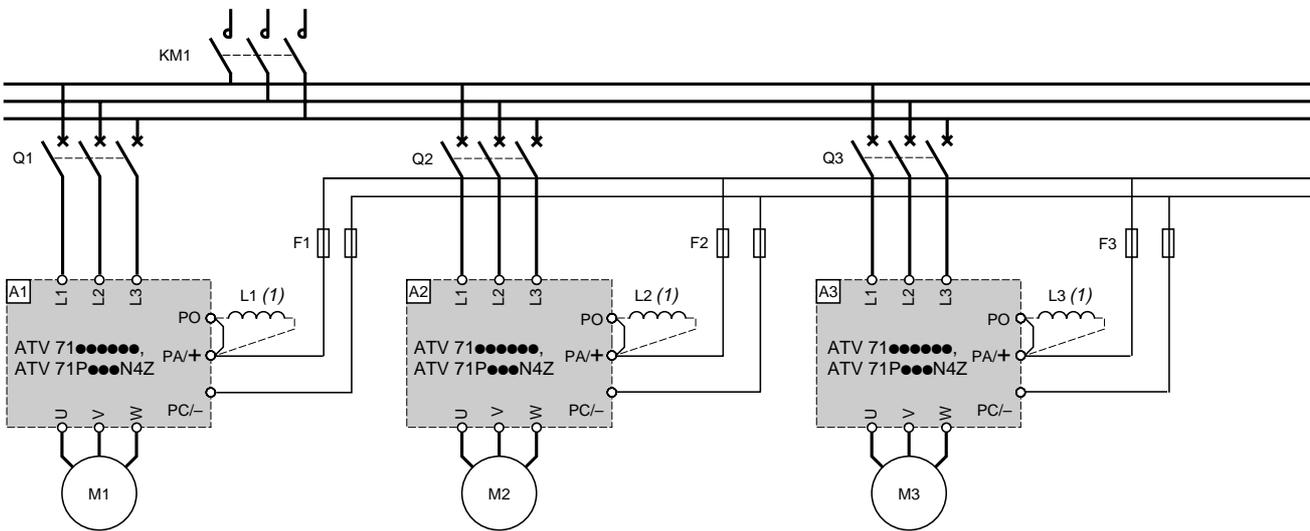
Reference	Description
A1, A2, A3	ATV 71 drives, see pages 22 to 25. The power difference between the drives connected in parallel must not exceed one rating.
F1, F2, F3	Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses, see page 149. Drives A1, A2 and A3 powered by the AC supply with an output bus. The function of the fuses is to protect the internal diode bridge in the event of a short-circuit on the external DC bus.
KM1	When using a common line contactor, all the Altivar 71 drive load circuits operate in parallel and cannot therefore be overloaded.
L1, L2, L3	DC chokes, see page 81.
Q1, Q2, Q3	Circuit-breakers on the line supply side to protect drives against overloads. Use trip contacts on the "external fault" logic input or the line contactor. The line contactor must only be activated if all three circuit-breakers are closed, as otherwise there is a risk of damage to the drives.

(1) DC chokes compulsory except for ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4 drives which include a DC choke as standard.

Telemecanique

Combinations

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Size of DC bus fuses (F1, F2, F3 and F4) depending on the drive rating	
For drives	**Fast-acting semi-conductor fuses** *(1)*
	A
ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3	25
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3	50
ATV 71HU55M3, HU75M3	100
ATV 71HD11M3X…HD18M3X	160
ATV 71HD22M3X, HD30M3X	250
ATV 71HD37M3X, HD45M3X	350
ATV 71HD55M3X	500
ATV 71HD75M3X	630
ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4 ATV 71W075N4…WU22N4 ATV 71P075N4Z…PU22N4Z	25
ATV 71HU30N4, HU40N4 ATV 71WU30N4, WU40N4 ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	50
ATV 71HU55N4…HD11N4 ATV 71WU55N4…WD11N4 ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	80
ATV 71HD15N4…HD22N4 ATV 71WD15N4…WD22N4	100
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4 ATV 71WD30N4, WD37N4	160
ATV 71HD45N4 ATV 71WD45N4	200
ATV 71HD55N4 ATV 71WD55N4	250
ATV 71HD75N4 ATV 71WD75N4	350
ATV 71HD90N4	315
ATV 71HC11N4, HC13N4	400
ATV 71HC16N4	500
ATV 71HC20N4	630
ATV 71HC25N4, HC28N4	800
ATV 71HC31N4	1000
ATV 71HC40N4, HC50N4	1250

(1) Nominal voltage of fast-acting fuse:

Line voltage	Nominal voltage of fast-acting fuse
V $\sim$	**V**
230	690
400	690
440	800
460	800
480	800

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Electromagnetic compatibility
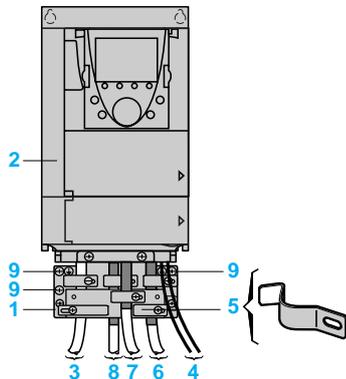
ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X,
ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4,
ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z
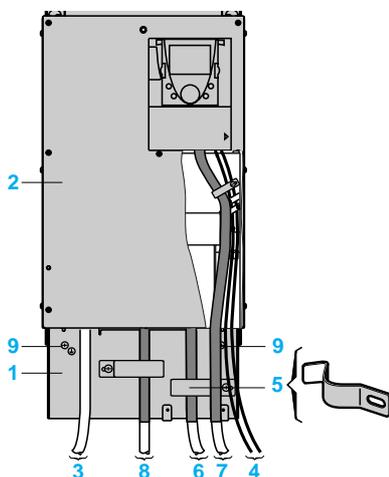
ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X,
ATV 71HD22N4…HD75N4
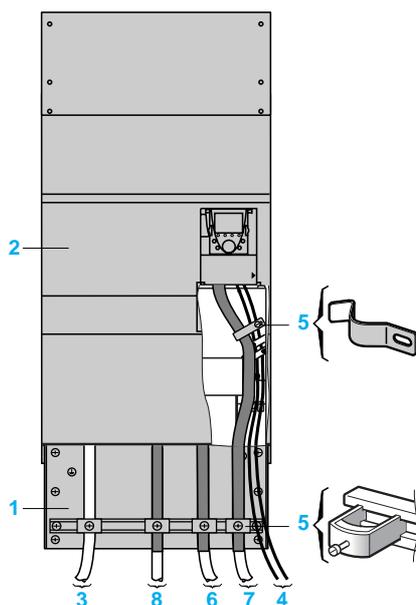
ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X,
ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4

Connections for ensuring conformity to EMC standards
Principle

■ Earths between drive, motor and cable shielding must have "high frequency" equipotentiality.
■ Use shielded cables with shielding connected to earth over 360° at both ends for the motor cable, the braking resistor cable and the control-signalling cables. Conduit or metal ducting can be used for part of the shielding length provided that there is no break in the continuity of the earth connections.
■ Ensure maximum separation between the power supply cable (line supply) and the motor cable.

Installation diagram for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X, ATV 71H●●●N4 and ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives

1 Steel plate *(1)*, to be mounted on the drive (earthed casing).
2 Altivar 71 UL Type 1/IP 20 drive
3 Unshielded power supply wires or cable
4 Unshielded wires for the output of the fault relay contacts
5 Fix and earth the shielding of cables **6**, **7** and **8** as close as possible to the drive:
- strip the shielding
- fix the cable to the plate **1** by attaching the clamp to the stripped part of the shielding.
The shielding must be clamped tightly enough to the metal plate to ensure good contact.
6 Shielded cable for connecting the motor
7 Shielded cable for connecting the control/signal wiring.
For applications requiring several conductors, use cables with a small cross-section (0.5 mm^2).
8 Shielded cable for connecting the braking resistor **6**, **7**, **8**, the shielding must be connected to earth at both ends.
The shielding must be continuous, and if intermediate terminals are used, they must be placed in EMC shielded metal boxes.
9 Earth screw.

Note: The HF equipotential earth connection between the drive, motor and cable shielding does not remove the need to connect the PE protective conductors (green-yellow) to the appropriate terminals on each unit.
*If using an additional EMC input filter, it should be mounted beside or beneath the drive, depending on the rating, and connected directly to the line supply via an unshielded cable. Link **3** on the drive is via the filter output cable.*

(1) Plate supplied for ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X,
ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4 and ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z drives.
For ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X and ATV 71HD90N4…HC28N4 drives, the plate is supplied with the UL Type 1 conformity kit or the IP 31 conformity kit.
For ATV 71HC31N4…HC50N4 drives, the plate is supplied with the IP 31 conformity kit.
For ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z drives, the plate is supplied with the UL Type 1 conformity kit or the IP 21 conformity kit.
These kits must be ordered separately, see pages 29 et 30.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

150   ⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Electromagnetic compatibility
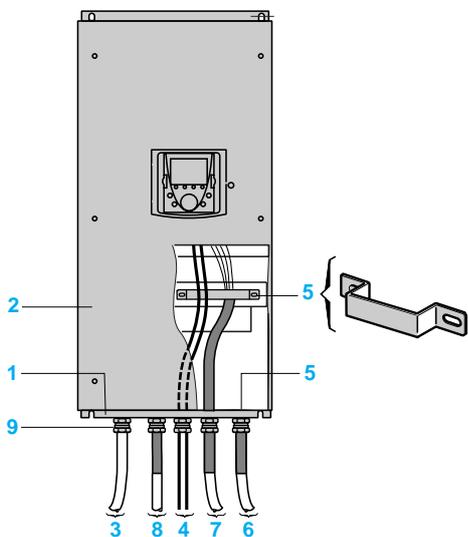
ATV 71W075N4…WD22N4
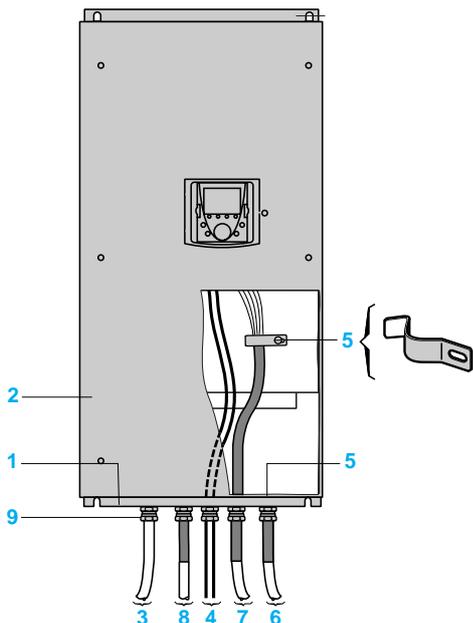
ATV 71WD30N4…WD75N4

Connections for ensuring conformity to EMC standards (continued)

Installation diagram for ATV 71W●●●N4 drives

1 Steel plate mounted on the drive (earthed casing)
2 Altivar 71 UL Type 12/IP 54 drive.
3 Unshielded power supply wires or cable
4 Unshielded wires for the output of the fault relay contacts
5 Fix and earth the shielding of cables **6**, **7** and **8** as close as possible to the drive:
- strip the shielding
- attach the shielded cable to the cable gland **9** ensuring it is fully in contact throughout 360° – fold back the shielding and clamp it between the ring and the body of the cable gland.
Depending on the drive rating, the shielding of cable **7** can be earthed using a cable gland **9**, a clamp **5** or a cable clip **5**.
The shielding must be clamped tightly enough to the metal plate to ensure good contact.
6 Shielded cable for connecting the motor
7 Shielded cable for connecting the control/signalling wiring.
For applications requiring several conductors, use cables with a small cross-section (0.5 mm²).
8 Shielded cable for connecting the braking resistor **6**, **7**, **8**, the shielding must be connected to earth at both ends.
The shielding must be continuous, and if intermediate terminals are used, they must be placed in EMC shielded metal boxes.
9 Metal cable gland (not supplied) for cables **6**, **7** and **8**.
Standard cable gland (not supplied) for cables **3** and **4**.

Note: The HF equipotential earth connection between the drive, motor and cable shielding does not remove the need to connect the PE protective conductors (green-yellow) to the appropriate terminals on each unit.
*If using an additional EMC input filter, it should be mounted beneath the drive and connected directly to the line supply via an unshielded cable. Link **3** on the drive is via the filter output cable.*

| Presentation: pages 4 to 7 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Functions: pages 172 to 203 |

Telemecanique

151

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Motor starters: supply voltage 200…240 V

Applications

Circuit-breaker/contactor/drive combinations can be used to ensure continuous service of the installation with optimum safety.
The type of circuit-breaker/contactor coordination selected can reduce maintenance costs in the event of a motor short-circuit by minimizing the time required to make the necessary repairs and the cost of replacement equipment. The suggested combinations provide type 1 or type 2 coordination depending on the drive rating.

Type 2 coordination: A motor short-circuit will not damage the device or affect its settings. The motor starter should be able to operate once the electrical fault has been removed. The electrical isolation provided by the circuit-breaker will not be affected by the short-circuit. Welding of the contactor contacts is permissible if they can be separated easily.

Type 1 coordination: The electrical isolation provided by the circuit-breaker will not be affected by the incident and no other elements apart from the contactor are damaged as a result of the motor short-circuit.

The drive controls the motor, provides protection against short-circuits between the drive and the motor and protects the motor cable against overloads. The overload protection is provided by the drive's motor thermal protection. If this protection is removed, external thermal protection should be provided.
Before restarting the installation, the cause of the trip must be removed.

*GV2 L20
+
LC1 D25●●
+
ATV 71HU22M3*

Motor starters for UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Motor Power (1)		Drive Reference	Circuit-breaker Reference (2)	Rating	Im	Line contactor Reference (3) (4)
kW	*HP*			A	A	
Single phase supply voltage 200…240 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.37	*0.5*	**ATV 71H075M3**	**GV2 L10**	6.3	–	**LC1 D18●●**
0.75	*1*	**ATV 71HU15M3**	**GV2 L14**	10	–	**LC1 D18●●**
1.5	*2*	**ATV 71HU22M3**	**GV2 L20**	18	–	**LC1 D25●●**
2.2	*3*	**ATV 71HU30M3**	**GV2 L22**	25	–	**LC1 D25●●**
3	*–*	**ATV 71HU40M3** *(5)*	**GV2 L22**	25	–	**LC1 D25●●**
4	*5*	**ATV 71HU55M3** *(5)*	**NS80HMA50**	50	300	**LC1 D40●●**
5.5	*7.5*	**ATV 71HU75M3** *(5)*	**NS80HMA50**	50	300	**LC1 D50●●**

(1) Standard power ratings for 4-pole motors 50/60 Hz 230 V.
The values expressed in HP comply with the NEC (National Electrical Code).
(2) NS80HMA: product sold under the Merlin Gerin brand.
Breaking capacity of circuit-breakers according to standard IEC 60947-2:

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 240 V
GV2 L	50
NS80HMA	100

(3) Composition of contactors:
LC1 D18 to LC1 D50: 3 poles + 1 "N/O" auxiliary contact and 1 "N/C" auxiliary contact.
(4) Replace ●● with the control circuit voltage reference indicated in the table below.

	Volts ∼	24	48	110	220	230	240
LC1 D	50 Hz	**B5**	**E5**	**F5**	**M5**	**P5**	**U5**
	60 Hz	**B6**	**E6**	**F6**	**M6**	**–**	**U6**
	50/60 Hz	**B7**	**E7**	**F7**	**M7**	**P7**	**U7**

For other voltages available between 24 V and 660 V, or a DC control circuit, please consult your Regional Sales Office.
(5) A line choke must be added (see page 84).

Ⓣ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Motor starters: supply voltage 200…240 V

NS80HMA50
+
LC1 D40●●
+
ATV 71HU55M3

Motor starters for UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Motor Power (1)		Drive Reference	Circuit-breaker Reference (2)	Rating	Im	Line contactor Reference (3) (4)
kW	*HP*			A	A	
3-phase supply voltage 200…240 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.37	*0.5*	**ATV 71H037M3**	**GV2 L08**	4	–	**LC1 D09●●**
0.75	*1*	**ATV 71H075M3**	**GV2 L14**	10	–	**LC1 D09●●**
1.5	*2*	**ATV 71HU15M3**	**GV2 L14**	10	–	**LC1 D18●●**
2.2	*3*	**ATV 71HU22M3**	**GV2 L16**	14	–	**LC1 D18●●**
3	*–*	**ATV 71HU30M3**	**GV2 L20**	18	–	**LC1 D25●●**
4	*5*	**ATV 71HU40M3**	**GV2 L22**	25	–	**LC1 D25●●**
5.5	*7.5*	**ATV 71HU55M3**	**NS80HMA50**	50	300	**LC1 D40●●**
7.5	*10*	**ATV 71HU75M3**	**NS80HMA50**	50	300	**LC1 D50●●**
11	*15*	**ATV 71HD11M3X**	**NS80HMA80**	80	480	**LC1 D65●●**
15	*20*	**ATV 71HD15M3X**	**NS100NMA80**	80	480	**LC1 D65●●**
18.5	*25*	**ATV 71HD18M3X**	**NS100NMA100**	100	600	**LC1 D80●●**
22	*30*	**ATV 71HD22M3X**	**NS100NMA100**	100	600	**LC1 D80●●**
30	*40*	**ATV 71HD30M3X**	**NS160NMA150**	150	1350	**LC1 D115●●**
37	*50*	**ATV 71HD37M3X**	**NS160NMA150**	150	1350	**LC1 D150●●**
45	*60*	**ATV 71HD45M3X**	**NS250NMA220**	220	1980	**LC1 D150●●**
55	*75*	**ATV 71HD55M3X**	**NS250NMA220**	220	1980	**LC1 F225●●**
75	*100*	**ATV 71HD75M3X**	**NS400NMA320**	320	1920	**LC1 F265●●**

(1) Standard power ratings for 4-pole motors 50/60 Hz 230 V.
  The values expressed in HP comply with the NEC (National Electrical Code).
(2) NS80HMA, NS●●●N: Products sold under the Merlin Gerin brand.
  Breaking capacity of circuit-breakers according to standard IEC60947-2:

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 240 V
GV2 L08…L20	100
GV2 L22	50
NS80HMA	100
NS●●●NMA	85

(3) Composition of contactors:
  LC1 D09 to LC1 D150: 3 poles + 1 "N/O" auxiliary contact + 1 "N/C" auxiliary contact.
  LC1 F●●●: 3 poles. To add auxiliary contacts or other accessories, please consult our specialist catalogue
  "Motor-starter solutions. Control and protection components".
(4) Replace ●● with the control circuit voltage reference indicated in the table below.

	Volts ∼	24	48	110	220	230	240
LC1 D	50 Hz	**B5**	**E5**	**F5**	**M5**	**P5**	**U5**
	60 Hz	**B6**	**E6**	**F6**	**M6**	**–**	**U6**
	50/60 Hz	**B7**	**E7**	**F7**	**M7**	**P7**	**U7**
LC1 F225	50 Hz (LX1 coil)	**B5**	**E5**	**F5**	**M5**	**P5**	**U5**
	60 Hz (LX1 coil)	**–**	**E6**	**F6**	**M6**	**–**	**U6**
	40…400 Hz (LX9 coil)	**–**	**E7**	**F7**	**M7**	**P7**	**U7**
LC1 F265	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	**B7**	**E7**	**F7**	**M7**	**P7**	**U7**

For other voltages available between 24 V and 660 V, or a DC control circuit, please consult your Regional Sales Office.

⊕ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71

Motor starters: supply voltage 380…415 V

NS160●MA150
+
LC1 D115●●
+
ATV 71HD45N4

Motor starters for UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Motor Power (1)		Drive Reference	Circuit-breaker Reference (2)	Rating	Im	Line contactor Reference (3) (4)
kW	HP			A	A	
3-phase supply voltage 380…415 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.75	1	ATV 71H075N4	GV2 L08	4	–	LC1 D18●●
1.5	2	ATV 71HU15N4	GV2 L10	6.3	–	LC1 D18●●
2.2	3	ATV 71HU22N4	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
3	–	ATV 71HU30N4	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
4	5	ATV 71HU40N4	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
5.5	7.5	ATV 71HU55N4	GV2 L22	25	–	LC1 D25●●
7.5	10	ATV 71HU75N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
11	15	ATV 71HD11N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
15	20	ATV 71HD15N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
18.5	25	ATV 71HD18N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
22	30	ATV 71HD22N4	NS80HMA80	80	480	LC1 D65●●
30	40	ATV 71HD30N4	NS80HMA80	80	480	LC1 D65●●
37	50	ATV 71HD37N4	NS100●MA100	100	800	LC1 D80●●
45	60	ATV 71HD45N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
55	75	ATV 71HD55N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
75	100	ATV 71HD75N4	NS250●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D150●●
90	125	ATV 71HD90N4	NS250●MA220	220	1980	LC1 F185●●
110	150	ATV 71HC11N4	NS250●MA220	220	1980	LC1 F185●●
132	200	ATV 71HC13N4	NS400●MA320	320	1920	LC1 F265●●
160	250	ATV 71HC16N4	NS400●MA320	320	1920	LC1 F265●●
200	300	ATV 71HC20N4	NS400●MA320	320	1920	LC1 F400●●
220	350	ATV 71HC25N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F400●●
250	400	ATV 71HC25N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F500●●
280	450	ATV 71HC28N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F500●●
315	500	ATV 71HC31N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F500●●
3-phase supply voltage 380…415 V 50/60 Hz. Type 1 coordination						
355	–	ATV 71HC40N4	NS800 MicroLogic 2 or 5 (LR OFF)	800	1600	LC1 F630●●
400	600	ATV 71HC40N4	NS800 MicroLogic 2 or 5 (LR OFF)	800	1600	LC1 F630●●
500	700	ATV 71HC50N4	NS1000 MicroLogic 2 or 5 (LR OFF)	1000	2000	LC1 F800●●

(1) Standard power ratings for 4-pole motors 50/60 Hz 400 V.
The values expressed in HP comply with the NEC (National Electrical Code).
(2) NS80HMA, NS●●●●, NS800, NS1000: products sold under the Merlin Gerin brand.
For references to be completed, replace the dot with the letter corresponding to the circuit-breaker breaking performance (N, H, L).
Breaking capacity of circuit-breakers according to standard IEC 60947-2:

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 400 V		
	N	H	L
GV2 L08…L14	100	–	–	–
GV2 L16, L22	50	–	–	–
NS80HMA	70	–	–	–
NS100●MA, NS160●MA, NS250●MA	–	36	70	150
NS400●, NS630●, NS800, NS1000	–	50	70	150

(3) Composition of contactors:
LC1 D18 to LC1 D150: 3 poles + 1 "N/O" auxiliary contact + 1 "N/C" auxiliary contact.
LC1 F●●●: 3 poles. To add auxiliary contacts or other accessories, please consult our specialist catalogue "Motor-starter solutions. Control and protection components".
(4) Replace ●● with the control circuit voltage reference indicated in the table below.

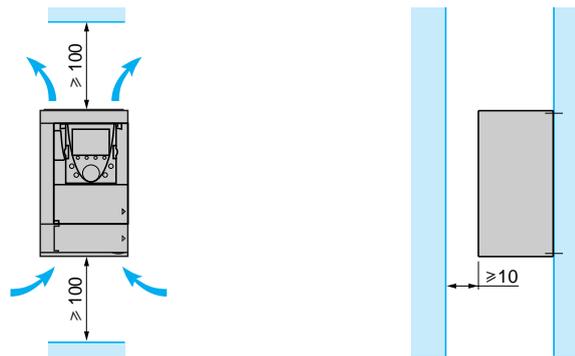|	Volts ∼	24	48	110	220	230	240
LC1 D	50 Hz	B5	E5	F5	M5	P5	U5
	60 Hz	B6	E6	F6	M6	–	U6
	50/60 Hz	B7	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F185	50 Hz (LX1 coil)	B5	E5	F5	M5	P5	U5
	60 Hz (LX1 coil)	–	E6	F6	M6	–	U6
	40…400 Hz (LX9 coil)	–	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F265	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	B7	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F400…F630	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	–	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F800	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	–	–	FE7	P7	P7	P7

For other voltages available between 24 V and 660 V, or a DC control circuit, please consult your Regional Sales Office.
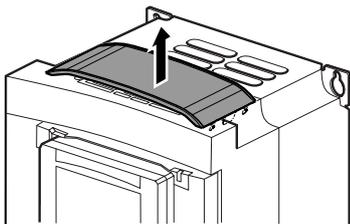
Ⓣ Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
Motor starters: supply voltage 440…480 V

NS160●MA150
+
LC1 D115●●
+
ATV 71HD75N4

Motor starters for UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Motor Power (1)		Drive Reference	Circuit-breaker Reference (2)	Rating	Im	Line contactor Reference (3) (4)
kW	*HP*			A	A	
3-phase supply voltage 440…480 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.75	*1*	ATV 71H075N4	GV2 L08	4	–	LC1 D18●●
1.5	*2*	ATV 71HU15N4	GV2 L10	6.3	–	LC1 D18●●
2.2	*3*	ATV 71HU22N4	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
3	*–*	ATV 71HU30N4	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
4	*5*	ATV 71HU40N4	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
5.5	*7.5*	ATV 71HU55N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D25●●
7.5	*10*	ATV 71HU75N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
11	*15*	ATV 71HD11N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
15	*20*	ATV 71HD15N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
18.5	*25*	ATV 71HD18N4	NS100●MA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
22	*30*	ATV 71HD22N4	NS100●MA50	50	300	LC1 D65●●
30	*40*	ATV 71HD30N4	NS100●MA100	100	600	LC1 D65●●
37	*50*	ATV 71HD37N4	NS100●MA100	100	600	LC1 D80●●
45	*60*	ATV 71HD45N4	NS160●MA100	100	600	LC1 D115●●
55	*75*	ATV 71HD55N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
75	*100*	ATV 71HD75N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
90	*125*	ATV 71HD90N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
110	*150*	ATV 71HC11N4	NS250●MA220	220	1980	LC1 F185●●
132	*200*	ATV 71HC13N4	NS250●MA220	220	1980	LC1 F225●●
160	*250*	ATV 71HC16N4	NS400●MA320	320	1920	LC1 F265●●
200	*300*	ATV 71HC20N4	NS400●MA320	320	1920	LC1 F330●●
220	*350*	ATV 71HC25N4	NS400●MA320	320	1920	LC1 F400●●
250	*400*	ATV 71HC25N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F400●●
280	*450*	ATV 71HC28N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F500●●
315	*500*	ATV 71HC31N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F500●●
355	*–*	ATV 71HC40N4	NS630●MA500	500	3000	LC1 F630●●
3-phase supply voltage 440…480 V 50/60 Hz. Type 1 coordination						
400	*600*	ATV 71HC40N4	NS800 MicroLogic 2 or 5 (LR OFF)	800	1600	LC1 F630●●
500	*700*	ATV 71HC50N4	NS1000 MicroLogic 2 or 5 (LR OFF)	1000	2000	LC1 F800●●

(1) Standard power ratings for 4-pole motors 50/60 Hz 400 V.
The values expressed in HP comply with the NEC (National Electrical Code).
(2) NS800HMA, NS●●●●, NS800, NS1000: products sold under the Merlin Gerin brand.
For references to be completed, replace the dot with the letter corresponding to the circuit-breaker breaking performance (N, H, L).
Breaking capacity of circuit-breakers according to standard IEC 60947-2:

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 440 V		
	N	**H**	**L**
GV2 L08, GV2 L10	100	–	–	–
GV2 L14, GV2 L16	20	–	–	–
NS80HMA	65	–	–	–
NS100●MA, NS160●MA, NS250●MA	–	35	65	130
NS400●, NS630●	–	42	65	130
NS800, NS1000	–	50	65	130

(3) Composition of contactors:
LC1 D18 to LC1 D115: 3 poles + 1 "N/O" auxiliary contact + 1 "N/C" auxiliary contact.
LC1 F●●●: 3 poles. To add auxiliary contacts or other accessories, please consult our specialist catalogue "Motor-starter solutions. Control and protection components".
(4) Replace ●● with the control circuit voltage reference indicated in the table below.

	Volts ∼	**24**	**48**	**110**	**220**	**230**	**240**
LC1 D	50 Hz	B5	E5	F5	M5	P5	U5
	60 Hz	B6	E6	F6	M6	–	U6
	50/60 Hz	B7	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F185	50 Hz (LX1 coil)	B5	E5	F5	M5	P5	U5
	60 Hz (LX1 coil)	–	E6	F6	M6	–	U6
	40…400 Hz (LX9 coil)	–	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F265, F330	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	B7	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F400…F630	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	–	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7
LC1 F800	40…400 Hz (LX1 coil)	–	–	FE7	P7	P7	P7

For other voltages available between 24 V and 660 V, or a DC control circuit, please consult your Regional Sales Office.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71

Motor starters: supply voltage 380…480 V

NS160●MA150
+
LC1 D115●●
+
ATV 71WD55N4

Motor starters for UL Type 12/IP 54 drives

Motor Power (1)		Drive Reference	Circuit-breaker Reference (2)	Rating	Im	Line contactor Reference (3) (4)
kW	HP			A	A	
3-phase supply voltage 380…415 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.75	1	ATV 71W075N4	GV2 L08	4	–	LC1 D18●●
1.5	2	ATV 71WU15N4	GV2 L10	6.3	–	LC1 D18●●
2.2	3	ATV 71WU22N4	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
3	–	ATV 71WU30N4	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
4	5	ATV 71WU40N4	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
5.5	7.5	ATV 71WU55N4	GV2 L22	25	–	LC1 D25●●
7.5	10	ATV 71WU75N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
11	15	ATV 71WD11N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
15	20	ATV 71WD15N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
18.5	25	ATV 71WD18N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
22	30	ATV 71WD22N4	NS80HMA80	80	480	LC1 D65●●
30	40	ATV 71WD30N4	NS80HMA80	80	480	LC1 D65●●
37	50	ATV 71WD37N4	NS100●MA100	100	800	LC1 D80●●
45	60	ATV 71WD45N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
55	75	ATV 71WD55N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
75	100	ATV 71WD75N4	NS250●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D150●●
3-phase supply voltage 440…480 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.75	1	ATV 71W075N4	GV2 L08	4	–	LC1 D18●●
1.5	2	ATV 71WU15N4	GV2 L10	6.3	–	LC1 D18●●
2.2	3	ATV 71WU22N4	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
3	–	ATV 71WU30N4	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
4	5	ATV 71WU40N4	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
5.5	7.5	ATV 71WU55N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D25●●
7.5	10	ATV 71WU75N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
11	15	ATV 71WD11N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
15	20	ATV 71WD15N4	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
18.5	25	ATV 71WD18N4	NS100●MA50	50	300	LC1 D50●●
22	30	ATV 71WD22N4	NS100●MA50	50	300	LC1 D65●●
30	40	ATV 71WD30N4	NS100●MA100	100	600	LC1 D65●●
37	50	ATV 71WD37N4	NS100●MA100	100	600	LC1 D80●●
45	60	ATV 71WD45N4	NS160●MA100	100	600	LC1 D115●●
55	75	ATV 71WD55N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●
75	100	ATV 71WD75N4	NS160●MA150	150	1350	LC1 D115●●

(1) Standard power ratings for 4-pole motors 50/60 Hz 400 V.
The values expressed in HP comply with the NEC (National Electrical Code).
(2) NS80HMA●●, NS●●●●: products sold under the Merlin Gerin brand.
For references to be completed, replace the dot with the letter corresponding to the circuit-breaker breaking performance (N, H, L).
Breaking capacity of circuit-breakers according to standard IEC 60947-2:

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 400 V		
	N	H	L
GV2 L08…L14	100	–	–	–
GV2 L16, L22	50	–	–	–
NS80HMA	70	–	–	–
NS100●MA, NS160●MA, NS250●MA	–	36	70	150

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 440 V		
	N	H	L
GV2 L08, GV2 L10	100	–	–	–
GV2 L14, GV2 L16	20	–	–	–
NS80HMA	65	–	–	–
NS100●MA, NS160●MA	–	35	65	130

(3) Composition of contactors:
LC1 D18 to LC1 D150: 3 poles + 1 "N/O" auxiliary contact and 1 "N/C" auxiliary contact.
(4) Replace ●● with the control circuit voltage reference indicated in the table below.

	Volts ∼	24	48	110	220	230	240
LC1 D18…D150	50 Hz	B5	E5	F5	M5	P5	U5
	60 Hz	B6	E6	F6	M6	–	U6
	50/60 Hz	B7	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7

For other voltages available between 24 V and 660 V, or a DC control circuit, please consult your Regional Sales Office.

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71

Motor starters: supply voltage 440…480 V

GV2 L16
+
LC1 D18●●
+
ATV 71PU40N4Z

Motor starters for UL Type 1/IP 20 drives on base plates

Motor Power (1)		Drive Reference	Circuit-breaker Reference (2)	Rating	Im	Line contactor Reference (3) (4)
kW	HP			A	A	
3-phase supply voltage 380…415 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.75	1	ATV 71P075N4Z	GV2 L08	4	–	LC1 D18●●
1.5	2	ATV 71PU15N4Z	GV2 L10	6.3	–	LC1 D18●●
2.2	3	ATV 71PU22N4Z	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
3	–	ATV 71PU30N4Z	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
4	5	ATV 71PU40N4Z	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
5.5	7.5	ATV 71PU55N4Z	GV2 L22	25	–	LC1 D25●●
7.5	10	ATV 71PU75N4Z	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●
3-phase supply voltage 440…480 V 50/60 Hz. Type 2 coordination						
0.75	1	ATV 71P075N4Z	GV2 L08	4	–	LC1 D18●●
1.5	2	ATV 71PU15N4Z	GV2 L10	6.3	–	LC1 D18●●
2.2	3	ATV 71PU22N4Z	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
3	–	ATV 71PU30N4Z	GV2 L14	10	–	LC1 D18●●
4	5	ATV 71PU40N4Z	GV2 L16	14	–	LC1 D18●●
5.5	7.5	ATV 71PU55N4Z	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D25●●
7.5	10	ATV 71PU75N4Z	NS80HMA50	50	300	LC1 D40●●

(1) Standard power ratings for 4-pole motors 50/60 Hz 400 V.
  The values expressed in HP comply with the NEC (National Electrical Code).
(2) NS80HMA: Products sold under the Merlin Gerin brand.
  Breaking capacity of circuit-breakers according to standard IEC60947-2:

Circuit-breaker	Icu (kA) for 400 V		
	N	H	L
GV2 L08…L14	100	–	–	–
GV2 L16, L22	50	–	–	–
NS80HMA	70	–	–	–

(3) Composition of contactors:
  LC1 D18 to LC1 D40: 3 poles + 1 "N/O" auxiliary contact and 1 "N/C" auxiliary contact.
(4) Replace ●● with the control circuit voltage reference indicated in the table below.

	Volts ∼	24	48	110	220	230	240
LC1 D	50 Hz	B5	E5	F5	M5	P5	U5
	60 Hz	B6	E6	F6	M6	–	U6
	50/60 Hz	B7	E7	F7	M7	P7	U7

For other voltages available between 24 V and 660 V, or a DC control circuit, please consult your Regional Sales Office.

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Mounting recommendations

Depending on the conditions in which the drive is to be used, its installation will require certain precautions and the use of appropriate accessories.
Install the unit vertically:
■ Do not place it close to heating elements.
■ Leave sufficient free space to ensure that the air required for cooling purposes can circulate from the bottom to the top of the unit.

ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X…HD45M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD75N4, P075N4Z…PU75N4Z

Mounting types

■ **Type A mounting**
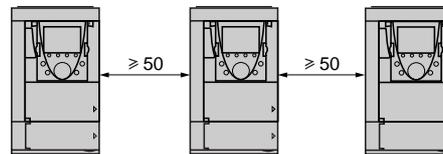
■ **Type B mounting**
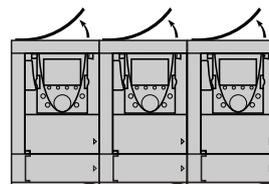
■ **Type C mounting**
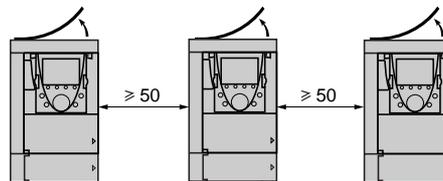
By removing the protective blanking cover from the top of the drive, the degree of protection for the drive becomes IP 20.
The protective blanking cover may vary according to the drive model, see drawings opposite.

Note: *The protective blanking cover must be removed from ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives when they are mounted in a dust and damp proof enclosure.*

Removing the protective blanking cover for:
ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X,
ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4,
ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z

Removing the protective blanking cover for:
ATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X,
ATV 71HD22N4…HD75N4

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Mounting recommendations (continued)

Derating curves

The derating curves for the drive nominal current (In) depend on the temperature, the switching frequency and the mounting type.

For intermediate temperatures (55°C for example), interpolate between 2 curves.

ATV 71H037M3…HD15M3X et ATV 71H075N4…HD18N4 and ATV 71P075N4Z…PU75N4Z
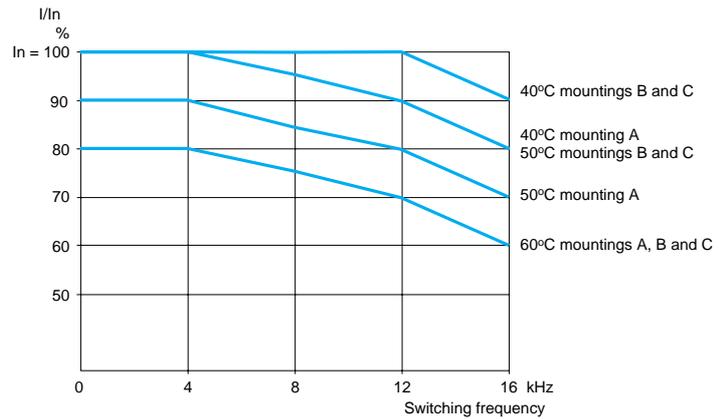
ATV 71HD22N4 and ATV 71HD30N4 *(1)*
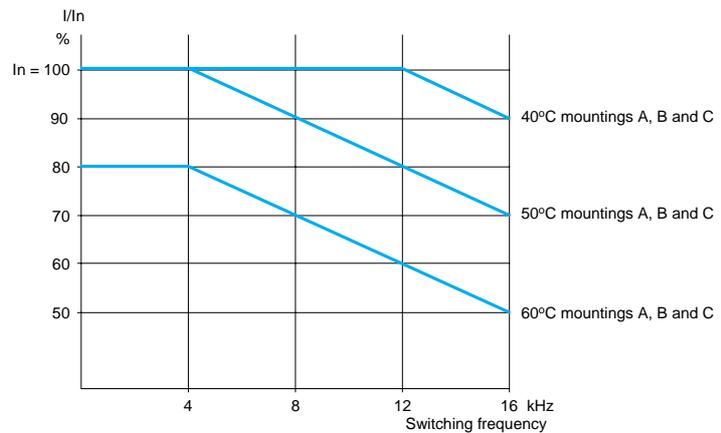
ATV HD18M3X…HD45M3X and ATV 71HD37N4…HD75N4 *(1)*
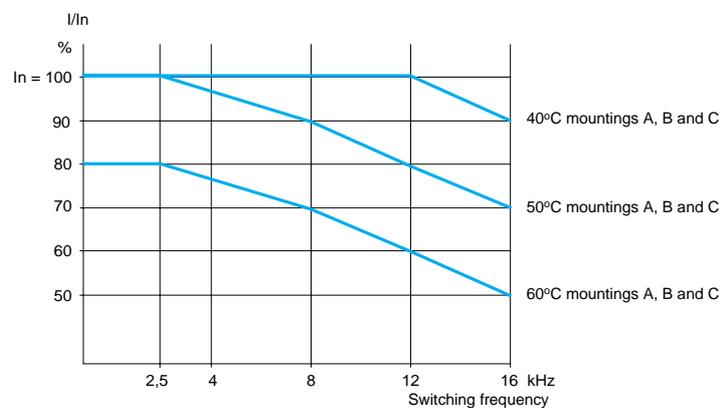
(1) Above 50°C, IATV 71HD18M3X…HD45M3X et ATV 71HD22N4…HD75N4 drives should be fitted with a control card fan kit. See page 26.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Mounting recommendations (continued)
ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X, ATV 71HD90N4…HC50N4
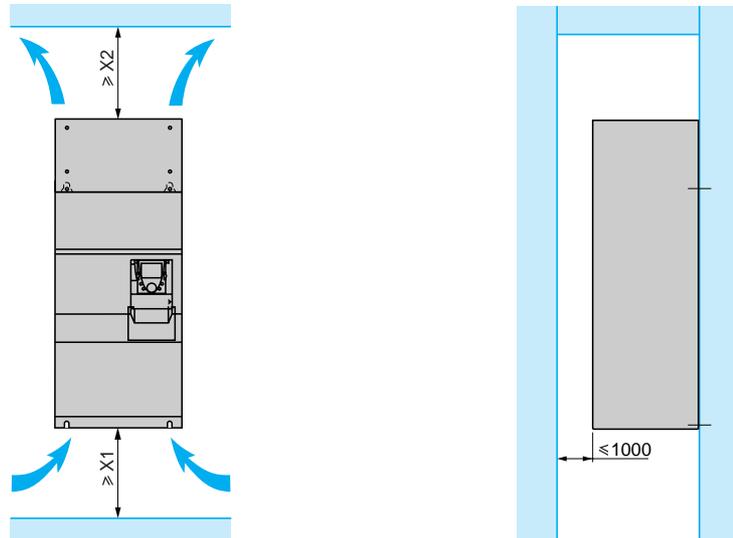
ATV 71H	X1	X2
D55M3X, D75M3X D90N4	100	100
C11N4…C16N4	150	150
C20N4…C28N4	150	200
C31N4, C40N4	250	300
C50N4	250	400

These drives can be mounted side by side, observing the following mounting recommendations:
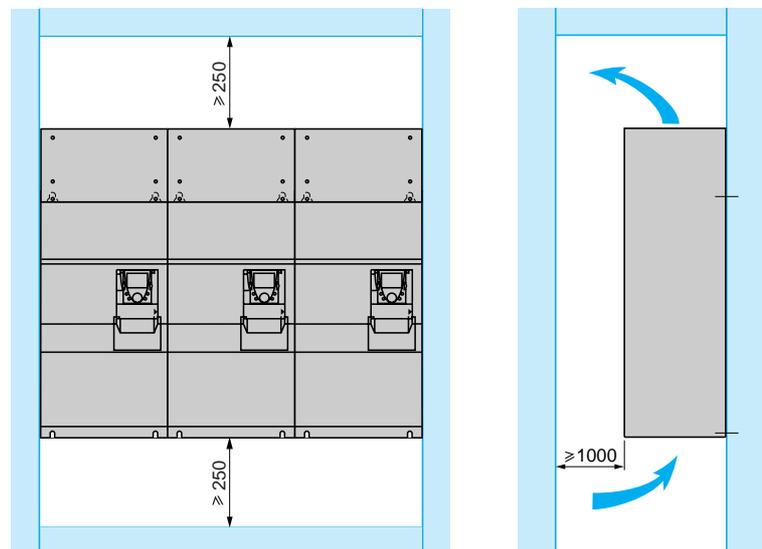
| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

160

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives

Mounting recommendations (continued)

Derating curves

The derating curves for the drive nominal current (In) depend on the temperature, the switching frequency and the mounting type.

For intermediate temperatures (55°C for example), interpolate between 2 curves.

ATV 71HD55M3X, HD75M3X
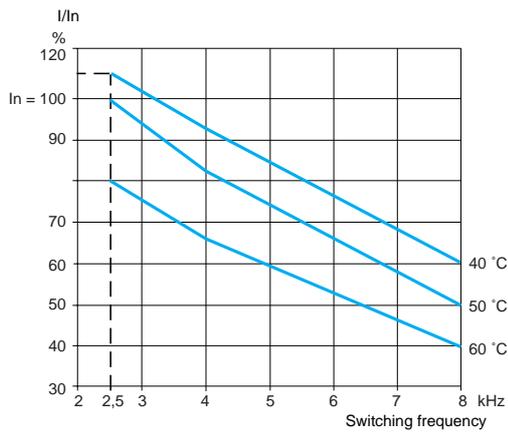
ATV 71HD90N4
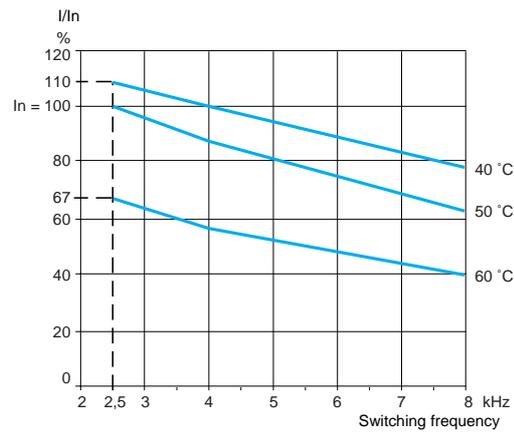
ATV 71HC11N4

ATV 71HC13N4

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

161
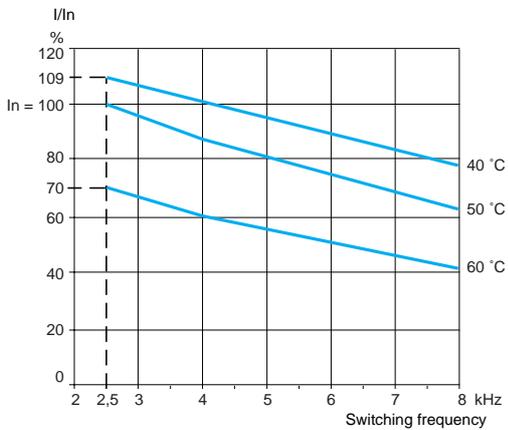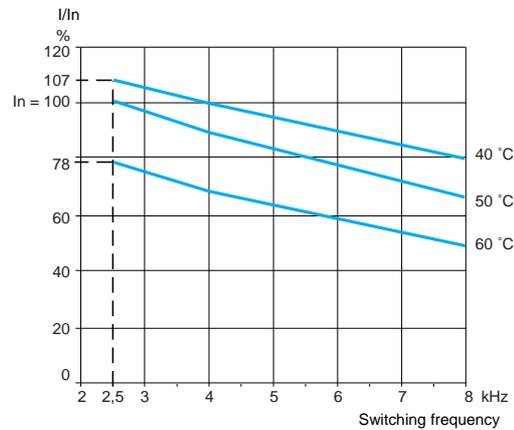
Mounting recommendations (continued)

Derating curves

ATV 71HC16N4
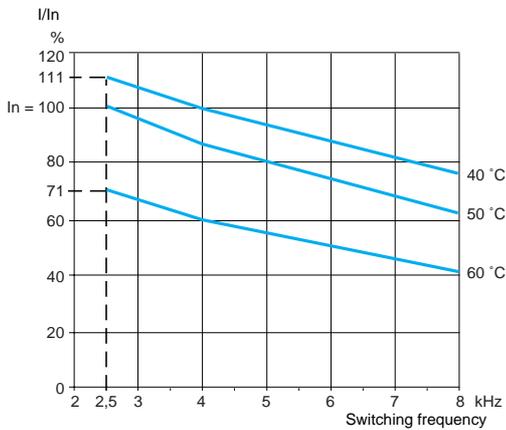
ATV 71HC20N4
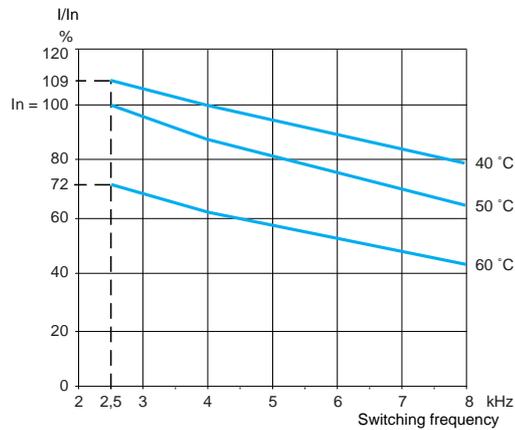
ATV 71HC25N4 combined with a 220 kW motor
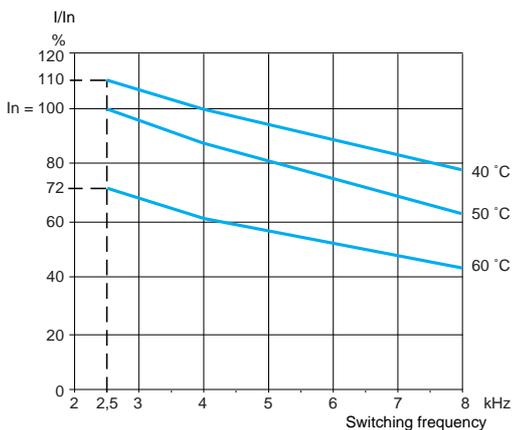
ATV 71HC25N4 combined with a 250 kW motor

ATV 71HC28N4

ATV 71HC31N4

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

162

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives
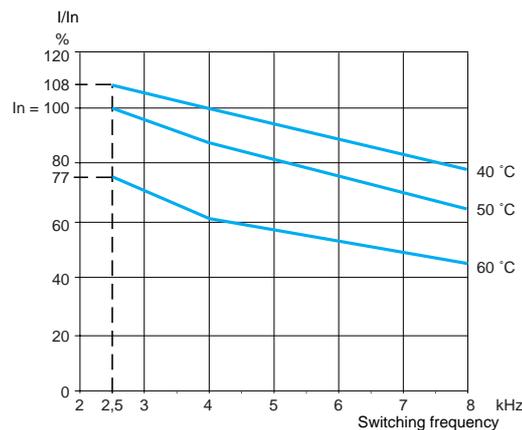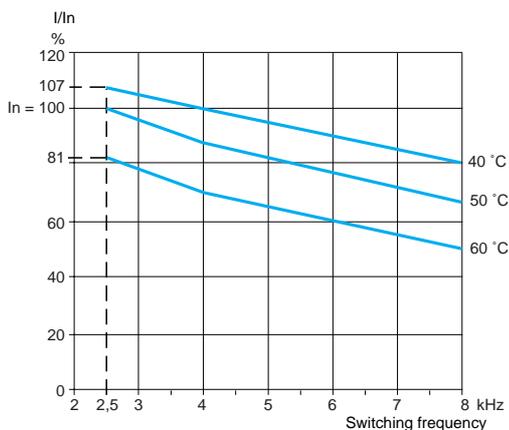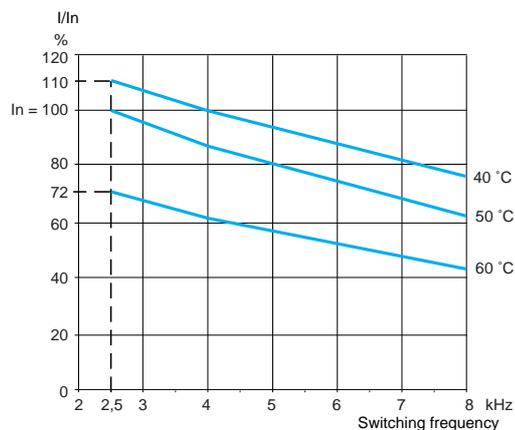
Mounting recommendations (continued)

Derating curves

ATV 71HC40N4 combined with a 355 kW motor
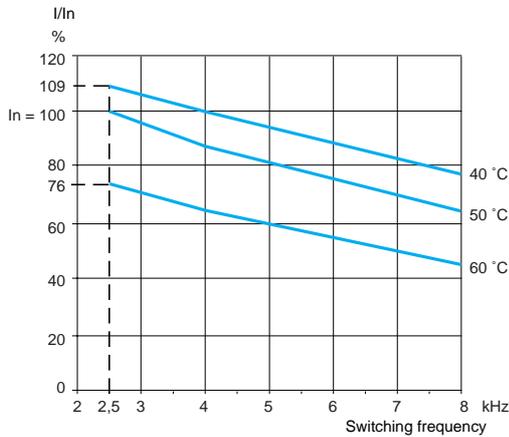
ATV 71HC40N4 combined with a 400 kW motor

ATV 71HC50N4

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

Telemecanique

163

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives on heatsinks
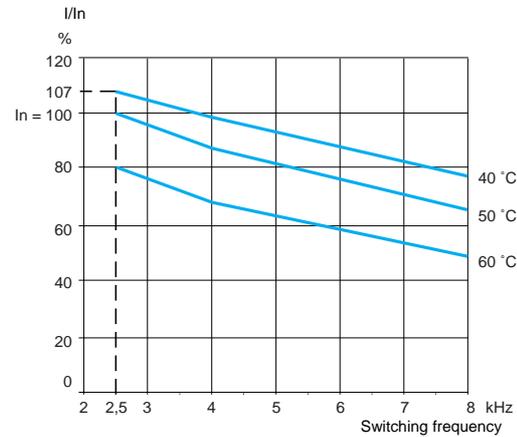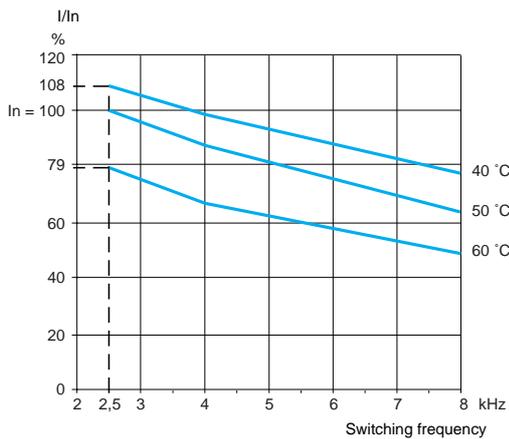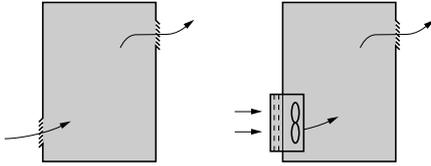
Specific recommendations for mounting ATV 71H●●●M3, ATV 71H●●●M3X and ATV 71H●●●N4 drives in enclosures

Observe the mounting recommendations described on pages 158 to 163.
To ensure proper air circulation in the drive:
■ Fit ventilation grilles
■ Ensure that there is sufficient ventilation. If there is not, install a forced ventilation unit with a filter. The openings and/or fans must provide a flow rate at least equal to that of the drive fans (see page 167).
■ Use special filters with IP 54 protection
■ Remove the blanking cover from the top of the drive (see page 158).

Power dissipated inside the enclosure

For drives	Dissipated power (1)	
	Mounted in the enclosure (power section inside the enclosure)	Dust and damp proof flush-mounted (power section outside the enclosure)
	W	W
3-phase supply voltage: 200…240 V 50/60 Hz		
ATV 71H037M3	46	25
ATV 71H075M3	66	27
ATV 71HU15M3	101	30
ATV 71HU22M3	122	38
ATV 71HU30M3	154	38
ATV 71HU40M3	191	41
ATV 71HU55M3	293	59
ATV 71HU75M3	363	67
ATV 71HD11M3X	566	80
ATV 71HD15M3X	620	84
ATV 71HD18M3X	657	114
ATV 71HD22M3X	766	124
ATV 71HD30M3X	980	144
ATV 71HD37M3X	1154	161
ATV 71HD45M3X	1366	180
ATV 71HD55M3X	1715	154
ATV 71HD75M3X	2204	154
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz		
ATV 71H075N4	44	26
ATV 71HU15N4	64	28
ATV 71HU22N4	87	30
ATV 71HU30N4	114	35
ATV 71HU40N4	144	40
ATV 71HU55N4	185	50
ATV 71HU75N4	217	55
ATV 71HD11N4	320	65
ATV 71HD15N4	392	85
ATV 71HD18N4	486	86
ATV 71HD22N4	574	110
ATV 71HD30N4	799	133
ATV 71HD37N4	861	137
ATV 71HD45N4	1060	165
ATV 71HD55N4	1210	178
ATV 71HD75N4	1720	225
ATV 71HD90N4	2403	237
ATV 71HC11N4	2726	261
ATV 71HC13N4	3191	296
ATV 71HC16N4	3812	350
ATV 71HC20N4	4930	493
ATV 71HC25N4	5873	586
ATV 71HC28N4	6829	658
ATV 71HC31N4	7454	772
ATV 71HC40N4	9291	935
ATV 71HC50N4	11345	1116

(1) This value is given for operation at nominal load and for a switching frequency of 2.5 or 4 kHz depending on the rating.
Add 7 W to this value for each additional option card.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

164

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives on heatsinks

Fan flow rate depending on the drive rating	
For drive	**Flow rate m³/hour**
ATV 71H037M3…HU15M3, ATV 71H075N4…HU22N4	17
ATV 71HU22M3…HU40M3, ATV 71HU30N4, HU40N4	56
ATV 71HU55M3, ATV 71HU55N4, HU75N4	112
ATV 71HU75M3, ATV 71HD11N4	163
ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X ATV 71HD15N4, HD18N4	252
ATV 71HD18M3X, HD22M3X, ATV 71HD22N4	203
ATV 71HD30N4, HD37N4	203
ATV 71HD30M3X…HD45M3X	406
ATV 71HD45N4…HD75N4	406
ATV 71HD55M3X, ATV 71HD90N4	402
ATV 71HD75M3X, ATV 71HC11N4	774
ATV 71HC13N4	745
ATV 71HC16N4	860
ATV 71HC20N4… HC28N4	1260
ATV 71HC31N4, HC40N4	2100
ATV 71HC50N4	2400

Sealed metal enclosure (IP 54 degree of protection)

The drive must be mounted in a dust and damp proof casing in certain environmental conditions: dust, corrosive gases, high humidity with risk of condensation and dripping water, splashing liquid, etc.
This enables the drive to be used in an enclosure where the maximum internal temperature reaches 50°C.

Calculating the enclosure dimensions

Maximum thermal resistance Rth (°C/W)

$$Rth = \frac{\theta - \theta e}{P}$$

θ = maximum temperature inside enclosure in °C
θe = maximum external temperature in °C
P = total power dissipated in the enclosure in W

Power dissipated by drive: see page 164 (mounting in an enclosure or flush-mounting in an enclosure).
Add the power dissipated by the other equipment components.

Useful heat dissipation surface of enclosure S (m²)

(sides + top + front panel if wall-mounted)

$$S = \frac{K}{Rth}$$

K = enclosure thermal resistance per m²

For a metal enclosure:
- $K = 0.12$ with internal fan
- $K = 0.15$ without fan

Note: Do not use insulated enclosures, as they have a poor level of conductivity.

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives on base plates

Specific recommendations for mounting drives on base plates in a dust and damp proof enclosure or on a machine frame

Observe the mounting recommendations described on pages 158 and 159.

Power dissipated inside the enclosure

For drives	Dissipated power (1)	
	Mounted in the enclosure with no fan (2)	Mounted in the enclosure with a fan
	W	W
3-phase supply voltage: 380…480 V 50/60 Hz		
ATV 71P075N4Z	26	39
ATV 71PU15N4Z	28	41
ATV 71PU22N4Z	30	43
ATV 71PU30N4Z	35	65
ATV 71PU40N4Z	37	67
ATV 71PU55N4Z	40	95
ATV 71PU75N4Z	40	95

Specific recommendations for mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure

Drives on base plates can be mounted in a dust and damp proof enclosure in accordance with the following specific recommendations:

■ External ambient temperature (heatsink side, see page 28): -10…+40°C
■ Temperature inside the enclosure: +40°C for a switching frequency of 4 kHz, or +50°C for a switching frequency of 12 kHz
■ Remove the blanking cover from the top of the drive, see page 158.

Specific recommendations for mounting on a machine frame

Drives on base plates can also be mounted on a machine frame in accordance with the following specific recommendations:

■ Ambient temperature: -10…+40°C
■ Thermal resistance (Rth) of the frame greater than or equal to the thermal resistance of the kit for mounting in a dust and damp proof enclosure VW3 A980● (see page 28)
■ Aluminium machine frame; mounting on iron frame not recommended
■ Support area machined on the frame, to give a surface smoothness of 100 μm and unevenness of 3.2 μm maximum
■ Heatsink mounted in the centre of the support with a minimum thickness and a minimum cooling area, exposed to the open air (see table below).

Drives	Switching frequency	Minimum area		Minimum thickness
		With DC choke	With fan	
		m²	m²	mm
ATV 71P075N4Z …PU22N4Z	4 kHz	–	–	20
	12 kHz	0.60	0.70	20
ATV 71PU30N4Z, PU40N4Z	4 kHz	1.50	–	20
	12 kHz	2.00	1.50	20
ATV 71PU55N4Z, PU75N4Z	4 kHz	3.50	3.00	20
	12 kHz	5.40	5.00	20

(1) This value is given for operation at nominal load and for a switching frequency of 4 kHz. Add 7 W to this value for each additional option card.
(2) Add the dissipation of the DC choke, see page 81.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9   Characteristics: pages 10 to 17   References: pages 22 to 25   Dimensions: pages 108 to 133   Schemes: pages 134 to 151

166

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 1/IP 20 drives on base plates

Calculating the dimensions of the frame or the cold plate

Thermal resistance Rth of the drives (°C/W)

For drive	Rth (°C/W)
ATV 71P075N4Z	0.65
ATV 71PU15N4Z	0.36
ATV 71PU22N4Z	0.24
ATV 71PU30N4Z	0.21
ATV 71PU40N4Z	0.15
ATV 71HPU55N4Z	0.03
ATV 71PU75N4Z	0.02

Useful heat dissipation surface of the frame or the cold plate S (m²)

$$S = \frac{K}{Rth}$$ K = enclosure thermal resistance per m²

Mounting several drives on the same frame or the same cold plate

Determine the equivalent thermal resistance (Rthe) for all the drives:

$$\frac{1}{Rthe} = \frac{1}{Rth1} + \frac{1}{Rth2} + \frac{1}{Rth3} + ... + \frac{1}{Rthn}$$

Calculation example with three drives of 0.75 kW, 1.5 kW and 2.2 kW

$$\frac{1}{Rth} = \frac{1}{0,65} + \frac{1}{0,36} + \frac{1}{0,24}$$ Rth = 0.12 °C/W.

Variable speed drives for asynchronous motors

Altivar 71
UL Type 12/IP 54 drives

Mounting recommendations

Depending on the conditions in which the drive is to be used, its installation will require certain precautions and the use of appropriate accessories.
Install the unit vertically:
■ Do not place it close to heating elements
■ Leave sufficient free space to ensure that the air required for cooling purposes can circulate from the bottom to the top of the unit.

ATV 71W●●●N4

Mounting

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

168

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
UL Type 12/IP 54 drives
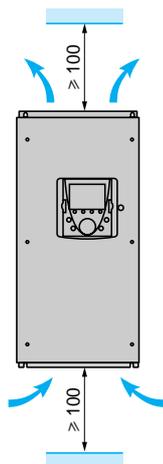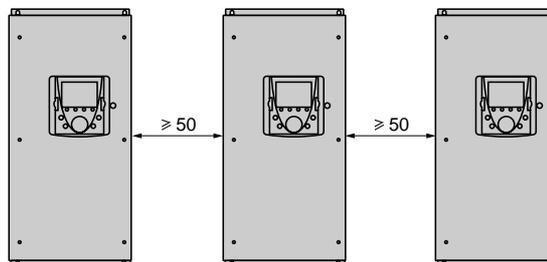
Derating curves

ATV 71W075N4…WD18N4
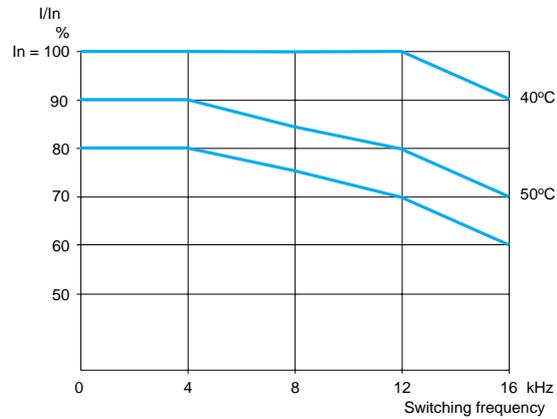
ATV 71WD22N4, WD30N4

ATV 71WD37N4…WD75N4

Telemecanique

Combinations

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
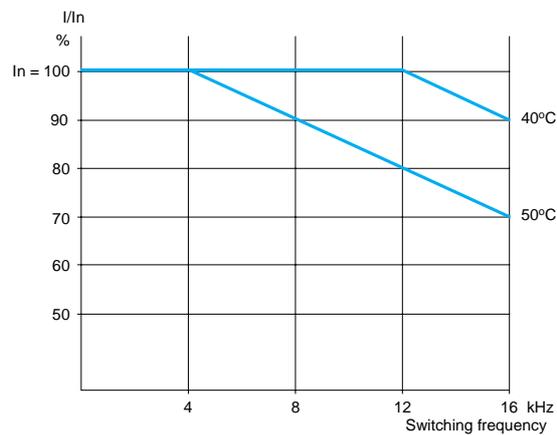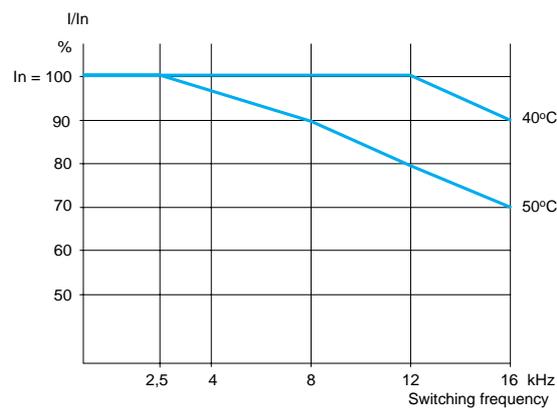
Compatible combinations of functions and applications

Applications	Hoisting	Lift	Material handling
Machines	Cranes, overhead cranes, gantries (vertical hoisting, translation, slewing), lifting platforms	Retrofit lifts up to 1.2 ms	Palletizers/depalletizers, carton packers, labelling machines, conveyors, roller tables
Motor control functions			
Flux vector control with and without sensor	■	■	■
2-point vector control	■		
Open-loop synchronous motor			
ENA system			
Voltage/frequency ratio			■
Output frequency 1000 Hz			
Motor overvoltage limiting	■	■	■
Application functions			
Differential bipolar reference	■		■
Reference delinearization (magnifying glass effect)	■		■
Frequency control input			
Operations on references (summing, subtraction, multiplication)			■
Brake control	■	■	■
Brake feedback via contact	■		
High-speed hoisting	■		
Load measurement	■	■	
Load sharing	■		■
Slack sling	■		
Limit switch management	■	■	■
S ramp	■	■	■
Current limiting			
Output contactor command		■	
Integrity check of output contactor		■	
Rescue following power failure		■	
Stop on thermal alarm		■	
Torque control			■
Torque limit			■
Motor fluxing	■		■
Parameter set switching	■	■	■
Motor switching	■		■
Position control via limit switches			■
Uncontrolled output cut			■
Torque or current limit detection			■
PID regulator			
Auto/man			
Reference saving			
+/- speed, single action button			
+/- speed, double action button	■		
+/- speed around a reference			
Traverse control			
Automatic catching a spinning load with speed detection (catch on the fly)			
Undervoltage management			
Fastest possible stop			

■ **Frequent or necessary use**

Packing	Textiles	Wood	High inertia	Process
Palletizers/depalletizers, carton packers, labelling machines	Weaving looms, carding frames, washing machines, spinners, drawing frames	Automatic lathes, saws, milling	Centrifuges, mixers, unbalanced machines (beam pumps, presses)	Sectional production lines (speed < 500 m/min) Example: building materials

Packing	Textiles	Wood	High inertia	Process
■	■	■	■	■
	■			
	■			
			■	
		■	■	
	■	■		
■	■	■	■	■
■				
	■			■
■	■			■
	■	■	■	
	■			■
	■		■	■
■				
■	■	■	■	■
■				
■				
				■
				■
	■			■
	■			■
	■			■
	■			
	■	■	■	
	■	■	■	■
		■	■	

⊕ Telemecanique

171

Functions

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Summary of functions

Remote graphic display terminal functions

Integrated 7-segment display terminal

Start-up

Configuration and settings

Operation

Maintenance, diagnostics

Controlling the drive

Application functions

Presentation:	Characteristics:	References:	Dimensions:	Schemes:
pages 4 to 9	pages 10 to 17	pages 22 to 25	pages 108 to 133	pages 134 to 151

172

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Summary of functions (continued)

Application functions (continued)

Presentation:	Characteristics:	References:	Dimensions:	Schemes:
pages 4 to 9	pages 10 to 17	pages 22 to 25	pages 108 to 133	pages 134 to 151

Telemecanique

173

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Remote graphic display terminal functions

This display terminal is attached to the front of the drive. It includes the integrated 7-segment display terminal for drives supplied without a graphic display terminal.

■ Description
□ Description of graphic display terminal

1 Graphic display unit:
  - 8 lines, 240 x 160 pixels
  - large digit display that can be read from 5 m away
  - bar chart display
2 Assignable function keys F1, F2, F3, F4:
  - dialogue functions: direct access, help screens, navigation
  - application functions: Local/Remote, preset speed
3 STOP/RESET key: local control of motor stopping/fault clearing
4 RUN key: local control of motor operation
5 Navigation button:
  - Press to save the current value (ENT)
  - Turn ± to increase or decrease the value, go to the next or previous line
6 FWD/REV key: reverses the direction of rotation of the motor
7 ESC key: aborts a value, parameter or menu to return to the previous option

Note: *keys 3, 4 and 6 can be used to control the drive directly.*

□ Description of graphic display unit

1 Display line. Its content can be configured; the factory settings show:
  - the drive status (e.g. RUN)
  - the active control channel (e.g. "Term": terminals)
  - the frequency reference
  - the current in the motor
2 Menu line. Indicates the current menu or submenu.
3 Area displaying menus, submenus, parameters, values, bar charts, in the form of a scrolling window, with a maximum of 5 lines.
  The line or value selected using the navigation button is displayed in reverse video (see example opposite).
4 Section displaying the functions assigned to the F1 to F4 keys and aligned with them, for example:
  - >>: Horizontal scrolling to the right, or proceeding to the next menu or submenu, or, in the case of a value, decreasing the value, displayed in reverse video (see example opposite).
  - <<: Horizontal scrolling to the left, or proceeding to the next menu or submenu, or, in the case of a value, increasing the value, displayed in reverse video
  - Quick: Rapid access to a parameter from any screen when the Quick function is displayed above the F4 key
  - HELP: Contextual help
  - Code: Displays the selected parameter code
  - Other functions (application functions) can be assigned to these keys via the 1.6 COMMAND menu.
5 ☐ : Means that this display window does not scroll further down.
  ▼ : Means that this display window can scroll further down.
6 ▲ : Means that this display window can scroll further up.
  ☐ : Means that this display window does not scroll further up.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

174

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

536646

ATV71HU22N4

2.2kW/3HP 380/480V

Config n˚1

↓

RUN	Term	+50.00Hz	5.4A
1. DRIVE MENU			☐

1.1 SYMPLY START

1.2 MONITORING

1.3 SETTINGS

1.4 MOTOR CONTROL

1.5 INPUTS / OUTPUTS CFG

| Code | << | >> | Quick ▼ |

— **1**

↓

RUN	Term	+43.33Hz	5.4A

— **2**

Motor speed ☐

1300 rpm

— **3**

Min=0		Max=1500
		Quick ☐

↓

RUN	Term	+0.00Hz	0A
MAIN MENU			☐

1. DRIVE MENU

2. LEVEL ACCESS

3. OPEN / SAVE AS

4. PASSWORD

5. LANGUAGE

| | << | >> | Quick ▼ |

— **4**

Remote graphic display terminal functions (continued)

■ **Navigation: accessing menus and parameters**
Structure of main menus:

1 Drive menu:

Menu type	Function
1.1 SIMPLY START	Simplified menu for a quick start
1.2 MONITORING	Displays current values for motor, inputs/outputs and communication (command words, status words, etc.)
1.3 SETTINGS	Accesses the adjustment parameters, which can be modified during operation
1.4 MOTOR CONTROL	Accesses the motor parameters, including adjustment of motor control profiles
1.5 INPUTS/OUTPUTS CFG	Configures the I/O and transforms signals
1.6 COMMAND	Configures the command and reference channels
1.7 APPLICATION FUNCT.	Configures the application functions (preset speeds, PID regulator, etc.)
1.8 FAULT MANAGEMENT	Configures the fault management process
1.9 COMMUNICATION	Configures the communication networks
1.10 DIAGNOSTICS	Provides diagnostics for motor and drive, integrated test procedures, fault log
1.11 IDENTIFICATION	Identifies the drive and the internal options
1.12 FACTORY SETTINGS	Restores factory settings (completely or by parameter group)
1.13 USER MENU	Accesses the parameters selected by the user
1.14 PROGRAMMABLE CARD	Accesses the parameters for the Controller Inside programmable card

2 Display line

3 Display screen: Displays values in the form of bar charts or digital values, depending on the extent of customization.

4 Main menu:

Menu type	Function
1. DRIVE MENU	See above (**1** Drive menu)
2. ACCESS LEVEL	4 access levels: basic, limited, advanced, expert
3. OPEN/SAVE AS	Transfers files between the graphic display terminal and the drive
4. PASSWORD	Provides password protection for the configuration
5. LANGUAGE	Choice of 6 languages available (English, German, Spanish, French, Italian and Chinese)
6. MONITORING CONFIG.	Customizes the display line **2** and the display screen **3** (bar charts, digital values)
7. DISPLAY CONFIG.	Configures how parameters are displayed: customization, selection for User menu, visibility, accessibility

■ **Password**

Altivar 71 drives allow individual parameters to be selected for password protection. Rights can be set for save operations and for loading the configuration.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9	Characteristics: pages 10 to 17	References: pages 22 to 25	Dimensions: pages 108 to 133	Schemes: pages 134 to 151

Ⓣ Telemecanique

175

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Integrated 7-segment display terminal

ATV 71●●●●M3, ATV 71HD11M3X, HD15M3X, ATV 71H075N4…HD15N4 drives can be supplied without a graphic display terminal. In this case, they are equipped with an integrated 7-segment display terminal.
ATV 71P●●●N4Z drives are equipped as standard with an integrated 7-segment display terminal.
This can be used to:
□ Display status and faults
□ Access and modify parameters

Start-up

The Altivar 71 drive is supplied ready for use for most applications.
When the drive is switched on, the menus for setting the language and access level appear automatically.

■ **Simply Start menu**
By accessing the Simply Start menu directly it is possible to:
□ Pre-program the drive for an application:
  - Select the relevant macro-configuration
  - 2-wire/3-wire control
□ Benefit from optimum motor performance:
  - Enter data from the motor rating plate
  - Auto-tuning
□ Protect the motor by setting the drive's integrated electronic thermal overload relay

```
┌─────────────────────────────────┐
│ RUN    Term   +50.00Hz    5.4A   │
│        1.1 SIMPLY START     ▢    │
│ 2/3 wire control  :       2 wire │
│ Macro-configuration :  M. handling│
│ Standard mot. Freq.:     50Hz IEC│
│ Rated motor power :        2.2kW │
│ Rated motor volt.   :       400V │
│ Code │ << │ >> │Quick│▼│         │
└─────────────────────────────────┘
```
Simply Start menu

522151

Presentation: Characteristics: References: Dimensions: Schemes:
pages 4 to 9   pages 10 to 17   pages 22 to 25   pages 108 to 133   pages 134 to 151

176

Ⓣ Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Start-up (continued)

■ **Programming using macro-configurations**
Programming using macro-configurations offers the choice of seven options corresponding to the various business areas and applications:
□ Start/stop
□ Material handling
□ General use
□ Hoisting
□ PID regulation
□ Communication network connectivity
□ Master/slave applications
Choosing one of these macro-configurations automatically assigns the functions, parameters and I/O, even in the case of option cards. Although the configuration is preset, it can still be modified, if necessary.

The Start/stop macro-configuration is set as the factory configuration.
The preset functions for each macro-configuration are given in the table below.

Type of macro-configuration		Start/stop	Material handling	General use	Hoisting	PID regulation	Communication network connectivity	Master/slave application
Altivar 71 drive I/O								
AI1		Ref. 1 channel	Ref. 1 channel	Ref. 1 channel	Ref. 1 channel	PID reference	Ref. 2 channel Ref. 1 channel by bus	Ref. 1 channel
AI2		Not assigned	Sum ref. 2	Sum ref. 2	Not assigned	PID feedback	Not assigned	Torque ref. 2 channel
AO1		Motor freq.	Motor freq.	Motor freq.	Motor freq.	Motor freq.	Motor freq.	Signed torque
2-wire	LI1	Forward	Forward	Forward	Forward	Forward	Forward	Forward
	LI2	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse
	LI3	Not assigned	2 preset speeds	JOG	Fault reset	PID integral reset	Ref 2 switch	Trq/spd switching
	LI4	Not assigned	4 preset speeds	Fault reset	Ext fault	PID 2 preset ref.	Fault reset	Fault reset
	LI5	Not assigned	8 preset speeds	Torque limit	Not assigned	PID 4 preset ref.	Not assigned	Not assigned
	LI6	Not assigned	Fault reset	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
3-wire	LI1	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop	Stop
	LI2	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
	LI3	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse	Reverse
	LI4	Not assigned	2 preset speeds	JOG	Fault reset	PID integral reset	Ref 2 switch	Trq/spd switching
	LI5	Not assigned	4 preset speeds	Fault reset	Ext fault	PID 2 preset ref.	Fault reset	Fault reset
	LI6	Not assigned	8 preset speeds	Torque limit	Not assigned	PID 4 preset ref.	Not assigned	Not assigned
R1		Faulty	Faulty	Faulty	Faulty	Faulty	Faulty	Faulty
R2		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Brk control	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
I/O extension card I/O								
2-wire LI7		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
3-wire LI7		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
LI8 to LI14		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
LO1 to LO4		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
R3/R4		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
AI3, AI4		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
RP		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned
AO2		Motor current	Motor current	Motor current	Motor current	Motor current	Motor current	Motor current
AO3		Not assigned	Signed torque	Not assigned	Signed torque	PID error	Not assigned	Motor freq.
Graphic display terminal keys								
F1 key		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Control via graphic display terminal	Not assigned
F2, F3, F4 keys		Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned	Not assigned

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Start-up (continued)

■ **MONITORING menu**
The MONITORING menu can be used to display commands, the operation of the motor and the application via the drive, its I/O or the communication network connections.

RUN	Term	+43.33Hz	5.4A
	1.2 MONITORING		
Frequency Ref.	:		43.3 Hz
Motor current	:		5.4 A
Motor speed	:		1300 rpm
Motor thermal state :			80 %
Drv thermal state	:		85 %
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

Displaying physical values

RUN	Term	+50.00Hz	80A
	Logic input map		

1
0   PR LI1 LI2 LI3 LI4 LI5 LI6

1
0   LI7 LI8 LI9 LI10 LI11 LI12 LI13 LI14

| | | << | >> | Quick ▼ |

Logic input map

RUN	Mod.	+50.00Hz	5.4A
	COMMUNICATION MAP		
Cmd channel	**:**		**Modbus**
Cmd Value	:		ABCD Hex
Active ref. channel :			CANopen
Frenquency ref.	:		+50.00 Hz
ETA status word	:		2153 Hex
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

Communication map

Configuration and settings

The SETTINGS menu can be used to configure all the drive's settings.
Activating a function automatically provides access to the related settings on the same screen (the application functions are described on pages 182 to 203).

RUN	Term	+50.00Hz	1250A
	1.3 SETTINGS		
Ramp increment :			0,01
Acceleration	:		3,00 s
Deceleration	:		3,00 s
Acceleration 2	:		5,00 s
Deceleration 2	:		5,00 s
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

Settings screen

RDY	Term	+0.00Hz	0.0A
	PRESET SPEEDS		
2 preset speeds	:		LI3
4 preset speeds	:		LI4
8 preset speeds	:		LI5
16 preset speeds	:		NO
Preset speed 2	:		10.0 Hz
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

Setting a function

RDY	Term	+0.00Hz	0A
	ACCELERATION		

9.51 s

Min=0,01		Max=9999
	<<	>>	Quick ▼

Configuring a value

Operation

The display screen appears automatically every time the drive is turned on.
There are various possibilities:
■ One or two bar charts are displayed.
■ One, two or five digital values are displayed.

RUN	Term	+43.33Hz	5.4A
	Motor speed		

1300 rpm

Min=0		Max=1500
		Quick

1 bar chart

DEC	Term	+38.0Hz	10A
	Output frequency		

+45.1 Hz

| | << | >> | Quick ▼ |

1 digital value

RUN	Term	+43.33Hz	5.4A
	1.2 MONITORING		
Frequency Ref.	:		43.3 Hz
Motor current	:		5.4 A
Motor speed	:		1300 rpm
Motor thermal state :			80 %
Drv thermal state	:		85 %
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

5 digital values

Presentation:	Characteristics:	References:	Dimensions:	Schemes:
pages 4 to 9	pages 10 to 17	pages 22 to 25	pages 108 to 133	pages 134 to 151

178

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
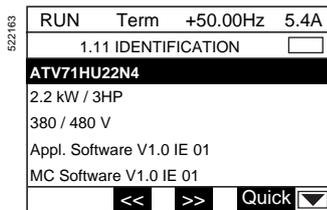
Maintenance, diagnostics

New functions have been added to the Altivar 71 drive to enable it to provide quick and simple maintenance, ultimately boosting productivity:

■ Response to faults or alarms
It is possible to use the alarm management or drive operation configuration functions to take corrective actions before stopping the machine.

■ Fault log and help
When a fault occurs, a help screen is available to quickly identify the cause of the fault.
When a fault occurs, values such as speed, current, thermal state and timer are saved and restored in the fault log.
The last 8 faults are stored.

SCF1	Term	+50.00Hz	0.0A
	FAULT HISTORY		

Short circuit
Overcurrent
External FLT
Overvoltage
Undervoltage

| Help | | Quick | ▼ |

Fault log

SCF1	Term	+50.00Hz	0.0A
	MOTOR SHORT CIRCUIT		

Check the connection cables
and the motor insulation.

Perform the diagnostic test.

| | | Quick | ▼ |

Troubleshooting screen

■ IDENTIFICATION menu
The IDENTIFICATION menu can be used to display the relevant serial numbers and software versions, thereby helping to manage the equipment base. This information, also available with the PowerSuite software workshop, can be exported to other database-type software applications.

RUN	Term	+50.00Hz	5.4A
	1.11 IDENTIFICATION		

ATV71HU22N4
2.2 kW / 3HP
380 / 480 V
Appl. Software V1.0 IE 01
MC Software V1.0 IE 01

| << | >> | Quick | ▼ |

Identification screen

■ Test functions
The Altivar 71 drive includes the following test functions:
□ Identifying any motor short-circuit before start-up
□ Running, via the graphic display terminal or PowerSuite software workshop, automatic procedures during maintenance operations to test:
- the motor
- the drive power components

The test results are shown on the graphic display terminal or using the PowerSuite software workshop.
It is also possible to write and read messages in the drive using the graphic display terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop.

RUN	Term	+50.00Hz	5.4A
	SERVICE MESSAGE		

For technical support,
dial 32 12 75

| | | Quick | ▼ |

Example of a customized message

■ Oscilloscope function
The Altivar 71 drive has an oscilloscope function, which produces traces that can be viewed using the PowerSuite software workshop.
The PowerSuite software workshop can also be used to carry out remote diagnostics via modem.

Functions *(continued)*

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 71

Controlling the drive

■ Via the drive I/O
Control signals are transmitted via cable to the I/O. Functions are assigned to logic inputs, analog inputs, etc.
A logic input can be assigned to more than one function. This means that two functions can be controlled using a single signal, thereby limiting the number of inputs required.

The Altivar 71 drive I/O can be configured independently from each other.
For instance,
□ A time delay can be applied when it comes to reading the logic inputs, so as to avoid any bounce-back from certain switches.
□ Transforming incoming signals on the analog inputs can help the drive fully adapt to the control devices and applications:
  - Minimum and maximum values for the input signal
  - Input filtering in order to eliminate unwanted interference from the signals received
  - Magnifying glass effect through delinearizing the input signal in order to increase the precision with small amplitude signals
  - "Pedestal" and "Deadband" functions for signals in order to prevent low speed operations which can have an adverse effect on the application
  - "Mid-point" function, which can be used from a unipolar input signal to obtain a bipolar output signal to control the speed and direction of rotation
□ Transforming analog outputs which transfer information sent by the drive to other devices (display units, drives, PLCs, etc.):
  - voltage or current output signal
  - minimum and maximum values for the output signal
  - output signal filtering

Logic outputs can be delayed on activation and deactivation.
The output state can also be configured when the signal is active.
The frequency control signals are also transformed by the drive:
□ signal frequency minimum and maximum values (30 kHz on the extended I/O card's RP input, 300 kHz maximum on the encoder interface card input).

■ Via the remote graphic display terminal
The rotation commands and references (torque, speed or PID) can be controlled via the graphic display terminal. Some application functions can also be assigned to the function keys F1, F2, F3 and F4 on the graphic display terminal. It is possible to manage a change in command and/or reference source (bumpless function) in different ways.
For example: two options are offered when switching from control via the terminals to control via the graphic display terminal:
□ stop the Altivar 71 drive, or
□ continue operation with a copy of the direction of rotation and reference

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

180

Telemecanique

Functions *(continued)*

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Controlling the drive (continued)

■ **Via a communication network**

□ **I/O profile**

The I/O profile, which is quick and easy to use, can be used to control the Altivar 71 drive via the communication network, in the same way as via the I/O terminals.
When commands are sent via a network they are written in a command word.
This word behaves like virtual terminals containing logic inputs.
Application functions can be assigned to the bits of this word. More than one function can be assigned to the same bit.

The commands and references can come from different sources, such as the terminals, graphic display terminal or communication networks.
Each source can be set or switched individually using logic inputs or command word bits.

The I/O profile is supported by all integrated communication ports (Modbus, CANopen), as well as by all the communication cards available (Ethernet TCP/IP, Fipio, Profibus DP, etc.).

□ **CiA DSP 402 profile ("Device Profile Drives and Motion Control")**

This profile, from the CiA (CAN in Automation) organization, describes standard functions, parameters and operation for variable speed drives.
This standard is an extension of the Drivecom profile. The Altivar 71 drive complies with the CiA DSP 402 standard and it supports the following 2 modes in this profile: separate and not separate.

Separate mode

The Start/Stop commands and references can come from different sources.
E.g. the speed reference is transmitted by the Ethernet TCP/IP network and the Start/Stop commands by the logic signals wired on the terminals.

Each source can be set or switched individually using logic inputs or command word bits.

Not separate mode

The Start/Stop commands and references (speed, torque, PID, etc.) come from the same source (e.g. CANopen bus).

It is possible to replace this source by another one, using a logic input or command word bit.

The CiA DSP 402 profile is supported by all integrated communication ports (Modbus, CANopen), as well as by all the communication cards available (Ethernet TCP/IP, Fipio, Profibus DP, etc.).

□ **ODVA profile**

The ODVA profile is supported by the DeviceNet communication card.

Presentation:	Characteristics:	References:	Dimensions:	Schemes:
pages 4 to 9	pages 10 to 17	pages 22 to 25	pages 108 to 133	pages 134 to 151

Telemecanique

181

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Application functions

■ 2-wire control
This function is used to control the direction of operation by means of a stay-put contact.
It is enabled by means of 1 or 2 logic inputs (non-reversing or reversing).

This function is suitable for all non-reversing and reversing applications.
3 operating modes are possible:
□ Detection of the state of the logic inputs
□ Detection of a change in state of the logic inputs
□ Detection of the state of the logic inputs with forward operation always having priority over reverse

LI1: Forward
LIx: Reverse
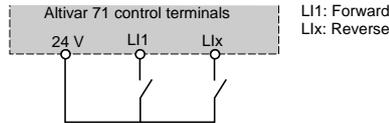
Wiring diagram for 2-wire control

■ 3-wire control
This function is used to control the operating and stopping direction by means of pulsed contacts.
It is enabled by means of 2 or 3 logic inputs (non-reversing or reversing).

This function is suitable for all non-reversing and reversing applications.

LI1: Stop
LI2: Forward
LIx: Reverse
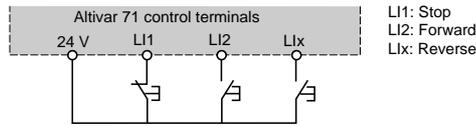
Wiring diagram for 3-wire control
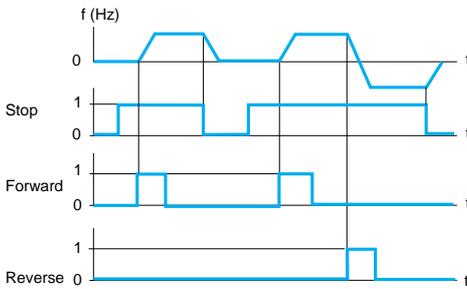
Example of 3-wire control operation

■ Phase rotation
This function can be used to reverse the direction of rotation without modifying the drive wiring.

Ramp settings

■ Ramps
□ Acceleration and deceleration ramp times
This function is used to define acceleration and deceleration ramp times according to the application and the machine dynamics.
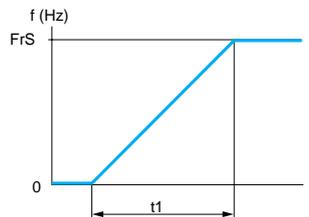
Linear acceleration ramp
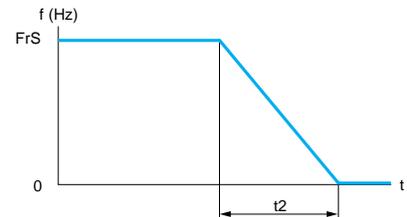
Linear deceleration ramp

FrS: Nominal motor frequency
t1: Acceleration time
t2: Deceleration time
t1 and t2 can be set independently from 0.01 to 9999 s
(according to one of the following ramp increments: 0.01 s, 0.1 s or 1 s)
Factory setting: 3 s.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9
Characteristics: pages 10 to 17
References: pages 22 to 25
Dimensions: pages 108 to 133
Schemes: pages 134 to 151

182

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

□ Acceleration and deceleration ramp profile
Used to gradually increase the output frequency starting from a speed reference, following a linear profile or a preset profile.

In the case of applications involving handling, packaging and passenger transport, the use of S ramps takes up mechanical play and eliminates jolts, and also limits "non-following" of speed during rapid transient operation of high-inertia machines. Selecting "linear", "S", "U" or customized profiles assigns both the acceleration and deceleration ramps.

S ramps	U ramps	Customized ramps
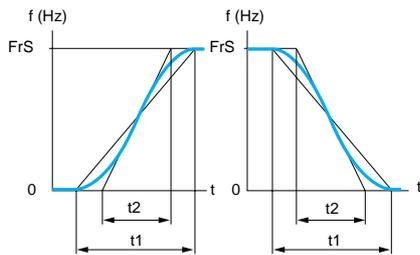
FrS: Nominal motor frequency
t1: Ramp time set
t2 = 0.6 x t1
The curve coefficient is fixed.
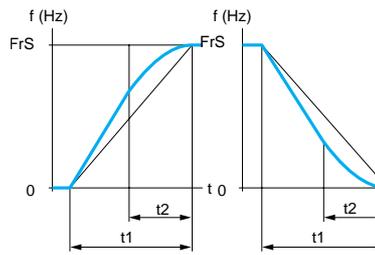
FrS: Nominal motor frequency
t1: Ramp time set
t2 = 0.5 x t1
The curve coefficient is fixed.
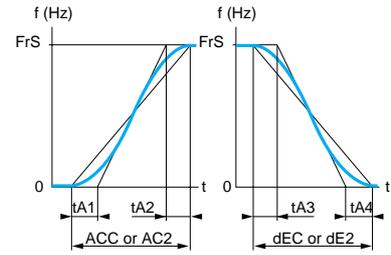
FrS: Nominal motor frequency
tA1: Adjustable between 0 and 100% (of ACC or AC2)
tA2: Adjustable between 0 and (100% - tA1) (of ACC or AC2)
tA3: Adjustable between 0 and 100% (of dEC or dE2)
tA4: Adjustable between 0 and (100% - tA3) (of dEC or dE2)
ACC: Acceleration ramp 1 time
AC2: Acceleration ramp 2 time
dEC: Deceleration ramp 1 time
dE2: Deceleration ramp 2 time
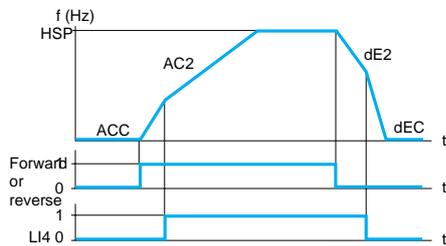
Example of switching using logic input LI4

Acceleration 1 (ACC) and deceleration 1 (dEC):
- Adjustment 0.01 to 9999 s
- Factory setting 3 s
Acceleration 2 (AC2) and deceleration 2 (dE2):
- Adjustment 0.01 to 9999 s
- Factory setting 5 s
HSP: High speed.

□ Ramp switching
This function is used to switch two acceleration and deceleration ramp times, which can be adjusted separately.
Ramp switching can be enabled by:
- a logic input
- a frequency threshold
- a combination of the logic input (or a command word bit) and the frequency threshold
- a command word bit

This function is suitable for:
- material handling with smooth starting and approach
- machines with fast steady state speed correction

□ Automatic adaptation of deceleration ramp
Used to automatically adapt the deceleration ramp if the initial setting is too low when the load inertia is taken into account. This function prevents the drive from locking in the event of an overbraking fault.
When this function is active and a short deceleration time has been set, the drive optimizes the motor power supply in order to achieve a high braking torque.

This function is suitable for all applications not requiring precise stopping and not using braking resistors.

Automatic adaption must be disabled for machines with a stop position on a ramp and using a braking resistor. This function is automatically disabled if the brake sequence is configured.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

RDY	Term	+0.00Hz	0.0A
	PRESET SPEEDS		☐
2 preset speeds	:		LI3
4 preset speeds	:		LI4
8 preset speeds	:		LI5
16 preset speeds	:		NO
Preset speed 2	:		10.0 Hz
Code	<<	>>	Quick ▼

Preset speed settings

■ **Preset speeds**
This can be used to switch preset speed references.
Choose between 2, 4, 8 or 16 preset speeds.
It is enabled by means of 1, 2, 3 or 4 logic inputs.
Preset speeds can be set in increments of 0.1 Hz, from 0 Hz to 500 Hz or 1000 Hz, depending on the rating.

This function is suitable for material handling and machines with several operating speeds.

The speed achieved with the LI3 and LI4 inputs at 0 is LSP or reference speed, resulting from the operations carried out on the references.

Factory settings:

1st speed: LSP
(low speed or speed reference)

2nd speed: 10 Hz

3rd speed: 15 Hz

4th speed: 20 Hz
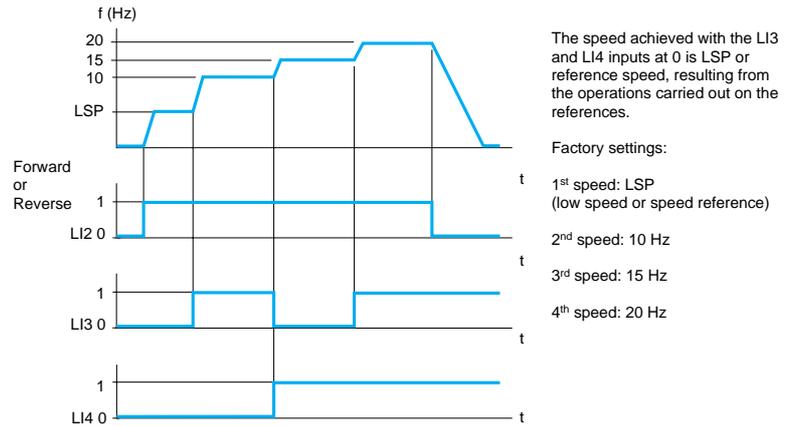
Example of operation with 4 preset speeds and 2 logic inputs

■ **Jog operation**
This can be used for pulse operation with minimum ramp times (0.1 s), limited speed reference and minimum time between 2 pulses.
It is enabled by 1 logic input and pulses given by the operating direction command.

This function is suitable for machines with product insertion in manual mode (e.g. gradual movement of the mechanism during maintenance operations).

Speed reference:
Adjustable from 0 to 10 Hz, factory setting 10 Hz.

JGt: minimum time between 2 pulses, which can be set between 0.5 and 2 s.
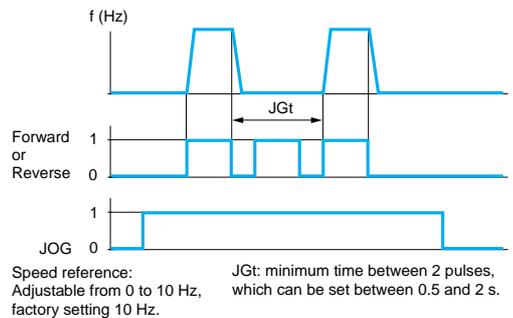
Example of jog operation

■ **Limiting low speed operating time**
The motor is stopped automatically after a period of operation at low speed (LSP) with a zero reference and a run command present.
This time can be set between 0.1 and 999.9 seconds (0 corresponds to an unlimited time). Factory setting 0 s. The motor restarts automatically on the ramp when the reference reappears or if the run command is interrupted and then re-established.

Function suitable for automatic Stops/Starts.

Telemecanique

Functions *(continued)*

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 71

■ **Motor control types**
□ **Flux vector control with sensor (FVC)**
In current mode, this control type can be used to obtain the best static and dynamic torque performance.

□ **Sensorless flux vector control**
In voltage mode, this control type can be used with a single motor or motors connected in parallel.
In current mode, this profile performs better than the previous type, but it cannot supply power to motors connected in parallel.

□ **2-point vector control**
The zone for operating at constant power can be optimized by defining an additional point in the control profile.
This function should be used with motors offering a two-part defluxing zone.
It can be used to limit the voltage at the motor terminals when the motor is being powered by a high line supply.

□ **Voltage/frequency ratio**
This control type is particularly suitable for special motors (high-speed motors, synchronized asynchronous motors, etc.). The ratio can be adjusted by 2 or 5 points and used to achieve output frequencies of up to 1000 Hz.

□ **ENA system**
This profile is reserved for unbalanced machines (presses, etc.). It can be used to reduce mechanical stress, power consumption and avoid the use of braking resistors.

□ **Synchronous motor**
This control type is exclusively reserved for controlling open loop synchronous permanent magnet motors with sinusoidal electromotive force (EMF).

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ Using an incremental encoder
The Altivar 71 drive uses encoder feedback to:
□ Operate in FVC closed loop control mode. In addition to the torque performance and speed accuracy it provides, the speed feedback can also be used to manage overspeed and slipping protection.
□ Improve the steady state speed accuracy and/or manage overspeed and slipping protection in the other control types (FVC open loop control mode and U/f ratio)
□ Manage only overspeed and slipping protection

■ Encoder tests
The Altivar 71 drive can detect encoder signal loss, as well as a mechanical break in the coupling between encoder and motor.

■ Limiting motor overvoltage
The Altivar 71 drive inverter bridge control can be used to limit overvoltage in the motor terminals, which is double the voltage level in the DC bus (Stressless PWM). This function is useful in cases where long lengths of cabling, rewound motors or motors in a low isolation class are involved.

■ Auto tune
Auto-tuning can be performed:
□ using a dialogue tool (graphical display terminal, PowerSuite software workshop, integrated 7-segment display terminal)
□ via a communication network
□ automatically every time the drive is switched on
□ by enabling a logic input

Auto-tuning is used to optimize application performance.
In Flux Vector Control mode (FVC closed loop and FVC open loop with current control), certain parameters are measured periodically.
Saving the motor thermal state can help to compensate exactly for the motor resistors, even after the drive has been switched off.

■ Switching frequency, noise reduction
The switching frequency setting permits a reduction in the noise generated by the motor for any application requiring a low level of noise.
The switching frequency is modulated randomly in order to avoid resonance.
This function can be disabled if it causes instability.
High frequency switching of the intermediate DC voltage can be used to supply the motor with a current wave that has little harmonic distortion.
The switching frequency can be adjusted during operation to reduce the noise generated by the motor.
Value: 1 to 16 kHz; factory setting 2.5 or 4 kHz, depending on the rating.

■ Motor fluxing
This can be used to obtain rapid high torque on start-up; magnetic flux needs to be already established in the motor.
There is a choice between open loop or closed loop operation.

In continuous mode, the drive automatically establishes the flux when it is powered up.

In non-continuous mode:
□ If a logic input or command word bit is assigned to the motor fluxing command, flux is established when the command is confirmed.
□ If neither a logic input nor a command word bit has been assigned, or if the latter are not active when a run command is given, fluxing occurs when the motor starts.

Fluxing is accelerated if a current higher than the nominal motor current is applied, then it is set to the value of the motor magnetizing current.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

186

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
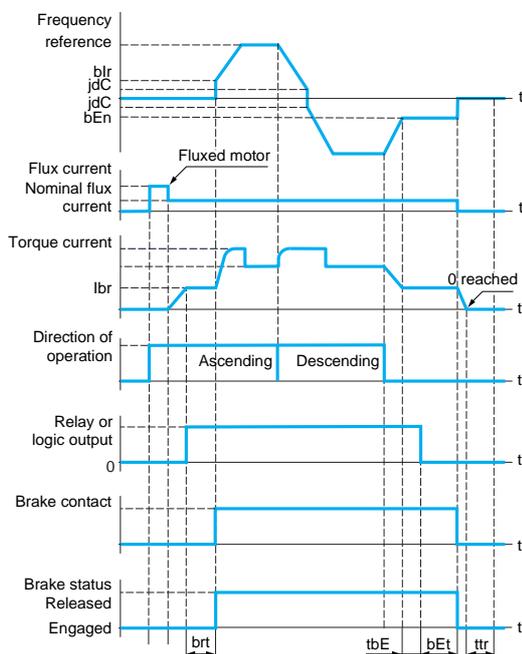
Open loop vertical movement

bEn: Brake engage frequency
bEt: Brake engage time
bIr: Initialization of ramp once the "brake release" time (brt) has expired
brt: Brake release time
Ibr: Brake release current
JdC: Reverse jump
tbE: Brake engage time
ttr: Restart time

Note: *In open loop mode, feedback from an incremental encoder can be connected to the drive in order to directly detect overspeed and slipping.*

■ **Brake control**
This can be used to manage control of an electromagnetic brake in synchronization with starting and stopping the motor to avoid jolts and load slipping.
The brake control sequence is managed by the drive.

□ **Movement type**
The Altivar 71 drive adapts the brake control operation to the type of movement, whether vertical or horizontal, in order to achieve maximum torque performance and eliminate jolts.

□ **Brake feedback via contact**
By connecting a brake contact to the drive, it is possible to detect brake faults.
If the brake status does not match the relevant control (the contact must be open for a released brake), the drive locks when a fault occurs.

□ **Brake release pulse**
This can be used to set the torque for brake release when ascending (forward) or two release thresholds (one for ascending and the other for descending).

This function is only available for vertical movements.

□ **Brake engage on reversal of operating direction**
To prevent the speed from passing through zero when reversing the direction of rotation, the drive firstly requires the brake to be engaged at the end of deceleration and then for it to be released before accelerating in the other direction of rotation.

□ **Brake engage request time delay**
In the case of slewing movements, this function can be used, at the end of deceleration, to control how the brake is engaged when the torsional stress being exerted on the machine structure is zero.

□ **Automatic DC injection**
In the case of a horizontal movement, the DC injection at the end of deceleration can be used to prevent jolting when the brake is being engaged.

This function is only available for horizontal movements.

■ **Limit switch management**
This can be used to manage the operation of one or two limit switches
(with 1 or 2 operating directions).
Each limit (forward, reverse) is associated with a logic input. The type of stop that occurs on detection of a limit can be configured as a stop on ramp, freewheel or fast stop.
Following a stop, the motor can restart in the opposite direction only.

■ **Slack sling**
This is used to adapt the motor speed to the load depending on the minimum configured torque, either in speed reference mode or in current limiting mode.
A logic output can be assigned to this function to indicate the load value in relation to the configured torque value.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

187

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ High-speed hoisting

This can be used to optimize cycle times for hoisting movements when the load is zero or small.

It allows operation at constant power (motor defluxing beyond the nominal motor frequency) in order to achieve a higher speed than the nominal speed, without exceeding the nominal motor current and thereby preventing the motor from overheating.

There are 2 possible operating modes:

□ Speed reference mode: The maximum permitted speed is calculated by the drive at an imposed speed step so that the drive can measure the load.
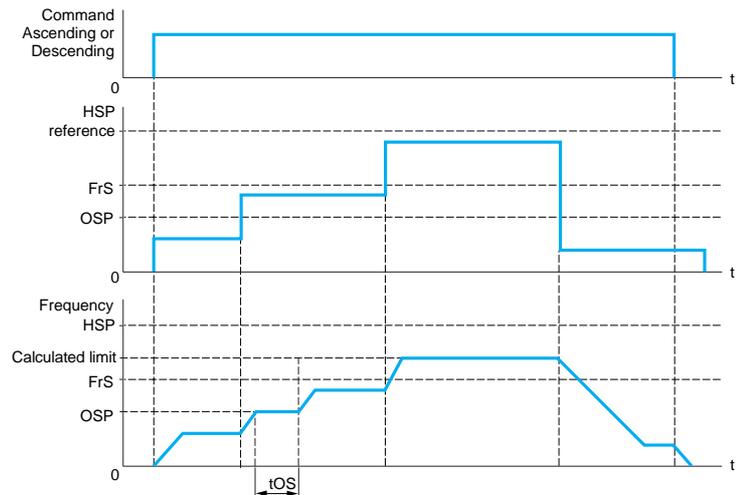
Speed reference mode

FrS: Nominal motor frequency
HSP: High speed parameter
OSP: Adjustable speed step for load measurement
tOS: Load measuring time
Two parameters can be used to reduce the speed calculated by the drive, for ascending and descending.

□ Current limiting mode: The maximum permitted speed is the speed at which the current is limited in the motor quadrant, ascending only. For descending, operation is always based on speed reference mode.
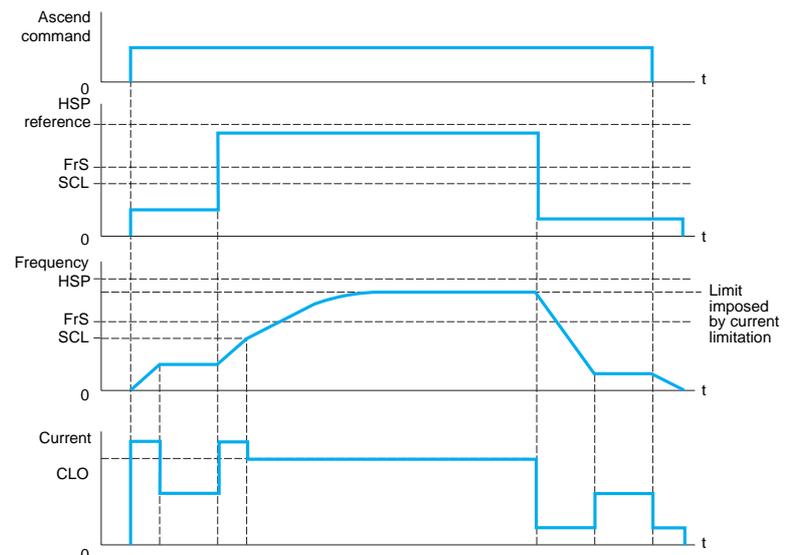
Current limiting mode

CLO: Current limitation for high speed-function
FrS: Nominal motor frequency
HSP: High speed parameter
SCL: Adjustable speed threshold above which current limitation is active

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

188

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
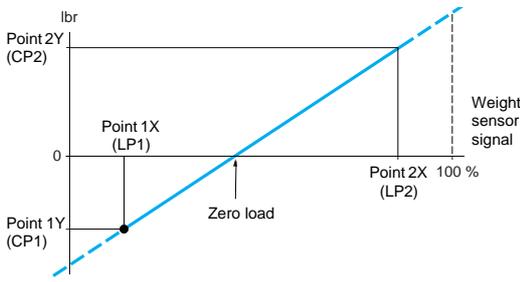
CP1, CP2, LP1, LP2: weight sensor calibration points

This curve can represent a weight sensor on a lift winch, where a zero load is exerted on the motor when the load in the cabin is not zero.

LbC: Load correction (Hz)

Load sharing

Output contactor control and integrity check

■ External weight measurement
This function uses the information supplied by a weight sensor via an analog input (usually a 4-20 mA signal) to adapt the current (Ibr) of the Brake logic control function.

Function suitable for applications involved in:
□ measuring the total weight of a hoisting winch and its load
□ measuring the total weight of a lift winch, the cabin and counterweight.

The current (Ibr) is adapted according to the curve opposite.

■ Load sharing
This function can be used for applications where several motors are mechanically linked in order to balance the loads of the different motors by adjusting the speed according to the torque on each motor.

■ Output contactor control and integrity check

□ Control
This allows the drive to control a contactor located between the drive and the motor.
The request to close the contactor is made when a run command appears.
The request to open the contactor is made when there is no current in the motor.

Note: *If a DC injection braking function has been configured it should not be left operating too long in stop mode, as the contactor only opens at the end of braking.*

□ Integrity check
This check is carried out by connecting a volt-free contact on each contactor to one of the drive's logic inputs.
The corresponding logic input should be at 1 when there is no run command and at 0 during operation.
When there is any inconsistency, the drive locks in fault mode if the output contactor does not close (LIx = 1) or gets stuck (LIx = 0). The time delay for when the drive locks in fault mode can be adjusted.

These sequences are commonly used in lift applications.
In order to increase the safety level and reduce the amount of maintenance work, it is recommended that the Altivar 71 drive's integrated "Power Removal" safety function is used.
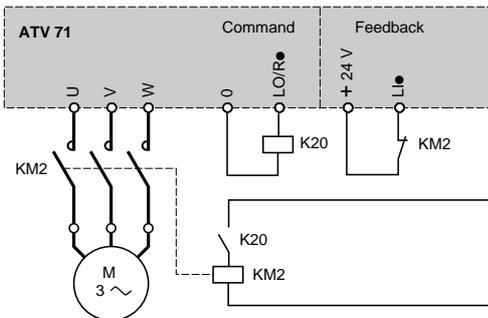
■ Stop on thermal alarm
This can be used to:
□ Allow a movement to end before examining a thermal fault. There are two adjustable thresholds used to define the thermal state level which, when exceeded, makes a machine stop.
□ Prevent a new run command from being accepted as long as the drive and motor temperatures are not less than 100%.

Function suitable for lift applications: it can prevent people getting trapped if a lift gets stuck between two floors.

■ Evacuation following power failure
This can be used to control the reduced speed engine with a reduced voltage supply (220 V ⏦, for example: uninterruptible power supply (UPS)), by preserving torque performance.

Function suitable for lift applications: When there is a power failure, it facilitates the evacuation of people trapped in a lift stuck between two floors.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

189

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

RDY   Term   +0.00Hz   0.0A
            +/- SPEED
+ speed assign.:   LI3
- speed assign. :   LI4
Ref. saved   :   RAM

Code   Quick ▼

+/- speed function settings

■ **Uncontrolled output cut**

It is possible to configure output phase loss protection, which will allow the drive or motor circuit to be broken without the drive becoming locked in fault mode and facilitate a smooth restart after the motor has been reconnected. The output phase loss may also lock the drive, depending on the configuration.

■ **+/- speed**

Used to increase or decrease a speed reference by means of 1 or 2 logic inputs, with or without the last reference being saved (motorized potentiometer function). This function is suitable for centralized control of a machine with several sections operating in one direction or for control by a handling crane pendant control station with two operating directions.

Two types of operation are available:
□ Use of single action buttons: 2 logic inputs are required in addition to the operating direction(s).
□ Use of double action buttons: only 1 logic input assigned to + speed is required.

Use of single action buttons: 2 logic inputs are required in addition to the operating direction(s).
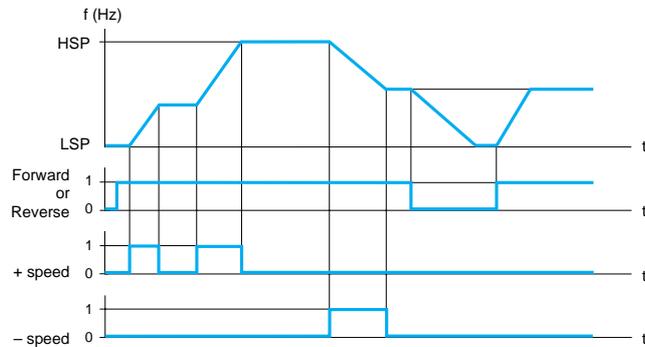
PV : low speed, HSP: high speed
Example of "+/- speed" with 2 logic inputs, single action buttons and reference saving

Use of double action buttons: only 1 logic input assigned to + speed is required.

Logic inputs:

a and c: 1st press
b and d: 2nd press
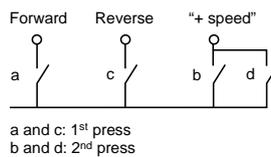
	Released (- speed)	**1st press** (speed maintained)	**2nd press** (+ speed)
Forward button	–	a	a and b
Reverse button	–	c	c and d
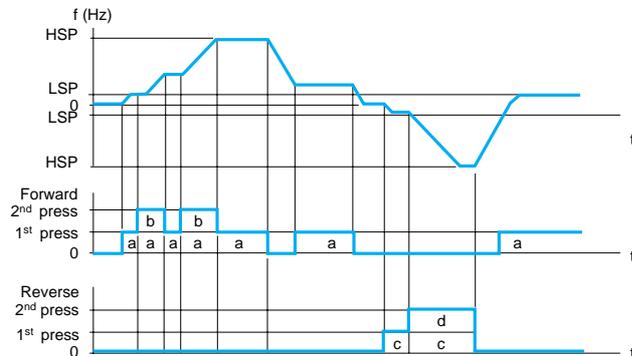
PV : low speed, HSP: high speed
Example with double action buttons and 1 logic input
Note: *This type of +/- speed control is incompatible with 3-wire control.*

Presentation: pages 4 to 9   Characteristics: pages 10 to 17   References: pages 22 to 25   Dimensions: pages 108 to 133   Schemes: pages 134 to 151

190   Ⓣ Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

□ **Reference saving**
This function is associated with "+/- speed" control.
This can be used for reading and saving the last speed reference prior to the loss of the run command or line supply. The saved reference is applied the next time a run command is received.

□ **+/- speed around a reference**
The reference is given by Fr1 or Fr1b, including, if relevant, the summing, subtraction and multiplication functions, as well as the preset speeds.
During the run command the drive goes to the reference, following the acceleration and deceleration ramps (pressing +/- speed makes the speed vary around this reference according to acceleration ramp 2 and deceleration ramp 2).
+ or – speed variation around the reference is limited to a percentage of the reference (SRP parameter). When operation has stopped, the amended reference is not saved.
The maximum total reference is always limited by high speed (HSP parameter) and the minimum reference (LSP parameter).

Example of +/- speed around a 2-wire control reference

■ **Spooling**
□ **Traverse control**
Function for winding reels of thread (in textile applications)
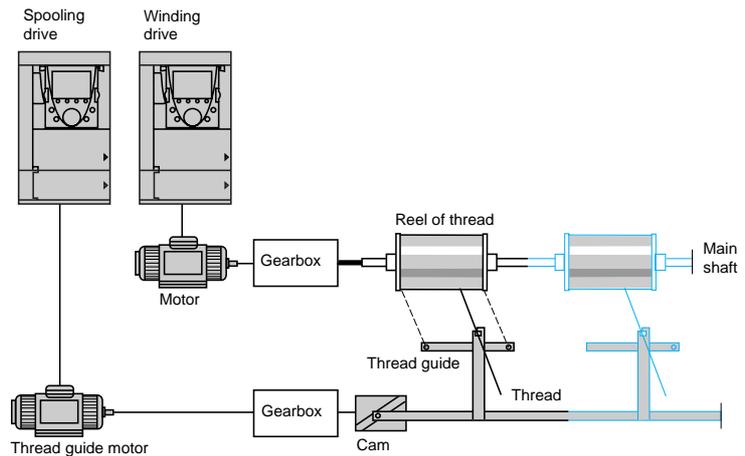
The cam rotation speed must follow a precise profile to ensure a steady, compact, linear reel is obtained.
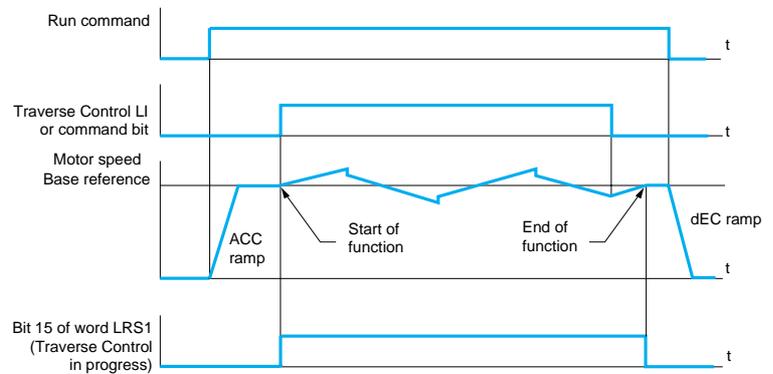
A function can also be used to reduce the base reference as the reel gets larger.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

191

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

□ **Counter Wobble**

Traverse Control master drive

Counter Wobble slave drive

CLO

SnC

Synchronization

Winding motor

Gearbox

Reel of thread

Main shaft

Thread guide

Thread guide motor

Gearbox

Cam
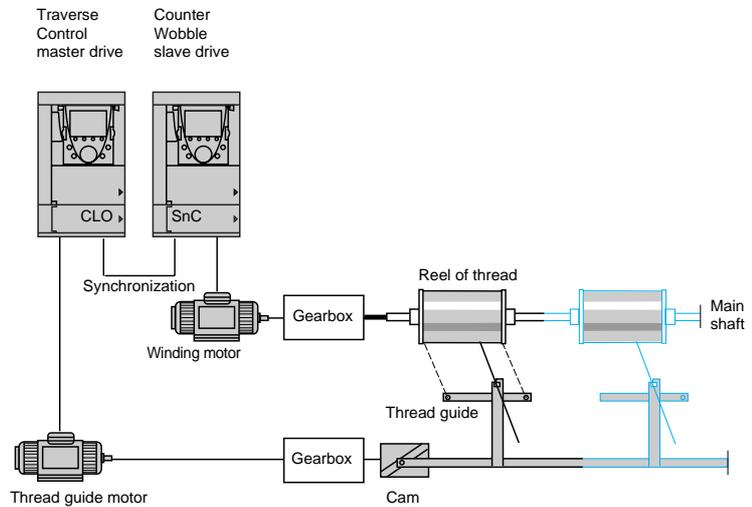
The Counter Wobble function is used in certain applications to obtain a constant thread tension when the Traverse Control function is producing considerable variations in speed on the thread guide motor.
The master drive controls the speed of the thread guide, while the slave drive controls the winding speed. The function assigns the slave a speed profile, which is in antiphase to that of the master. This means that synchronization is required, using one of the master's logic outputs and one of the slave's logic inputs.

Run command on master and slave

Traverse Control command on master and slave

Thread guide motor speed (master drive)

SnCI/SnCO synchronization

Winding motor speed (slave drive)
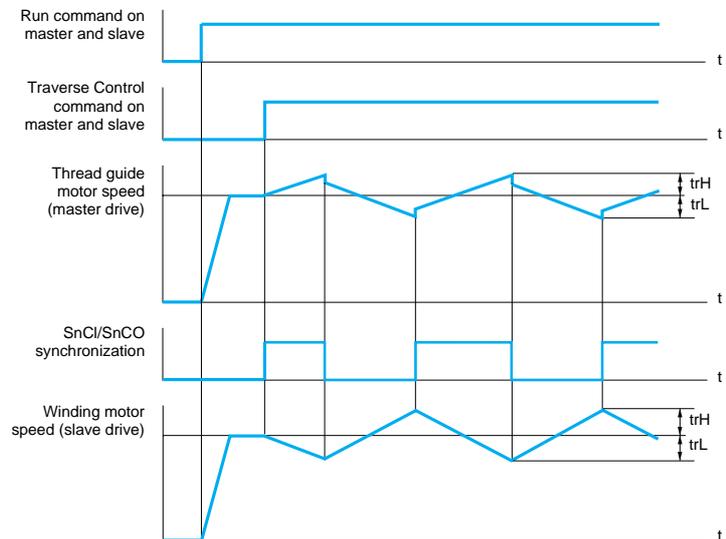
■ **Automatic catching of a spinning load with speed detection** ("catch on the fly")
This function is used to restart the motor smoothly after one of the following events, provided the run command is still present:
□ loss of line supply or power off
□ fault reset or automatic restart
□ freewheel stop

On disappearance of the event, the effective speed of the motor is detected in order to restart on a ramp at this speed and return to the reference speed.
The speed detection time can reach 0.5 s.
This function is automatically disabled if the brake sequence is configured.
This function is suitable for machines for which the motor speed loss is negligible during a power failure (high-inertia machines such as centrifuges, etc.).

Presentation: pages 4 to 9

Characteristics: pages 10 to 17

References: pages 22 to 25

Dimensions: pages 108 to 133

Schemes: pages 134 to 151

192

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ **Undervoltage management**
Depending on the application, it is possible to configure the Altivar 71's response to undervoltages or power failures.
If undervoltage occurs:
□ The Altivar 71 drive can continue operating with undervoltage levels up to -50% (adjustable threshold)
□ If the drive locks as a result, management of the fault relay can be configured (open or not). If the fault relay does not open an alarm is shown.

The Altivar 71 drive can also be configured to prevent the drive locking (using an alarm):
□ Controlled stop according to the type of stop configured
□ Deceleration based on a ramp which it automatically adapts to maintain the DC bus voltage, thereby preventing the drive from locking in fault mode
□ Instant IGBT (inverter bridge) loss followed by power supplied to the motor as soon as the line voltage has reappeared. This function can be used to prevent the Altivar 71 drive being reinitialized.

■ **Braking balance**
When several drives are connected on a common DC bus, this function can be used to adjust the braking thresholds in order to balance the braking powers between the various drives or braking units.

■ **Braking resistor thermal protection**
The Altivar 71 drive incorporates thermal protection for the braking resistor if it is not equipped with a thermal switch. If the resistor thermal state is too high an alarm can be assigned to the logic output or the drive may lock in fault mode, depending on how the function is programmed.

■ **Parameter set switching (multi-parameter)**
This can be used to switch 3 sets of 15 parameters maximum when the motor is running.
Each set can contain a different value for each of the parameters.
The sets are switched using 1 or 2 logic inputs or command word bits.

Function suitable for machines involving 2 or 3 manufacturing processes.

■ **Motor or configuration switching (multi-motor or multi-configuration)**
The Altivar 71 drive can have 3 configurations, which can be activated remotely, allowing it to adapt to:
□ 2 or 3 different motors or mechanisms in multi-motor mode. In this instance, the thermal state for all the motors is calculated and saved. This means that each motor is protected thermally.
□ 2 or 3 configurations for the same motor in multi-configuration mode. This function can also be used to save the current configuration in another memory zone, from which it can be retrieved.
Switching is carried out using 1 or 2 logic inputs, depending on the number of motors or configurations chosen (2 or 3).

Multi-motor and multi-configuration modes cannot be used together.
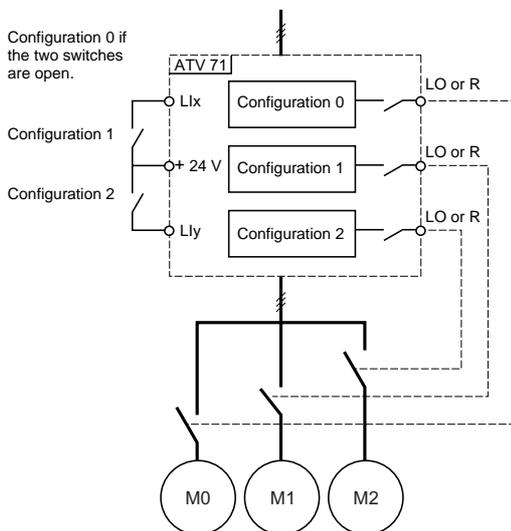
Schematic diagram for multi-motor mode

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

193

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
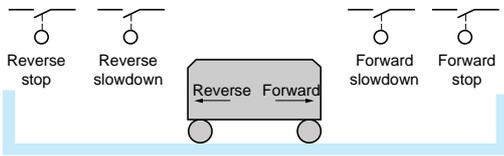
Example 1: *limit switch positioning*
Slowdown and stopping occur when the sensor changes state (open contact). It is possible to assign a command word bit or a logic input to disable the function in order to be able restart or not stop on the position.
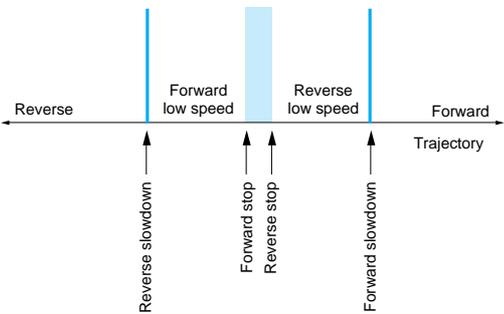
Example 2: *positioning on a target zone*
The disable contact can be used to restart in order to get past the target.

■ **Positioning on limit switches or position sensors**
This can be used to manage positioning based on limit switches or position sensors.
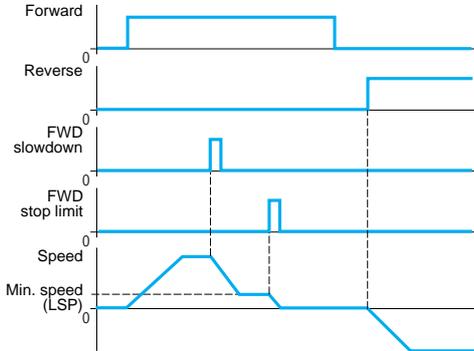
Activating the slowdown contact or stop contact allows the device to start in the other direction, even at high speed.

Slowdown mode can be configured:
□ The drive uses the validated ramp time
□ The drive calculates a ramp time according to the actual speed when the request to slow down is made. This calculation can be used to optimize the cycle time by limiting the time spent operating at low speed.

The stop type can also be configured:
□ stop on ramp
□ freewheel stop
□ fast stop

■ **Short and long cam operation**
□ **Short cams**
In this instance, when operating for the first time or after restoring the factory settings, the drive must initially be started outside the slowdown and stop zones in order to initialize the function.
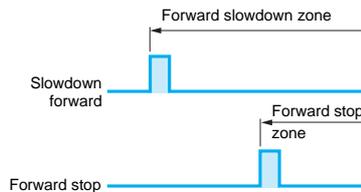
□ **Long cams**
In this instance, there is no restriction, which means that the function is initialized across the whole trajectory.

Presentation: pages 4 to 9 Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 References: pages 22 to 25 Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 Schemes: pages 134 to 151

194 Telemecanique
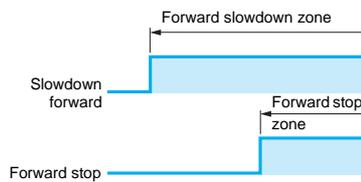
Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
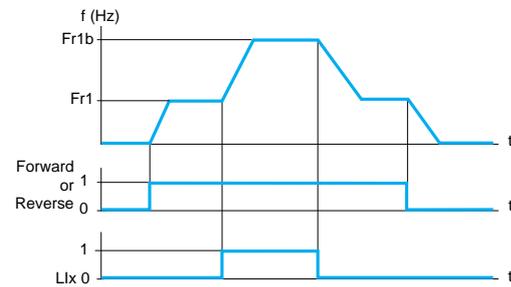
Example of reference switching
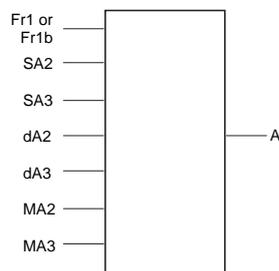
A: drive reference
SA2, SA3: summed inputs
dA2, dA3: subtraction inputs
MA2, MA3: multiplication inputs.

■ **Reference switching**
Switching between two references (speed, torque, PID, etc.) can be enabled by:
□ a logic input
□ a command word bit
Reference 1 (Fr1) is active if the logic input (or command word bit) is at 0;
reference 2 (Fr1b) is active if the logic input (or command word bit) is at 1.
References can be switched with the motor running.

Reference Fr1b, like Fr1, can originate from:
□ an analog input (AI)
□ a frequency control input (RP)
□ the graphic display terminal
□ the Modbus serial link or the CANopen machine bus
□ a communication card
□ the Controller Inside programmable card

■ **Operations on references (summing, subtraction, multiplication)**
Summing, subtraction and multiplication inputs can be activated simultaneously.

The drive reference is thus:
□ reference of drive A = (Fr1 or Fr1b + SA2 + SA3 - dA2 - dA3) x MA2 x MA3

□ **Summing inputs**
These can be used to add 2 to 3 references from different sources to Fr1 or Fr1b
(see "Reference switching").
The references to be added together are selected from all the possible types of
reference.

For example:
Reference Fr1 or Fr1b from AI1
Reference SA2 from CANopen
Reference SA3 from a communication card
Reference of drive A = Fr1 or Fr1b + SA2 + SA3.

□ **Subtraction inputs**
These can be used to subtract 2 to 3 references from different sources from Fr1 or
Fr1b (see "Reference switching").
The references to be subtracted are selected from all the possible types of reference.

For example:
Reference Fr1 or Fr1b from AI1
Reference dA2 from CANopen
Reference dA3 from a communication card
Reference of drive A = Fr1 or Fr1b - dA2 - dA3.

□ **Multiplication inputs**
These can be used to multiply 2 to 3 references from different sources by Fr1 or Fr1b
(see "Reference switching").
The references to be multiplied are selected from all the possible types of reference.

For example:
Reference Fr1 or Fr1b from AI1
Reference MA2 from CANopen
Reference MA3 from a communication card
Reference of drive A = Fr1 or Fr1b x MA2 x MA3.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

195

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ PID regulator
This can be used to regulate a process with a reference and feedback
given by a sensor.
Function suitable for controlling traction on a winder.
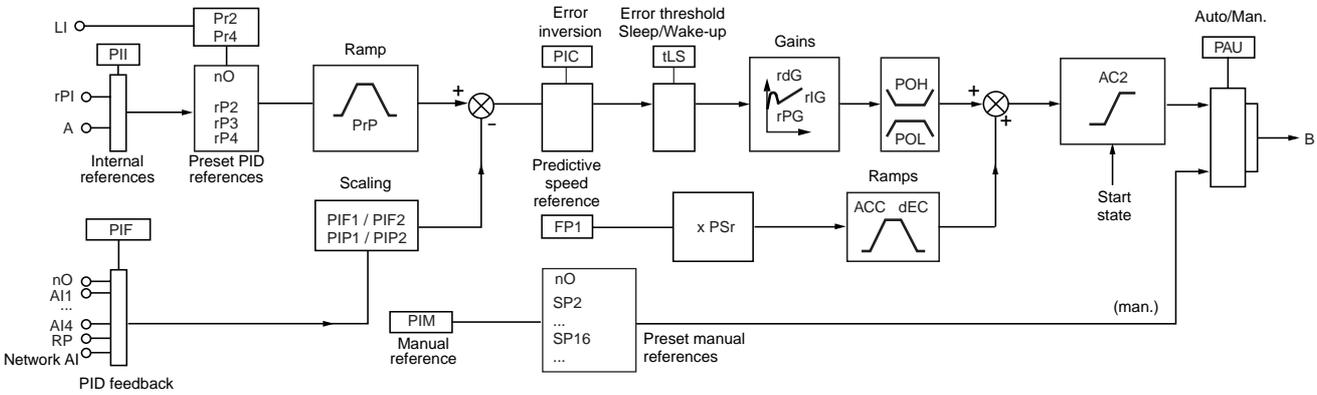
ACC: Acceleration, DEC: Deceleration, LI: Logic inputs, B: Speed reference

□ Internal references
   - rPI: reference transmitted by the graphic display terminal or a
communication network.
   - A: reference given by Fr1 or Fr1b with the summing, subtraction and
multiplication functions, as appropriate.
The "PII" parameter is used to choose between these two references.

□ Preset PID references
2 or 4 PID references are available. Table showing combinations of selected PID
references:

LIx (Pr4)	LIy (Pr2)	Reference
0	0	rPI or A
0	1	rP2
1	0	rP3
1	1	rP4

□ PID feedback
PID feedback can be assigned to one of the analog inputs (AI1 to AI4), the frequency
control input (RP) or the encoder, depending on the option cards present. It can also
be transmitted by a communication network (AI network).

□ Predictive speed reference
This reference can come from the terminals (analog inputs, encoders, etc.), the
graphic display terminal or a communication network.
This speed input gives an initial reference for starting.

□ Auto/Man.
This can be used to switch from speed regulation mode (Man.) to PID regulation
mode (Auto). A logic input or command word bit is used for switching.
Speed regulation mode (Man.)
The manual reference is transmitted via the terminals (analog inputs, encoder, preset
speeds, etc.).
With manual switching, the speed reference changes according to the ACC and dEC
ramp times.
PID regulation mode (Auto)
In automatic mode it is possible to:
   - adapt the references and feedback to the process (transformation)
   - correct a PID inversion
   - adjust the proportional, integral and derivative gains (Kp, Ki and Kd)
   - shunt the integral
   - use the "alarm" on the logic output or display it on the graphic display terminal,
if the threshold is exceeded (Max. feedback, Min. feedback and PID error)
   - display the PID reference, PID feedback, PID error and PID output on the graphic
display terminal and assign them to an analog output
   - apply a ramp (time = PrP) to the PID reference
The motor speed is limited to between LSP and HSP. It is displayed as process
values.

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

196

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ **Torque control**
This supports torque control or speed regulation mode.
These two types of mode can be switched using a logic input or command word bit.

Function suitable for applications requiring traction control.
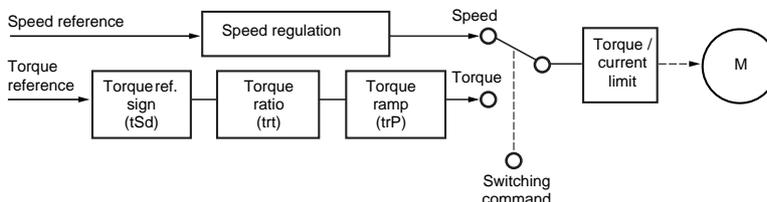
The torque reference is signed and has its own ramp. A torque ratio can be used to scale the reference. It can be transmitted via an analog input, frequency control input (RP input or encoder) or communication network.
The torque sign and value can be output to a logic output and an analog output.

In torque control mode the speed may vary within an adjustable dead band. When it has reached the lower or upper limit, the drive automatically switches to speed regulation mode (fallback position).
The regulated torque is no longer maintained, in which case two scenarios can occur:
□ The speed falls within the dead band; the torque takes the required value.
□ The torque does not return to the required value at the end of an adjustable time; the drive switches to fault or alarm mode, depending on the configuration.

AB and CD: Fallback position
BC: Torque control zone
E: Ideal operating point
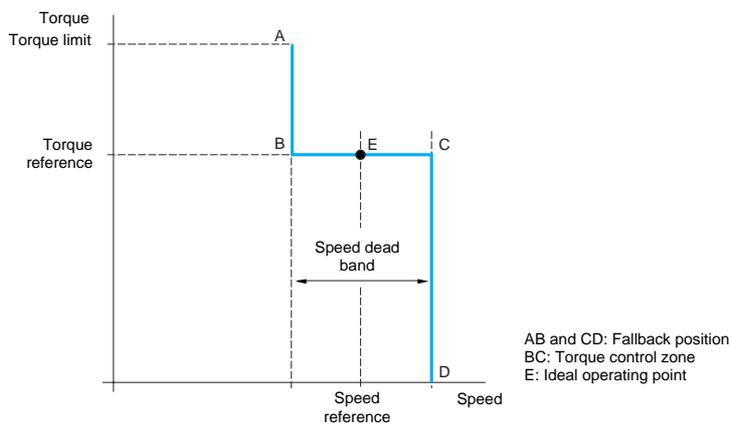
The stop in torque control mode can be configured:
□ automatic switch to speed regulation mode
□ freewheel stop
□ stop at zero torque but still maintaining the flux in the motor for an adjustable period of time.

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

Telemecanique

197

Functions (continued)

**Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors**
Altivar 71

■ **Torque limit**
This can be used to limit the torque in the motor and generator quadrants using separate settings.

There are two types of torque limit:
□ one with a value set by a parameter
□ the other with a value given by an analog input, frequency control input or encoder.

When both torque limit types are enabled it is the lowest value which is read.
They can be switched using a logic input or command word bit.

This function is not available for voltage/frequency ratio.
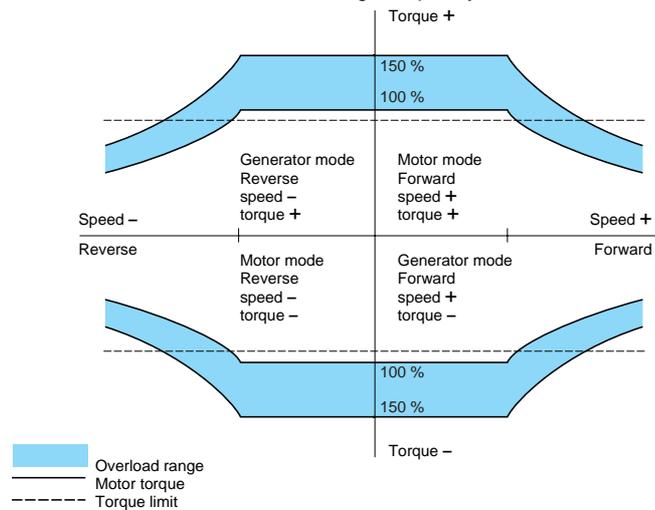
The torque limit operates in both directions of rotation in motor or generator mode.

■ **Torque or current limit detection**
This function can be used to detect when the current or torque limit has been reached.
Depending on the configuration, it is possible to:
□ use an alarm to signal this
□ lock the drive after an adjustable period of time.

■ **Current limit**
A 2nd current limit can be configured between 0 and 1.65 times the drive nominal current and it can be used to limit the rise in motor temperature and the torque.
Switching between the two current limits can be enabled via:
□ a logic input
□ a command word bit

Configuring current switching

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

198

Telemecanique

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71
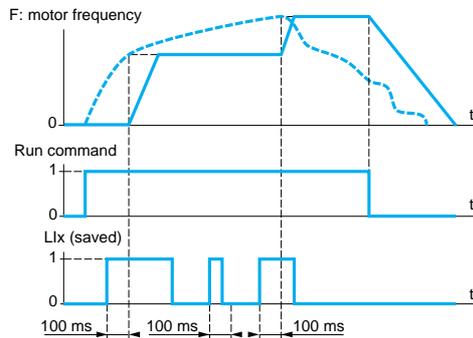
Example of how reference saving works

------ Analog reference

Configuring stop types

■ Reference saving
This can be used to:
□ Read and save a speed reference level on the reference input using a command lasting longer than 0.1 s on a logic input
□ Control the speed of several drives alternately via a single analog reference and a logic input for each drive
□ Enable a line reference (serial link) on several drives via a logic input in order to synchronize movements by eliminating variations when the reference is sent
The reference is acquired 100 ms after the rising edge of the request.
A new reference is not then acquired until a new request is made.

■ Stop types
□ Freewheel stop
This stops the motor by resistive torque if the motor power supply is cut.

A freewheel stop is achieved:
  - by configuring a normal stop command as a freewheel stop
(on disappearance of a run command or appearance of a stop command)
    - by enabling a logic input
    - by activating a command word bit

□ Fast stop
This can be used to achieve a braked stop with an acceptable deceleration ramp time (divided by an adjustable coefficient from 0 to 10) for the drive/motor unit to avoid locking in the event of an overbraking fault. If the coefficient is equal to 0 the motor decelerates as fast as possible.

Used for conveyors with emergency stop electrical braking.
A fast stop is achieved:
  - by configuring a normal stop as a fast stop (on disappearance of a run command or appearance of a stop command)
    - by enabling a logic input
    - by activating a command word bit

□ Fastest possible stop
If the ramp divider coefficient is equal to 0 the motor decelerates as fast as possible.

□ DC injection stop
This can be used to brake high-inertia machines at low speed or maintain torque on stopping.
A DC injection stop is achieved:
  - by configuring a normal stop as a DC injection stop (on disappearance of a run command or appearance of a stop command)
    - by enabling a logic input
    - by activating a command word bit

The DC value and the standstill braking time are adjustable.

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ **Motor thermal protection**
Motor thermal protection is provided by the drive:
□ directly, through PTC probes located in the motor windings
□ indirectly, via the integrated thermal relay. Indirect thermal protection is
implemented via continuous calculation of its theoretical temperature rise.

The microprocessor calculates the theoretical temperature rise of the motor based
on various elements:
□ the operating frequency
□ the current taken by the motor
□ the operating time
□ the maximum ambient temperature around the motor (40°C)
□ the type of motor ventilation (self-cooled or force-cooled)

Thermal protection can be adjusted from 0.2 to 1.5 times the nominal drive current.
It must be adjusted to the nominal current indicated on the motor rating plate.

Note: *The motor thermal state memory returns to zero when the drive control section is
switched off.*
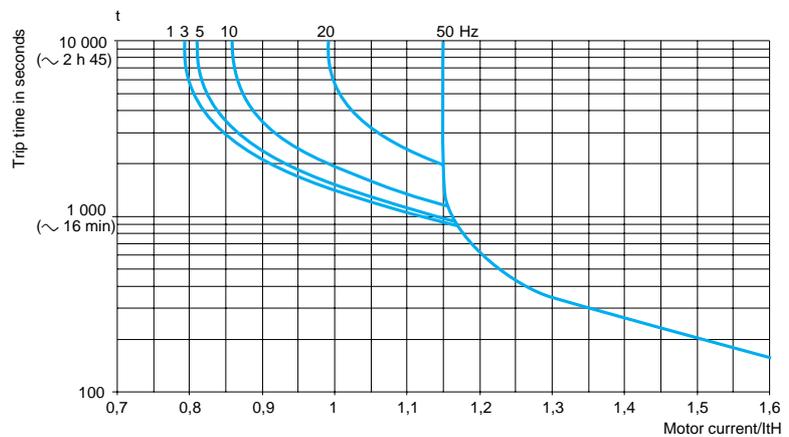
Motor thermal protection curves

□ Self-cooled motors:
The tripping curves vary with the motor frequency.

□ Force-cooled motors:
Only the 50 Hz tripping curve should be considered, whatever the motor frequency.

■ **Drive thermal protection**
The drive thermal protection is provided by a PTC probe mounted on the heatsink or
integrated in the power module.

■ **IGBT thermal protection**
The drive manages the switching frequency intelligently according to the IGBT
temperature.
If the drive's current rating is exceeded (e.g.: current higher than the nominal drive
current for a zero stator frequency), an alarm is displayed and a timer increases for
as long the alarm is present.

Presentation:
pages 4 to 9

Characteristics:
pages 10 to 17

References:
pages 22 to 25

Dimensions:
pages 108 to 133

Schemes:
pages 134 to 151

200

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

RDY	Term	+0.00Hz	0.0A
4-20mA LOSS			☐
Fallback spd			
Spd maintain			✓
Ramp stop			
Fast stop			
DC injection			
		Quick	▼

Configuration of the drive's fault response

■ **Configuring the drive's fault response (fault management)**
Different responses can be configured for the drive in the event of a resettable fault occurring:
☐ freewheel stop
☐ drive switches to the fallback speed
☐ drive maintains the speed at which it was operating when the fault occurred until the fault disappears
☐ stop on ramp
☐ fast stop
☐ DC injection stop
☐ no stop (alarm activated)

List of resettable faults:
☐ external fault
☐ speed feedback loss
☐ overspeed
☐ slipping
☐ output phase loss
☐ auto-tuning fault
☐ brake contactor feedback fault
☐ encoder coupling
☐ loss of 4-20mA
☐ PTC probe
☐ drive overheating
☐ motor overload if the thermal state is less than 100%
☐ line overvoltage
☐ overbraking
☐ current/torque limit
☐ IGBT overheating
☐ communication faults (Modbus, CANopen and other communication networks).

■ **Resetting resettable faults**
This can be used to remove the last fault using a logic input, command word bit or the STOP/RESET key on the graphic display terminal.
The restart conditions after a reset to zero are the same as those of a normal power-up.
List of resettable faults, see "Configuring the drive's fault response".
Line supply undervoltage and input phase loss faults are reset automatically when the line supply is restored.

Function suitable for applications where drives are difficult to access, such as when a drive is placed on a moving part.

■ **General reset (disables all faults)**
This function inhibits all faults, including thermal protection (forced operation), which can destroy the drive.

This function is suitable for applications where restarting may be crucial (conveyor in an oven, smoke extraction system, machines with solidifying products that need to be removed).
The function is enabled by a logic input.
Fault monitoring is active if the logic input is at state 1.
All faults are reset on a change of state ⌐ of the logic input.

Note: *Use of this function invalidates the guarantee.*

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

201

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ **Automatic restart**

This function enables the drive to be restarted automatically after it has locked in fault mode, provided the relevant fault has disappeared and the other operating conditions permit a restart.

This restart is performed by a series of automatic attempts separated by increasingly longer waiting periods of 1 s, 5 s, 10 s then 1 minute for the rest.

The options for the restart process's duration are 5, 10 and 30 min., 1, 2, 3 hours and an unlimited time.

If the drive has not restarted after the configured time, it will lock and the procedure is abandoned until it has been powered off and on again.

The faults which permit this type of restart are:
☐ line overvoltage
☐ motor thermal overload
☐ drive thermal overload
☐ DC bus overvoltage
☐ line phase failure
☐ external fault
☐ loss of 4-20mA
☐ PTC probe
☐ serial link
☐ current or torque limit
☐ output phase loss
☐ line voltage too low. For this fault, the function is always active, even if it is not configured.
☐ fault caused by CANopen machine bus, Modbus serial link or other commmunication networks. These faults are reset automatically as soon as the command word or frequency reference is sent to the drive.

For these types of fault, the relay configured as a fault relay remains activated if the function is configured. The speed reference and direction of operation must be maintained for this function.

This function is suitable for machines or installations which are in continuous operation or are not monitored, and where a restart will not endanger equipment or personnel in any way.

■ **PTC probe protection**

The probes can be connected directly to the drive control card or to the I/O option cards.

The way in which a temperature fault is recorded by the drive can be configured:
☐ permanent record
☐ only recorded when the drive's power section is switched on
☐ only recorded when the motor is running

■ **IGBT testing**

When enabled, this function tests every IGBT and the motor connections in order to detect a short-circuit or an open circuit. This test is run every time the drive is powered on and before each motor start.

This function must not be enabled with machines with fast cycles in order to preserve the time for recording run commands.

■ **Resetting operating time to zero**

The drive operating and power-up time can be reset.

■ **External fault**

This function can lead to the drive locking if a fault occurs in the machine.

This fault is flagged on the drive display unit. The fault is flagged if the signal is at 1 or 0, according to the function configuration.

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

202

Telemecanique

Functions (continued)

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

■ Line contactor control

This can be used on each run command to close the line contactor and open it when the motor is no longer on. The drive control section must be powered without fail by an external 24 V $=$ source.

This function must be used for simple sequences with a low number of Start/Stop operations (Start/Stop cycle longer than 60 seconds).
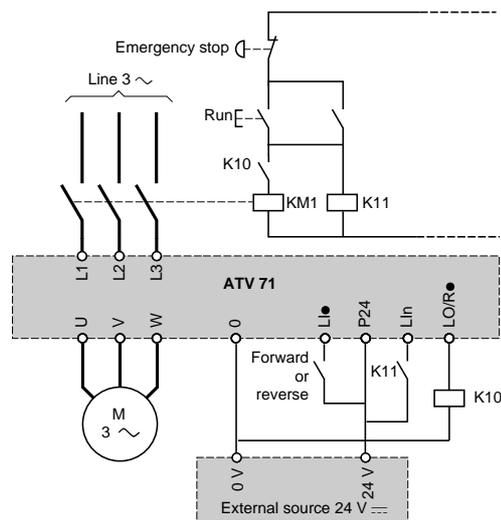
After a run command, if the line contactor is not closed the drive will lock after an adjustable period of time.

■ Forced local mode

Forced local mode imposes control via the terminals or graphic display terminal and disables all other control modes.
Switching to forced local mode may be activated via:
□ a logic input
□ a function key on the graphic display terminal

The following references and commands are available for forced local mode:
□ references AI1, AI2, etc. and command via logic inputs
□ reference and command via the graphic display terminal

| Presentation: pages 4 to 9 | Characteristics: pages 10 to 17 | References: pages 22 to 25 | Dimensions: pages 108 to 133 | Schemes: pages 134 to 151 |

Telemecanique

203

Functions

Variable speed drives
for asynchronous motors
Altivar 71

Function compatibility table

■ **Configurable I/O**

Functions which are not listed in this table are fully compatible.
Stop functions have priority over run commands.
The selection of functions is limited:

□ By the number of drive I/O which can be reassigned: if necessary, add an I/O extension card.

□ By the incompatibility of certain functions with one another.

Functions	Operation on the references	+/- speed (3)	Limit switch management	Preset speeds	PID regulator	Traverse control	Jog operation	Brake control
Operation on the references				↑	⊜		↑	
+/- speed (3)						⊜	⊜	
Limit switch management					⊜			
Preset speeds	←						↑	
PID regulator	⊜		⊜			⊜	⊜	⊜
Traverse control		⊜			⊜		⊜	
Jog operation	←	⊜		←	⊜	⊜		⊜
Brake control					⊜		⊜	
Automatic catching a spinning load with speed detection (catch on the fly)								⊜
Control and integrity check of output contactor								⊜
DC injection stop								⊜
Fast stop								
Freewheel stop								
+/- speed around a reference					⊜	⊜	⊜	
High-speed hoisting					⊜	⊜	⊜	
Torque control	⊜ (1)	⊜ (1)		⊜ (1)	⊜ (1)	⊜ (1)	⊜ (1)	⊜ (1)
Load sharing					⊜			
Position control via limit switches					⊜			

(1) Torque control and the speed reference functions are only incompatible if torque control mode is active.
(2) Priority is given to the first of these two stop modes to be activated.
(3) Excluding special use with reference channel Fr2.

⊜	Incompatible functions	**Priority functions** (functions which cannot be active at the same time)	
	Compatible functions	←	The arrow indicates which function has priority.
	N/A	↑	Example: The "Freewheel stop" function has priority over the "Fast stop" function.

Telemecanique

Automatic catching a spinning load with speed detection (catch on the fly)	Control and integrity check of output contactor	DC injection stop	Fast stop	Freewheel stop	+/- speed around a reference	High-speed hoisting	Torque control	Load sharing	Position control via limit switches
							● (1)		
							● (1)		
							● (1)		
					●	●	● (1)	●	●
					●	●	● (1)		
					●	●	● (1)		
●	●	●					● (1)		
							● (1)		
			● (2)	↑					
		● (2)		↑					
		←	←						
							● (1)		
							●		●
● (1)					● (1)	●		●	● (1)
							●		
						● (1)	●		

*PowerSuite screen on PC
Installed base management*

Presentation

The PowerSuite software workshop for PC is a user-friendly tool designed for setting up control devices for the following Telemecanique brand motors:
■ TeSys U controller-starters
■ Altistart soft start/soft stop units
■ Altivar variable speed drives
■ Lexium 05 servo drives

It includes various functions designed for setup phases such as:
■ Preparing configurations
■ Start-up
■ Maintenance

In order to simplify the start-up and maintenance phases, the PowerSuite software workshop can use the Bluetooth® wireless link.

Functions (1)

Preparing configurations

The PowerSuite software workshop can be used on its own to generate the device configuration. It can be saved, printed and exported to office automation software.

The PowerSuite software workshop can also be used to convert:
■ An Altivar 28 drive configuration to an Altivar 31 drive configuration
■ An Altivar 38 drive configuration to an Altivar 61 drive configuration
■ An Altivar 58 or Altivar 58F drive configuration to an Altivar 71 drive configuration.

*PowerSuite screen on PC
View of PI regulator function parameters*

Start-up

When the PC is connected to the device, the PowerSuite software workshop can be used to:
■ Transfer the generated configuration
■ Adjust
■ Monitor. This option has been enhanced with new functions such as:
□ The oscilloscope
□ The high-speed oscilloscope (minimum time base: 2 ms)
□ The FFT *(Fast Fourier Transform)* oscilloscope
□ Displaying communication parameters
■ Control
■ Save the final configuration

Maintenance

In order to simplify maintenance operations, the PowerSuite software workshop can be used to:
■ Compare the configuration of a device currently being used with a saved configuration
■ Manage the user's installed base of equipment, in particular:
□ Organize the installed base into folders (electrical equipment, machinery, workshops, etc.)
□ Store maintenance messages
□ Simplify Ethernet connection by storing the IP address

*PowerSuite screen on PC
Monitoring control panel (cursor, gauge)*

User interface

The PowerSuite software workshop can be used to:
■ Present the device parameters arranged by function in the form of illustrated views of diagrams or simple tables
■ Customize the parameter names
■ Create:
□ A user menu (choice of particular parameters)
□ Monitoring control panels with graphic elements (cursors, gauges, bar charts
■ Perform sort operations on the parameters
■ Display text in five languages (English, French, German, Italian and Spanish).
The language changes immediately and there is no need to restart the program.

It also has online contextual help:
■ On the PowerSuite tool
■ On the device functions by direct access to the user manuals

*(1) Some functions are not available for all devices.
See the table of function availability, page 207.*

▣ Telemecanique

Function availability for the PowerSuite software workshop

Functions not listed in the table are available for all devices.

Function available with devices	Controller-starter	Soft start/soft stop unit	Drives					Servo drives
	TeSys U	ATS 48	ATV 11	ATV 31	ATV 61	ATV 71		LXM 05
Monitoring								
Oscilloscope								
High-speed oscilloscope								
FFT oscilloscope								
Display of communication parameters								
Control								
Customization of parameter names								
Creation of a user menu								
Creation of monitoring control panels								
Sort operation on parameters								

■ Functions available
■ Functions not available

Modbus multidrop connection

Ethernet connection

Connections (1)

Modbus communication bus

The PowerSuite software workshop can be connected directly to the device terminal port or Modbus network port via the serial port on the PC.

Two types of connection are possible:
■ With a single device (point-to-point connection), using a V A8 106 PC serial port connection kit
■ With a number of devices (multidrop connection), using the XGS Z24 interface.

Ethernet TCP/IP communication network

The PowerSuite software workshop can be connected to an Ethernet TCP/IP network (see pages 210 to 215). In this case, the devices can be accessed:
■ Using a V A58 310 communication card for the Altivar 61 and 71 drives
■ Using a TSX ETG 100 Ethernet/Modbus bridge

Bluetooth® wireless link

The PowerSuite software workshop can communicate via a Bluetooth® radio link with a device equipped with a Bluetooth® - Modbus V A8 114 adapter. The adapter plugs into the device connector terminal port or Modbus network port and has a range of 10 m (class 2).

If the PC does not have Bluetooth® technology, use the
V A8 115 USB-Bluetooth® adapter.

Remote maintenance

Using a simple Ethernet connection, the PowerSuite software workshop can be used for remote monitoring and diagnostics.
When devices are not connected to the Ethernet network, or it is not directly accessible, various remote transmission solutions may be possible (modem, teleprocessing gateway, etc.). Please consult your Regional Sales Office.

(1) Please refer to the compatibility table on page 209.
(2) Please refer to our specialist "Automation platform Modicon Premium and Unity - Unity software" and "Automation platform Modicon TSX Micro - PL7 software" catalogues.
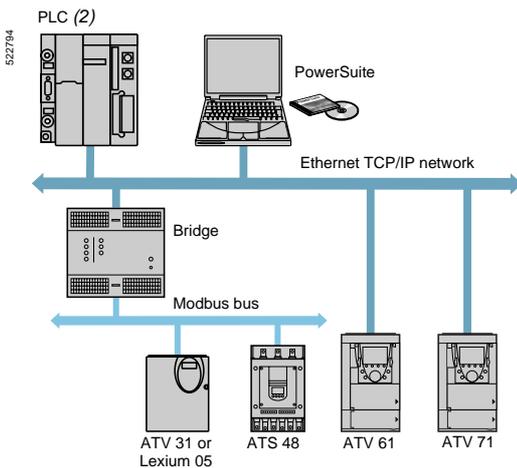
PowerSuite software workshop

Description	Composition	Reference	Weight kg
PowerSuite CD-ROM	■ 1 program for PC in English, French, German, Italian and Spanish ■ Variable speed drive, starter and servo drive technical manuals ■ ABC Configurator software for the LUF P communication gateways	**VW3V A8 104**	0.100
PowerSuite update CD-ROM *(1)*	■ 1 program for PC in English, French, German, Italian and Spanish ■ Variable speed drive and starter technical manuals	**VW3V A8 105**	0.100
Connection kit for PC serial port for point-to-point Modbus connection	■ 1 x 3 m cable with 2 RJ45 connectors ■ 1 RS 232/RS 485 converter with one 9-way female SUB-D connector and 1 RJ45 connector ■ 1 converter for the ATV 11 drive, with one 4-way male connector and one RJ45 connector ■ 1 RJ45/9-way male SUB-D adapter for connecting ATV 38/58/58F drives ■ 1 RJ45/9-way female SUB-D adapter for connecting ATV 68 drives.	**VW3V A8 106**	0.350
RS 232-RS 485 interface for multidrop Modbus connection	1 multidrop Modbus converter for connection to screw terminals. Requires a 24 V ⎓ (20...30 V), 20 mA power supply *(2)*.	**XGS Z24**	0.105
Modbus-Bluetooth® adapter *(3)*	■ 1 Bluetooth® adapter (10 m range, class 2) with 1 RJ45 connector ■ 1 x 0.1 m cable with 2 RJ45 connectors for PowerSuite ■ 1 x 0.1 m cable with 1 RJ45 connector and 1 mini DIN connector for TwidoSoft ■ 1 RJ45/9-way male SUB-D adapter for connecting ATV 38/58/58F drives.	**VW3V A8 114**	0.155
USB-Bluetooth® adapter for PC	This adapter is required for a PC which is not equipped with Bluetooth® technology. It is connected to a USB port on the PC. Range of 10 m (class 2).	**VW3V A8 115**	0.290

VW3 V A8 104

VW3 V A8 114

(1) Updates a version ≥ V1.40 with the latest available version. For versions < V1.40, you should order the PowerSuite CD-ROM, VVW3 A8 104.
(2) Please consult our specialist catalogue "Power supplies, splitter blocks and interfaces".
(3) Can also be used to communicate between a Twido PLC and the TwidoSoft software workshop.

PowerSuite software workshop

Compatibility of PowerSuite software workshop with the following devices *(1)*

Connection	Controller-starter	Soft start/ soft stop unit	Drives					Servo drives
	TeSys U	**ATS 48**	**ATV 11**	**ATV 31**	**ATV 61**	**ATV 71**	**LXM 05**
Modbus	V1.40	V1.30	V1.40	V2.0	V2.3	V2.2	V2.2
Ethernet (device equipped with an Ethernet TCP/IP card)					V2.3	V2.2	
Ethernet via Ethernet/Modbus bridge		V1.50		V2.0	V2.3	V2.2	V2.2
Bluetooth®		V2.2		V2.2	V2.3	V2.2	V2.2

☐ Compatible software versions
☐ Incompatible software versions

Hardware and software environments

The PowerSuite software workshop can operate in the following PC environments and configurations:
- Microsoft Windows® 98 SE, Microsoft Windows® 2000 SP4, Microsoft Windows® XP SP1, SP2,
- Pentium III, 800 MHz, hard disk with 300 MB available, 128 MB RAM
- SVGA or higher definition monitor

(1) Minimum software version

⊕ Telemecanique

Starters, drives
and communication
Ethernet TCP/IP network
Transparent Ready concept

Presentation

Introduced by Schneider Electric, the Transparent Ready concept enables transparent communication between control system devices, production and management. Network technologies and the associated new services are used to share and distribute data between sensors, PLCs, workstations and third-party devices in an increasingly efficient manner.
Web servers embedded in network components and control system devices can be used to:
■ Access configuration data transparently
■ Perform remote diagnostics
■ Incorporate simple human/machine interface functions

This concept is based on the Ethernet TCP/IP industrial standard which proposes a single network that meets most communication requirements from sensors/actuators through to production management systems.
Where a variety of communication systems are usually required, Transparent Ready standard technologies can result in significant cost savings in the areas of definition, installation, maintenance or training.

Transparent Ready is based on:
■ Ethernet TCP/IP-based services meeting control system requirements in terms of functions, performance and quality of services
■ Products including several ranges of PLC, distributed I/O, industrial terminals, variable speed drives, gateways and an increasing number of partner products
■ The ConneXium range of cabling accessories: hubs, switches, cables adapted to the environment and to the requirements of industrial conditions.

Services	Network manage-ment	FDR (Faulty Device Replacement)		Web server		Messaging	I/O Scanning	
Applica-tions	SNMP	DHCP	TFTP	FTP	HTTP	Modbus		
Transport	UDP			TCP				MIB Transparent Ready
Link	IP							
Physical	Ethernet 2							
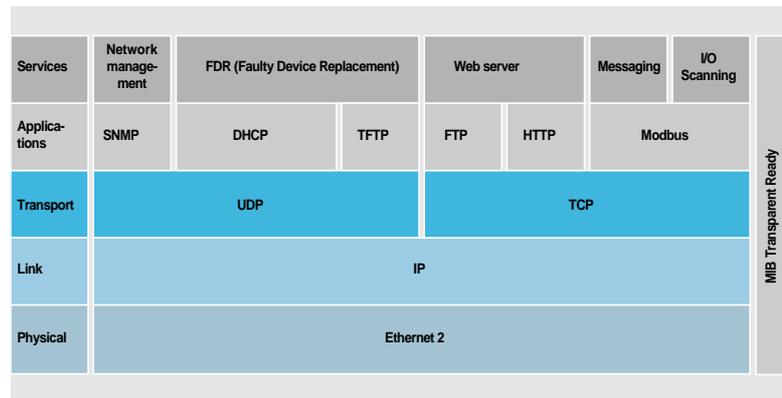
Services supported by the Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 drives

The Altistart 48 soft start/soft stop unit and the Altivar 31 variable speed drive are connected to the Ethernet TCP/IP network via an Ethernet/Modbus bridge TSX ETG 100.

The Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 variable speed drives are connected to the Ethernet TCP/IP network via a VW3 A3 310 communication card.
This card comes with a basic web server, which users can adapt completely according to the application (Java or FactoryCast development tool).

Telemecanique

Starters, drives
and communication
Ethernet TCP/IP network
Transparent Ready concept

Characteristics

Structure	Topology	Industrial local area network conforming to ANSI/IEEE 802.3 (4th edition 1993-07-08) Star network
	Transmission mode	Manchester baseband. Half-duplex or full-duplex
	Data rate	10/100 Mbps with automatic recognition
	Medium	STP double shielded twisted pair, impedance 100 Ω ± 15 Ω for 10 BASE-T or category 5 Ethernet cable, conforming to standard TIA/EIA-568A
	Length of network	100 m maximum between Hub or switch and a station

Type of device	ATS 48, ATV 31	ATV 61, ATV 71
Type of interface	TSX ETG 100	VW3 A3 310
Universal services	SNMP	HTTP, BOOTP, DHCP, FTP, TFTP, SNMP
Transparent Ready services	Modbus messaging	Modbus messaging, IO Scanning, FDR

Universal services

HTTP

HTTP "Hypertext Transfer Protocol" (RFC 1945) is a protocol used to transmit web pages between a server and a browser. HTTP has been used on the Web since 1990.

Web servers embedded in control system devices are at the heart of the Transparent Ready concept and provide easy access to devices anywhere in the world using a standard web browser such as Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

BOOTP/DHCP

BOOTP/DHCP (RFC 1531) is used to supply devices (client) automatically with IP addresses and parameters. This avoids having to manage the addresses of each device individually by transferring their management to a server.
BOOTP identifies the client device by its Ethernet MAC address. This address is unique to each device and should be entered in the server each time the device is changed.
DHCP "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol" identifies the client device by a name in plain language ("Device Name") which is maintained throughout the application: e.g. "Conveyor 23".

*Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 drives can be given a name ("Device Name") by the terminal or the PowerSuite software workshop.
The FDR ("Faulty Device Replacement") service uses the standard DHCP and TFTP protocols.*

FTP/TFTP

FTP, "File Transfer Protocol" (RFCs 959, 2228 and 2640) and TFTP, "Trivial File Transfer Protocol" (RFC 1123), are used to exchange files with devices.

*Transparent Ready devices implement FTP for downloading firmware or custom web pages.
The FDR ("Faulty Device Replacement") service uses the standard DHCP and TFTP protocols.*

SNMP

The Internet community has developed the SNMP standard, "Simple Network Management Protocol" (RFCs 1155, 1156 and 1157), to support the management of the various network components by means of a single system. The network management system can exchange data with SNMP agent devices. This function allows the manager to view the status of the network and devices, to modify their configuration and to return alarms in the event of a fault.

Transparent Ready devices are compatible with SNMP and can be integrated naturally into a network administered via SNMP.

Starters, drives and communication
Ethernet TCP/IP network
Transparent Ready concept

Transparent Ready services

Modbus communication standard

Modbus, the industry communication standard since 1979, has been ported to Ethernet TCP/IP, the backbone of the Internet revolution, to create Modbus TCP/IP, a totally open protocol on Ethernet. There is no need for any proprietary component, nor the purchase of a licence in order to develop a connection to Modbus TCP/IP. This protocol can easily be ported to any device supporting a standard TCP/IP communication stack. The specifications can be obtained free of charge from the website: www.modbus.org.

Modbus TCP/IP, simple and open

The Modbus application layer is very simple and universally known. Thousands of manufacturers are already implementing this protocol. Many have already developed a Modbus TCP/IP connection and numerous products are currently available. The simplicity of Modbus TCP/IP enables any small field device, such as an I/O module, to communicate on Ethernet without the need for a powerful microprocessor or a large amount of internal memory.

Modbus TCP/IP, high performance

Thanks to the simplicity of its protocol and the fast Ethernet throughput data rate of 100 Mbps, Modbus TCP/IP achieves excellent performance. This means that this type of network can be used in realtime applications such as I/O Scanning.

I/O Scanning service

Schematic diagram
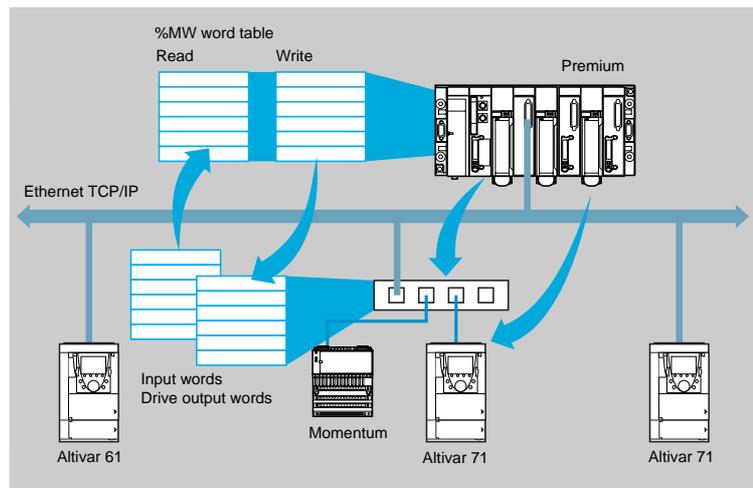
Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 drives accept the I/O Scanning service generated by:
■ The following automation platforms:
□ Premium equipped with a TSX ETY 410/5101 module
□ Quantum
□ Momentum M1E
■ A PC equipped with Modbus communication software with the I/O scanner function. This service is used to manage the exchange of remote I/O on the Ethernet network after simple configuration and without the need for special programming.

The drive I/O are scanned transparently by means of read/write requests according to the Modbus Master/Slave protocol on the TCP/IP profile.

The I/O Scanning service can be configured, activated or deactivated by:
■ The PowerSuite software workshop
■ The standard web server

Telemecanique

Transparent Ready services (continued)

Faulty Device Replacement (FDR) service

The FDR service uses standard DHCP and TFTP technologies with the aim of simplifying the maintenance of Ethernet devices.
It is used to replace a faulty device with a new product, ensuring its detection, reconfiguration and automatic restarting by the system, without the need for any delicate manual intervention.

The main steps are:
■ A device using the FDR service becomes faulty
■ A similar device is taken out of the maintenance reserve base, preconfigured with the "Device_name" of the faulty device, then reinstalled on the network.
■ The FDR server (which can be a Quantum or Premium PLC Ethernet module) detects the new arrival, configures it with its IP address and transfers all its configuration parameters to it.
■ The substituted device checks that the parameters are fully compatible with its own characteristics, then switches to operational mode.

Web server

The Ethernet card in Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 drives incorporates a standard web server, in English.
The functions provided by this web server require no special configuration or programming of the PC supporting the web browser. Using a password, two levels of access to the web server can be defined: read-only or modification.

The standard web server provides access to the following functions:
■ Altivar Viewer
■ Data Editor
■ Ethernet Statistics
■ Security
■ Etc.

The standard web server can be adapted or replaced by a customized web server depending on the requirements of the application and downloaded via FTP. Knowledge of the HTTP protocol and Java technology are required to be able to create or modify a web server.

Altivar Viewer

Starters, drives
and communication
Ethernet TCP/IP network
Transparent Ready concept

Connections

ATV 71   ATV 31   ATS 48   Magelis XBT   Advantys STB   ATV 71   ATS 48   ATV 61   Momentum   ATV 71

Ethernet network connection elements *(1)*

TSX ETG 100
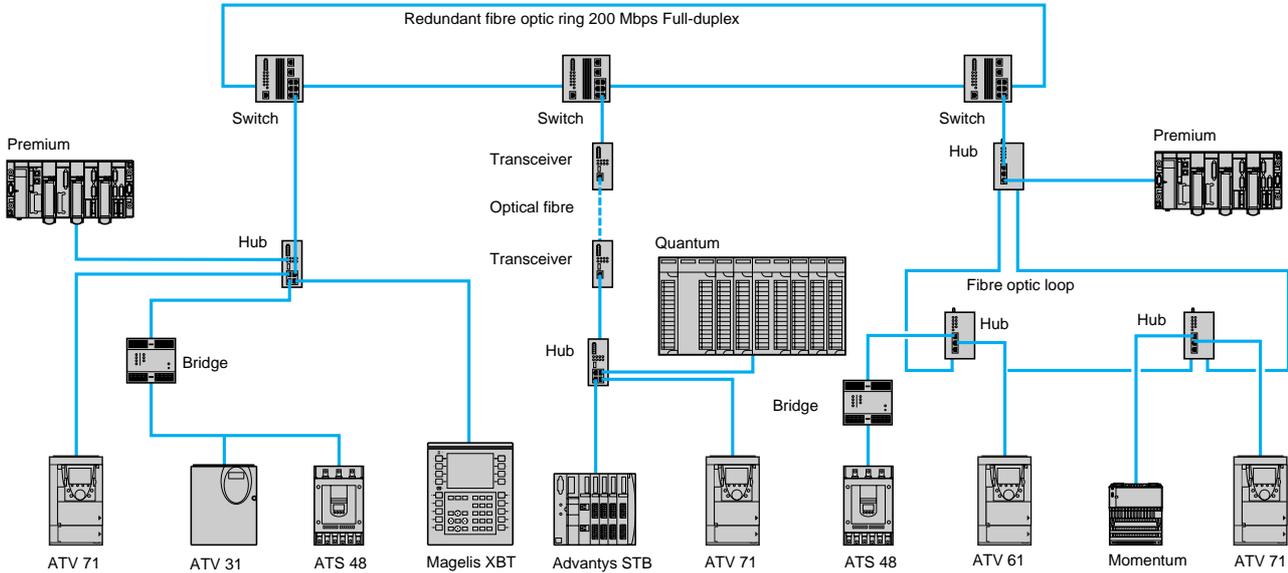
Communication interfaces

Description	Use	For devices	Reference	Weight kg
Communication card equipped with an RJ45 connector Ethernet Modbus TCP/IP 10/100 Mbps Class C20	Variable speed drives	ATV 61 ATV 71	**VW3 A3 310**	0.300
Modbus Ethernet Bridge/router Class B10	Soft start-soft stop units Variable speed drives	ATS 48 ATV 31	**TSX ETG 100**	–
Configuration kit	Used to configure the bridge via the Ethernet or RS 232 port. Consists of an RJ45/9-way SUB-D adapter and a CAT5 crossover cable, length 3 m	–	**TCS EAK 0100**	–
PoE power supply (conforming to IEEE 802.3af)	Used to supply the bridge via Ethernet CAT5 cable. Power supply connected via daisy-chain connection. Includes mains cable (Australia, Europe, UK and USA)	–	**TCS EAQ 0100**	–

Connecting cables

Description	Use		Length m	Reference *(2)*	Weight kg
	From	To			
Straight shielded twisted pair cables 2 RJ45 connectors	ATV 61 or ATV 71 (+ communication card VW3 A3 310), Ethernet/ Modbus bridge TSX ETG 100	Hubs 499 N●H 1●● 10, switches 499 N●S 171 00	2	**490 NTW 000 02**	–
			5	**490 NTW 000 05**	–
			12	**490 NTW 000 12**	–
			40	**490 NTW 000 40**	–
			80	**490 NTW 000 80**	–
Cable for Modbus bus 1 RJ45 connector and one stripped end	ATS 48, ATV 31	Ethernet/ Modbus bridge TSX ETG 100	3	**VW3 A8 306 D30**	–

(1) Please consult our "Ethernet TCP/IP Transparent Factory" specialist catalogue.
*(2) Cable conforming to EIA/TIA-568 standard category 5 and IEC 1180/EN 50 173, class D. For UL and CSA 22.1 approved cables, add the letter **U** at the end of the reference. Example: 490 NTW 000 02 becomes **490 NTW 000 02U**.*

Telemecanique

Starters, drives and communication
Ethernet TCP/IP network
Transparent Ready concept

571200-1

499 NEH 141 00

571385-1

499 NES 251 00

571829-1

499 NMS 251 02

Ethernet network connection elements (1) (continued)

Hubs

Description	Number of ports		Reference	Weight kg
	Copper cable	Optical fibre		
Hub – 10 Mbps twisted pair 10BASE-T ports for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors	4	–	**499 NEH 104 10**	0.530
Hub – 100 Mbps twisted pair 100BASE-TX ports for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors	4	–	**499 NEH 141 00**	0.240
Hub – 10 Mbps twisted pair and multimode optical fibre 10BASE-T ports for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors 10BASE-FL ports for optical fibre, ST connectors (BFOC)	3	2	**499 NOH 105 10**	0.900

Switches

Description	Number of ports		Configurable	Reference	Weight kg
	Copper cable	Optical fibre			
Optimized switch, twisted pair 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX copper ports, for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors	5	–	no	**499 NES 251 00**	0.190
Switches, twisted pair 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX ports, for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors	8	–	no	**499 NES 181 00**	0.230
	7	–	yes	**499 NES 271 00**	0.460
Switches, twisted pair and multimode optical fibre 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX ports, for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors 100BASE-FX ports, for optical fibre, SC connectors	4	1	no	**499 NMS 251 01**	0.330
	3	2	no	**499 NMS 251 02**	0.335
	5	2	yes	**499 NOS 271 00**	0.460
Switches, twisted pair and single-mode optical fibre 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX ports, for copper cable, shielded RJ45 connectors 100BASE-FX ports, for optical fibre, SC connectors	4	1	no	**499 NSS 251 01**	0.330
	3	2	no	**499 NSS 251 02**	0.335
	5	2	yes	**499 NSS 271 00**	0.460

(1) For Transparent Ready accessories, please consult our "Ethernet TCP/IP, Transparent Ready" catalogue.

Telemecanique
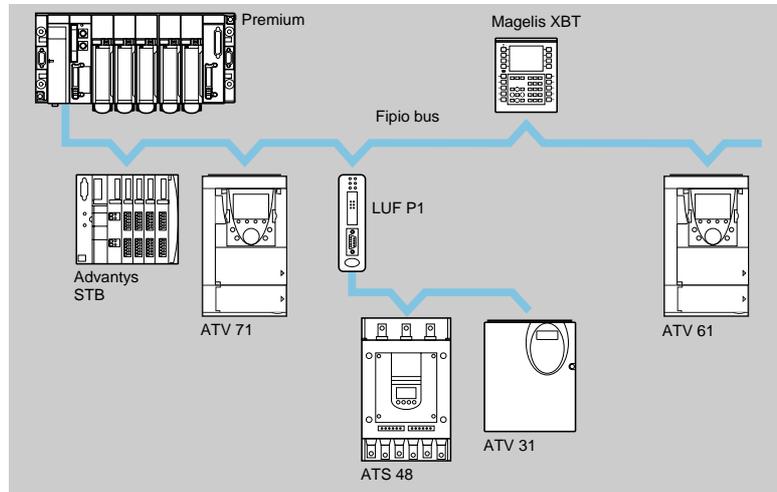
The Fipio fieldbus is a standard means of communication between control system components, and conforms to the World FIP standard.
A Premium PLC (bus manager) can control 127 devices (agents) over a maximum distance of 15 km.
The Fipio bus manager is integrated in the PLC processor.

The Altistart 48 soft start/soft stop unit and the Altivar 31 variable speed drive can be connected to the Fipio bus via an LUF P1 Fipio/Modbus gateway.

Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 drives can be connected to the Fipio bus via a communication card VW3 A3 311.

The following devices can also be connected to the Fipio bus:
■ TSX Micro *(2)* or Premium Agent function *(1)* PLCs
■ The CCX 17 operator panel *(2)*
■ The Magelis XBT-F terminal with graphic screen *(3)*
■ The Magelis *i*PC industrial PC *(3)*
■ Advantys STB IP 20 distributed I/O *(4)*
■ Discrete, analog or application-specific Momentum distributed I/O *(5)*
■ Discrete or analog (IP 20) TBX distributed I/O *(1)*
■ TBX discrete (IP 65) or TSX E●F (IP67) dust and damp proof distributed I/O *(1)*
■ The TBX SAP 10 Fipio/AS-Interface gateway *(1)*
■ The LUF P1 Fipio/Modbus gateway
■ A PC terminal
■ Partner products in the Collaborative Automation programme

(1) Please consult our "Automation Platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" specialist catalogue.
(2) Please consult our "Automation platform Modicon TSX Micro – PL7 software" specialist catalogue".
(3) Please consult our "Human-Machine interfaces" specialist catalogue.
(4) Please consult our "Distributed I/O Advantys STB" specialist catalogue.
(5) Please consult our "Modicon Momentum Automation platform" specialist catalogue.

Telemecanique

Characteristics

Structure	Topology	Industrial bus conforming to the World FIP standard Subscribers linked via daisy-chain or tap junctions
	Access method	Producer/consumer principle Bus management by a fixed arbitrator (bus manager)
	Transmission mode	Baseband physical layer on shielded twisted pair, according to standard NF C 46-604
	Data rate	1 Mbps
	Medium	Shielded twisted pair 150 Ω Optical fibre 62.5/125 with the use of electrical/fibre optic repeaters
	Number of subscribers	32 maximum per segment 1 manager + 127 agents maximum over all segments The number of Fipio agents is limited by the memory capacity of Premium processors (62 Altivar drives maximum) *(1)*
	Number of segments	Unlimited in tree or star architectures Limited to 5 cascaded segments The link between 2 subscribers may cross 4 electrical or electrical/fibre optic repeaters maximum
	Length of bus	15,000 m maximum 1,000 m maximum without repeater for an electrical segment 5,000 m maximum for 5 electrical segments 3,000 m maximum for 1 fibre optic segment

Type of device	ATS 48, ATV 31	ATV 61, ATV 71
Type of interface	**LUF P1**	**VW3 A3 311**
Profile	FED C 32P	FED C 32
Control and adjustment	26 configurable words	8 configurable words (communication scanner)
Monitoring	26 configurable words	8 configurable words (communication scanner)
Configuration and adjustment	1 indexed word Read/write access to all functions by the PLC application program	

*(1) Please consult our "Automation Platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software"
specialist catalogue.*

Fipio wiring system

Premium

ATV 71   ATV 71   ATV 61

ATV 31   ATS 48
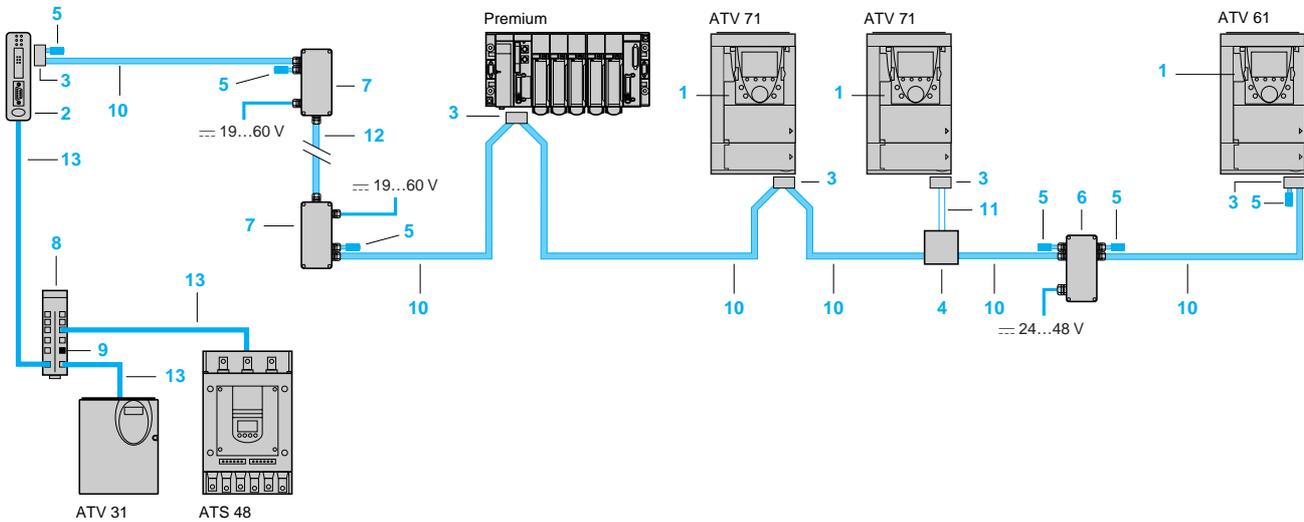
Elements for connecting the Fipio bus and a Premium PLC *(1)*

Cards and gateway

Description	Used for	No.	Reference	Weight kg
Standard Fipio card The card is equipped with a 9-way male SUB-Dconnector which can take a TSX FP ACC12 connector with a TSX FP CA●00 trunk cable or TSX FP CC●00 drop cable. This card should be used for new installations. It is also used to replace an ATV 58 or ATV 58F equipped with a VW3 A58 311 card by an ATV 71.	ATV 61 ATV 71	1	**VW3 A3 311**	0.300
Substitution Fipio card The card is equipped with a 9-way male SUB-D connector which can take a TSX FP ACC12 connector with a TSX FP CA●00 trunk cable or TSX FP CC●00 drop cable. This Fipio communication card is reserved for replacing an ATV 58 or ATV 58F equipped with a VW3 A58 301 card by an ATV 71.	ATV 71	1	**VW3 A3 301**	0.300
Fipio/Modbus gateway The gateway is equipped with: ■ 1 Fipio 9-way male SUB-D connector which can take a TSX FP ACC12 connector for use with a TSX FP CA●00 trunk cable or TSX FPCC●00 drop cable ■ 1 RJ45 connector for Modbus for connection with the VW3 A8 306 R●● cable. Fit an external 24 V ⎓ power supply, 100 mA minimum, to be ordered separately *(2)*.	ATS 48 ATV 31	2	**LUF P1**	0.240

LUF P1

(1) To order other elements for connection to the Fipio bus, please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" specialist catalogue.
(2) Please consult our "Power supplies, splitter blocks and interfaces" specialist catalogue.

Elements for connecting the Fipio bus and a Premium PLC (continued) (1)

Accessories

Description	Use	No.	Unit reference	Weight kg
Female connector for device with 9-way female SUB-D connector (polycarbonate, IP 20)	Connection via daisy-chain or tap junctions. For ATV 61, ATV 71, gateway LUF P1 and Premium PLC	3	**TSX FP ACC12**	0.040
Tap junction (polycarbonate, IP 20)	Trunk cable tap link	4	**TSX FP ACC14**	0.120
Fipio line terminators (sold in lots of 2)	Connector, tap junction and repeater	5	**TSX FP ACC7**	0.020
Electrical repeater (IP 65) Power supply 24…48 V ⎓, 150 mA (2)	Increases the length of the bus while enabling connection of 2 segments of 1000 m maximum	6	**TSX FP ACC6**	0.520
Electrical/fibre optic repeater (IP 65) Power supply 19…60 V ⎓, 210 mA (2)	Used for connection (via a patch panel) of an electrical segment (1000 m max.) and a fibre optic segment (3000 m max.)	7	**TSX FP ACC8M**	0.620
Modbus splitter block equipped with 10 RJ45 connectors and 1 screw terminal	Used to connect an ATV 31, ATS 48 on the LUP P1 gateway	8	**LU9 GC3**	0.500
Modbus line terminators *(3)*	LU9 GC3 Modbus splitter block	9	**VW3 A8 306 RC**	0.010
FIP wiring test tool	Used to test each section of a network segment	–	**TSX FP ACC9**	0.050

Connecting cables (1)

Description	Use From	To	No.	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
Trunk cables 8 mm, 1 shielded twisted pair 150 Ω. In standard atmosphere (4) and inside buildings	Connector TSX FP ACC12, junction box TSX FP ACC14, repeaters TSX FP ACC6, ACC8M	Connector TSX FP ACC12, junction box TSX FP ACC14, repeater TSX FP ACC6	10	100	**TSX FP CA100**	5.680
				200	**TSX FP CA200**	10.920
				500	**TSX FP CA500**	30.000
Trunk cables 9.5 mm, 1 shielded twisted pair 150 Ω. In harsh environments (5), outside buildings or in mobile installations (6)	Connector TSX FP ACC12, junction box TSX FP ACC14, repeaters TSX FP ACC6, ACC8M	Connector TSX FP ACC12, junction box TSX FP ACC14, repeater TSX FP ACC6	10	100	**TSX FP CR100**	7.680
				200	**TSX FP CR200**	14.920
				500	**TSX FP CR500**	40.000
Drop cables 8 mm, 2 shielded twisted pairs 150 Ω. In standard atmosphere (4) and inside buildings	Connector TSX FP ACC12	Junction box TSX FP ACC14	11	100	**TSX FP CC100**	5.680
				200	**TSX FP CC200**	10.920
				500	**TSX FP CC500**	30.000
Fibre optic jumper Double optical fibre 62.5/125	Repeater TSX FP ACC8M	Patch panel	12	2	**TSX FP JF020**	0.550
Cables for Modbus bus 2 RJ45 connectors	LUF P1 gateway, ATS 48, ATV 31	LU9 GC3 Modbus splitter block	13	0.3	**VW3 A8 306 R03**	0.025
				1	**VW3 A8 306 R10**	0.060
				3	**VW3 A8 306 R30**	0.130

Documentation

The manuals and quick reference guides for starters and variable speed drives, as well as the user manuals for communication gateways, are available on the web site: www.telemecanique.com.

(1) To order other elements for connection to the Fipio bus, please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" specialist catalogue.
(2) Please consult our "Power supplies, splitter blocks and interfaces" specialist catalogue.
(3) Sold in lots of 2.
(4) Standard environment:
  - no particular environmental constraints
  - operating temperature between +5°C and +60°C
  - fixed installation
(5) Harsh environment:
  - withstand to hydrocarbons, industrial oils, detergents, solder splashes
  - relative humidity up to 100%
  - saline atmosphere
  - significant temperature variations
  - operating temperature between -10°C and +70°C
(6) Mobile installation: cables in accordance with standard VDE 472 part 603/H:
  - use on a cable-carrier chain with bending radius 75 mm minimum
  - use on a gantry, provided that operating conditions such as acceleration, speed, length, etc, are adhered to: please consult your Regional Sales Office
  - use not permitted on robots or multi-axis applications.

Presentation
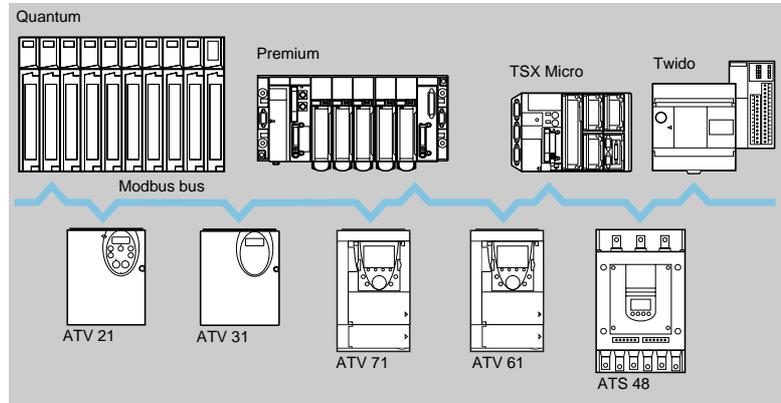
Modbus is a master/slave protocol.

Two exchange mechanisms are possible:
■ Request/response: The request from the master is addressed to a given slave.
The master then waits for the response from the slave which has been interrogated.
■ Broadcasting: The master broadcasts a request to all the slave stations on the bus,
which execute the command without transmitting a response.

The Altistart 48 soft start/soft stop units and the Altivar 21, Altivar 31, Altivar 61 and
Altivar 71 variable speed drives have the Modbus protocol integrated as standard.

The Altistart 48 soft start/soft stop unit and the Altivar 21 and Altivar 31 variable
speed drives are connected to the Modbus bus via their terminal ports.

The Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 variable speed drives have 2 integrated communication
ports:
■ A terminal port for connecting the graphic display terminal or an industrial HMI
terminal (Magelis type)
■ A Modbus network port
As an option, they can also be equipped with a VW3 A3 303 Modbus/Uni-Telway
communication card which offers additional characteristics (4-wire RS 485, ASCII
mode, etc.).

Characteristics

Type of device		ATS 48	ATV 21	ATV 31	ATV 61, ATV 71		
Type de connection		Terminal port				Bus port	Communication card
Structure	Connector	RJ45					9-way female SUB-D
	Topology	Bus					
	Physical interface	2-wire RS 485					2-wire or 4-wire RS 485
	Access method	Master/slave					
	Transmission mode	RTU					RTU or ASCII
	Data rate 38.4 Kbps	–	–	–	–	●	–
	19.2 or 9.6 Kbps	●	●	●	●	●	●
	4.8 Kbps	●	–	●	–	●	●
	Medium	Double shielded twisted pair					
	Number of subscribers	18, 27 or 31 slaves, depending on polarization *(1)*					
	Type of polarization	4.7 kΩ pulldown resistors	No pulldown				Configurable. No pulldown or 4.7 kΩ pulldown resistors
	Length of bus	1000 or 1300 m excluding tap links, depending on polarization *(1)*					
	Tap link	3 or 20 m maximum, depending on polarization *(1)*					

(1) See the configuration table on page 221.

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

Configuration on the basis of polarization

The specification of the physical layer provided by standard RS 485 is incomplete.
Various polarization diagrams can therefore be applied depending on the environment
in which the equipment is to be used.
The Modbus standard specifies the polarization exactly *(1)*.

Slave		Master	
		With or without polarization 4.7 kΩ	With polarization 470 Ω
	Without polarization	Configuration not recommended.	Modbus type configuration 31 slaves. Length of bus: 1300 m Tap link: 3 m maximum RC line terminators (R =120 Ω, C = 1 nF)
	With polarization 4.7 kΩ	Uni-Telway type configuration 27 slaves Length of bus: 1000 m Tap link: 20 m maximum RC line terminators (R =120 Ω, C = 1 nF)	Mixed configuration 18 slaves Length of bus: 1000 m Tap link: 20 m maximum RC line terminators (R =120 Ω, C = 1 nF)

Connection elements for RJ45 wiring system

Card

Description	Used with	Reference	Weight kg
Communication card equipped with a 9-way female SUB-D connector	ATV 61, ATV 71	**VW3 A3 303**	0.300

Accessories

Description	No.	Unit reference	Weight kg
Modbus splitter block 10 RJ45 connectors and 1 screw terminal block	1	**LU9 GC3**	0.500
Modbus T-junction boxes With integrated cable (0.3 m)	2	**VW3 A8 306 TF03**	–
With integrated cable (1 m)	2	**VW3 A8 306 TF10**	–
Line terminators for RJ45 connector *(3)* R = 120 Ω, C = 1 nF	3	**VW3 A8 306 RC**	–
R = 150 Ω	3	**VW3 A8 306 R**	0.010

Cables

Description	Use From	To	No.	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
Cables for Modbus bus 2 RJ45 connectors	ATS 48, ATV 21, ATV 31, ATV 61, ATV 71 (terminal ports or Modbus bus ports)	Modbus splitter block LU9 GC3	4	0.3	**VW3 A8 306 R03**	0.025
				1	**VW3 A8 306 R10**	0.060
				3	**VW3 A8 306 R30**	0.130
	Modbus T-junction box VW3 A8 306 TF●● Modbus splitter block LU9 GC3	Modbus T-junction box VW3 A8 306 TF●● Modbus splitter block LU9 GC3				
Cables for Modbus bus One 9-way male SUB-D connector 1 RJ45 connector	ATV 61, ATV 71 (+ communication card VW3 A3 303)	Modbus splitter block LU9 GC3	4	1	**VW3 A58 306 R10**	0.080
				3	**VW3 A58 306 R30**	0.150
Double shielded twisted pair cables	Modbus splitter block LU9 GC3 (screw terminals)	Modbus splitter block LU9 GC3 (screw terminals)	5	100	**TSX CSA 100**	5.680
				200	**TSX CSA 200**	10.920
				500	**TSX CSA 500**	30.000

PLC

(2)

Starters/drives
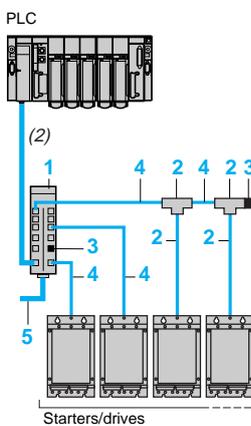
LU9 GC3

VW3 A8 306 TF●●

(1) Standard defined in 2002, available on the website: www.modbus.org.
(2) The cable for connecting the PLC and the splitter block depends on the type of PLC; please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software", "Automation platform Modicon Quantum", "Automation platform Modicon TSX Micro – PL7 software" and "Automation and relay functions" specialist catalogues.
(3) Sold in lots of 2.

Starters, drives
and communication
Communication via Modbus bus

(1)

Starters/drives

533178

TSX SCA 50

533179
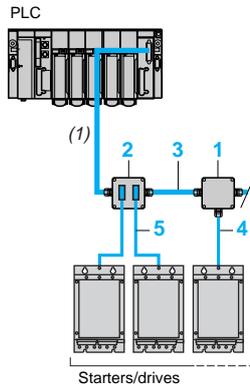
TSX SCA 62

Connection elements using tap junctions

Accessories

Description	No.	Reference	Weight kg
Tap junction 3 screw terminals, RC line terminator	**1**	**TSX SCA 50**	0.520
Subscriber socket Two 15-way female SUB-D connectors and 2 screw terminals, RC line terminator	**2**	**TSX SCA 62**	0.570

Cables

Description	Use		No.	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
	From	**To**				
Double shielded twisted pair cables	Tap junction TSX SCA 50, subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	Tap junction TSX SCA 50, subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	**3**	100	**TSX CSA 100**	5.680
				200	**TSX CSA 200**	10.920
				500	**TSX CSA 500**	30.000
Cable for Modbus bus 1 RJ45 connector and one stripped end	ATS 48, ATV 21, ATV 31, ATV 61, ATV 71 (terminal ports or Modbus bus ports)	Tap junction TSX SCA 50	**4**	3	**VW3 A8 306 D30**	0.150
Cable for Modbus bus 1 RJ45 connector and one 15-way male SUB-D connector	ATS 48, ATV 21, ATV 31, ATV 61, ATV 71 (terminal ports or Modbus bus ports)	Subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	**5**	3	**VW3 A8 306**	0.150
Cable for Uni-Telway and Modbus bus 2 male SUB-D connectors, 9 and 15-way	ATV 61, ATV 71 (+ communication card VW3 A3 303)	Subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	**5**	3	**VW3 A8 306 2**	0.150

(1) The cable for connecting the PLC and the splitter block depends on the type of PLC; please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium - Unity & PL7 software", "Automation platform Modicon Quantum", "Automation platform Modicon TSX Micro – PL7 software" and "Automation and relay functions" specialist catalogues.

Telemecanique

Starters, drives and communication
Communication via Modbus bus

Connection elements using screw terminals

Accessories

Description		Sold in lots of	Reference unit	Weight kg
Line terminators for screw terminals	R = 120 Ω, C = 1 nF	**2**	**VW3 A8 306 DRC**	0.200
	R = 150 Ω	**2**	**VW3 A8 306 DR**	0.200

Cable

Description	Use		Length m	Reference	Weight kg
	From	To			
Cable for Modbus 1 RJ45 connector and one stripped end	ATS 48, ATV 21, ATV 31, ATV 61, ATV 71 (terminal ports or Modbus bus ports)	Standard screw terminal, tap junction TSX SCA 50	3	**VW3 A8 306 D30**	0.150

Documentation

The manuals and quick reference guides for starters and variable speed drives, as well as the user manuals for communication gateways, are available on the website: www.telemecanique.com.

Presentation

The Modbus Plus network is a high-performance industrial local area network which can be used to meet the needs of client/server type extended architectures, combining a high data rate (1 Mbps), simple, low-cost transmission media and numerous messaging services.

The Altistart 48 soft start/soft stop unit and the Altivar 31 variable speed drive can be connected to the Modbus Plus network via an NW BM85000 gateway which has four RS 232 serial ports.

The Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 variable speed drives are connected to the Modbus Plus network via communication card VW3 A3 302.

Communication services

The main data exchange services between subscribers connected to the network are:
■ The "Modbus messaging" service according to Modbus protocol
■ The "Global Data" service: each subscriber makes available 32 words for each of the 63 other network subscribers
■ The "Peer Cop" dialogue service: point-to-point transaction of 32 receive or transmit words

The "Global Data" and "Peer Cop" services are restricted to a Modbus Plus network with a maximum of 64 subscribers.

Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 drives are accessed by simple configuration in the PLC using "Peer Cop" and "Global Data" services.
These services enable rapid exchange of the main drive parameters:
■ The "Peer Cop" service for controlling and adjusting the drive
■ The "Global data" service for monitoring the drive

Other parameters, which are used less frequently, can be accessed by the Modbus messaging service.

Characteristics:
page 225

Connections:
page 226

References:
pages 226 and 227

224

Telemecanique

Starters, drives and communication
Communication via Modbus Plus network

Characteristics

Structure	Topology	Network
	Physical interface	RS 485
	Access method	Token network
	Transmission mode	HDLC synchronous
	Data rate	1 Mbps
	Medium	Shielded twisted pair 120 Ω Optical fibre
	Number of subscribers per network	32, without repeater 64, with one or more repeaters
	Number of networks	4, separated by a maximum of 3 bridges
	Length of network	450 m maximum without repeater 1800 m maximum with 3 electrical repeaters 3000 m between 2 fibre optic repeaters
Services	Modbus messaging	Point-to-point requests with confirmation report: 200 bytes maximum, compatible with all Modbus subscribers
	"Global Data"	4096-byte shared database Cyclic exchange of 32 broadcast words Limited to one network This service does not cross bridges
	"Peer Cop" dialogue	Point-to-point or broadcast message Limited to one network This service does not cross bridges

Type of device	ATS 48, ATV 31	ATV 61, ATV 71
Type of interface	**NW BM85000**	**VW3 A3 302**
Control	"Modbus messaging"	"Peer Cop" 8 configurable words maximum (communication scanner)
Monitoring	"Modbus messaging"	"Global Data" 8 configurable words maximum (communication scanner)
Configuration and adjustment	"Modbus messaging"	"Modbus messaging" Read/write access to all drive parameters

⊕ **Telemecanique**

Modbus Plus wiring system
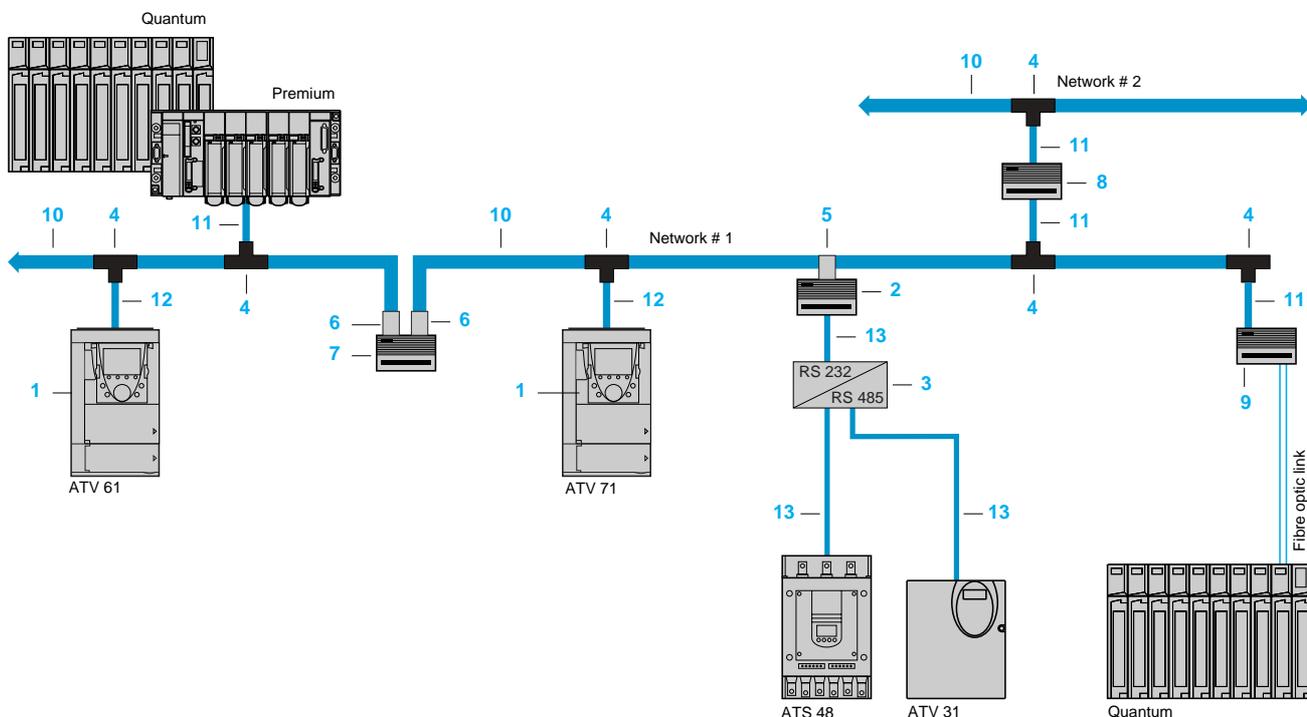
Modbus Plus network connection elements (1)

Cards and gateways

Description	Used with	No.	Reference	Weight kg
Communication cards equipped with one 9-way female SUB-D connector	ATV 61, ATV 71	**1**	**VW3 A3 302**	0.300
Modbus Plus/Modbus gateway 4 RS 232 ports power supply 115…220 V ∿	ATS 48, ATV 31	**2**	**NW BM85000**	3.158
RS 232/RS 485 interface power supply 24 V ⎓, 20 mA (2)	ATS 48, ATV 31	**3**	**XGS Z24**	0.105

Connection accessories

Description	Use	No.	Reference	Weight kg
Modbus Plus tap (IP 20)	For connecting via a tap junction	**4**	**990 NAD 230 00**	0.230
Modbus Plus in-line connector	Gateway, bridge and repeater	**5**	**AS MBKT 085**	0.035
Connector with Modbus Plus terminator (sold in lots of 2)	Bridge and repeater	**6**	**AS MBKT 185**	0.260
Modbus Plus electrical repeater	Extension beyond 450 m or up to 64 subscribers	**7**	**NW RR85 001**	2.677
Modbus Plus bridge with 4 ports	Connection of 4 networks maximum	**8**	**NW BP85 002**	2.813
Line/station fibre-optic repeater	–	**9**	**490 NRP 254 00**	2.856
Point-to-point fibre-optic repeater	Used to connect an electrical segment to the fibre-optic segment (3000 m maximum)	**–**	**NW NRP 253 00**	2.863
Wiring tool	Inserting trunk and drop cables in a 990 NAD 230 00 tap	**–**	**043 509 383**	3.000

(1) To order other connection elements, please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" and "Automation platform Modicon Quantum" specialist catalogues.
(2) Please consult our "Power supplies, splitter blocks and interfaces" specialist catalogue.

Telemecanique

Modbus Plus network connection elements (continued) (1)

Cables

Description	Use From	To	No.	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
Trunk cables for Modbus Plus	Modbus Plus tap 990 NAD 230 00	Modbus Plus tap 990 NAD 230 00, Modbus Plus in-line connector AS MBKT 085, Modbus Plus connector with terminators AS MBKT 185	**10**	30.5	**490 NAA 271 01**	1.833
				152.5	**490 NAA 271 02**	10.135
				305	**490 NAA 271 03**	18.940
				457	**490 NAA 271 04**	30.000
				1525	**490 NAA 271 06**	112.950
Drop cables One 9-way male SUB-D connector and one stripped end	Premium, Quantum PLCs, Modbus Plus bridge with 4 ports NW BP85 002, line/station fibre optic repeater 490 NRP 253 00	Modbus Plus tap 990 NAD 230 00	**11**	2.4	**990 NAD 211 10**	0.169
				6	**990 NAD 211 30**	0.459
	ATV 61, ATV 71 (+ communication card VW3 A3 302)	Modbus Plus tap 990 NAD 230 00	**12**	2.4	**990 NAD 219 10**	0.142
				6	**990 NAD 219 30**	0.465
Cable for Modbus 1 RJ45 connector and one stripped end	ATS 48, ATV 31, Modbus Plus/ Modbus gateway NW BM85000	RS 232-RS 485 interface	**13**	3	**VW3 A8 306 D30**	0.115

(1) To order other connection elements, please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" and "Automation platform Modicon Quantum" specialist catalogues.

Presentation

Premium

TSX Micro

Uni-Telway bus

Magelis XBT

ATV 71

ATV 61
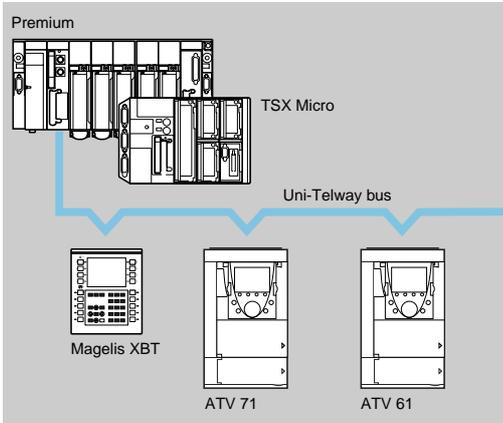
The Uni-Telway bus is a standard means of communication between control system components (PLCs, HMI terminals, supervisors, variable speed drives, numerical controllers, etc.).

The Uni-Telway bus requires a master station (Premium, TSX Micro PLCs) which manages the allocation of bus access rights to the various connected slave stations (HMI terminals, variable speed drives, etc). The slave stations can communicate with one another without programming the master station.
An industrial HMI terminal (Magelis type) can be connected directly to the bus and can be used to adjust drives without developing applications specific to the PLC.

The Altivar 61 and Altivar 71 variable speed drives can be connected to the Uni-Telway bus via a communication card VW3 A3 303.

Characteristics

Structure	Topology	Bus
	Physical interface	RS 485 isolated
	Link	Multidrop
	Access method	Master/slave type
	Transmission mode	Asynchronous transmission in baseband
	Data rate	4.8…19.2 Kbps
	Medium	Double shielded twisted pair
	Number of stations	28 maximum
	Length of bus	1000 m maximum excluding tap links
	Tap links	20 m maximum
Services	UNI-TE	Request/response of up to 240 bytes *(1)* initiated by any connected station. Unsolicited point-to-point data of up to 240 bytes *(1)* without confirmation report, initiated by any connected station. Broadcast messages of up to 240 bytes *(1)* initiated by the master station.
	Other functions	Transparent communication, via the master station, with any X-WAY architecture. Diagnostics, debugging, adjustment, programming of PLCs.
	Security	Check character on each frame, acknowledgement and, if required, repetition of messages ensure security of transmission.
	Monitoring	The bus status table, transmission error counters and station status can be accessed on each station.

Uni-Telway bus wiring system

Premium + TSX SCY 21601

TSX Micro (Terminal port)

ATV 61

ATV 71

ATV 71

Premium + TSX SCP 114
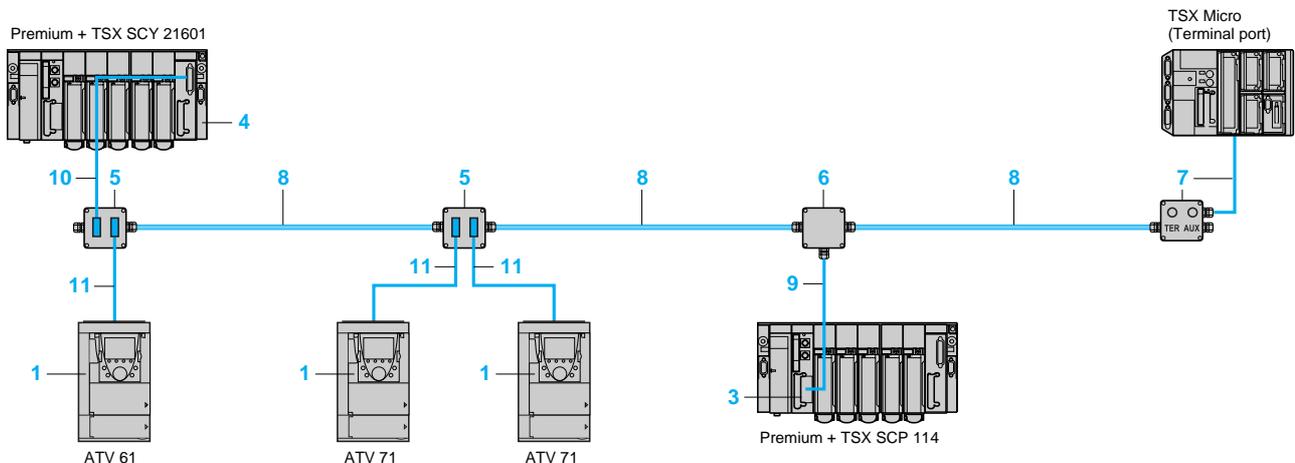
(1) Limited to 128 bytes with the Premium and TSX Micro PLC terminal port.

Telemecanique

Uni-Telway bus connection elements *(1)*

Cards, kit and module

Description	Used with	No.	Protocol	Reference	Weight kg
Communication card card equipped with a 9-way female SUB-D connector	ATV 61 ATV 71	1	Uni-Telway, Modbus	**VW3 A3 303**	0.300
RS 485 type III PCMCIA card (compatible with RS 422) 1.2...19.2 Kbps	Premium, Atrium, TSX Micro PLCs, or TSX SCY 21601 module	3	Uni-Telway, Modbus, character mode	**TSX SCP 114**	0.105
Communication module	Premium or Atrium PLC	4	Uni-Telway, Modbus, character mode	**TSX SCY 21601**	0.360

Connection accessories

Description	Use	No.		Reference	Weight kg
Subscriber socket Two 15-way female SUB-D connectors and 2 screw terminals	2-channel junction box, trunk cable extension and line terminator	5		**TSX SCA 62**	0.570
Tap junction 3 screw terminals	Junction box, trunk cable extension and line terminator	6		**TSX SCA 50**	0.520
Terminal port connection box with integrated cable, length 1 m	Connection of a TSX Micro or Premium PLC via the PLC terminal port and line terminator	7		**TSX P ACC 01**	0.690

Cables

Description	Use		No.	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
	From	**To**				
Uni-Telway double shielded twisted pair cables	Junction box TSX SCA 50, subscriber socket TSX SCA 62, terminal port connection box TSX P ACC 01	Subscriber socket TSX SCA 62, junction box TSX SCA 50, terminal port connection box TSX P ACC 01	8	100	**TSX CSA 100**	5.680
				200	**TSX CSA 200**	10.920
				500	**TSX CSA 500**	30.000
Cables for isolated RS 485 tap link	Card TSX SCP 114	Junction box TSX SCA 50	9	3	**TSX SCP CU 4030**	0.160
		Subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	9	3	**TSX SCP CU 4530**	0.180
	Integrated channel (channel 0) of TSX SCY 21601 module	Junction box TSX SCA 50	10	3	**TSX SCP CU 6030**	0.180
		Subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	10	3	**TSX SCY CU 6530**	0.200
Cable for Uni-Telway or Modbus bus 2 male SUB-D connectors 9 and 15-way	ATV 61, ATV 71 (+ communication card VW3 A3 303)	Subscriber socket TSX SCA 62	11	3	**VW3 A8 306 2**	0.150

(1) To order other elements for connection to the Fipio bus, please consult our "Automation platform Modicon Premium – Unity & PL7 software" and "Automation platform Modicon TSX Micro – PL7 software" specialist catalogues.

533153

TSX SCA 62

535577

TSX SCA 50

533154

TSX P ACC 01

Presentation

Communication gateways LUF P allow connection between the Modbus serial link and Fipio, Profibus DP or DeviceNet field buses.

After configuration, these gateways manage information which can be accessed by the Modbus serial link and make this information available for read/write functions (command, monitoring, configuration and adjustment) on the field buses.

An LUF P communication gateway consists of a box which can be clipped onto a 35 mm omega rail, allowing connection of up to 8 Slaves connected on the Modbus serial link.

Example of architecture

Configuration of gateway by PC

LUF P

Model U starter-controllers

Fipio
Profibus DP
DeviceNet

(1)

Modbus

ATS 48   ATV 31
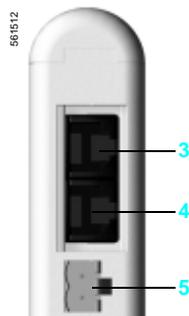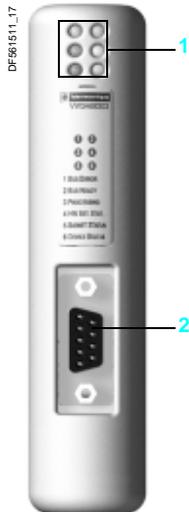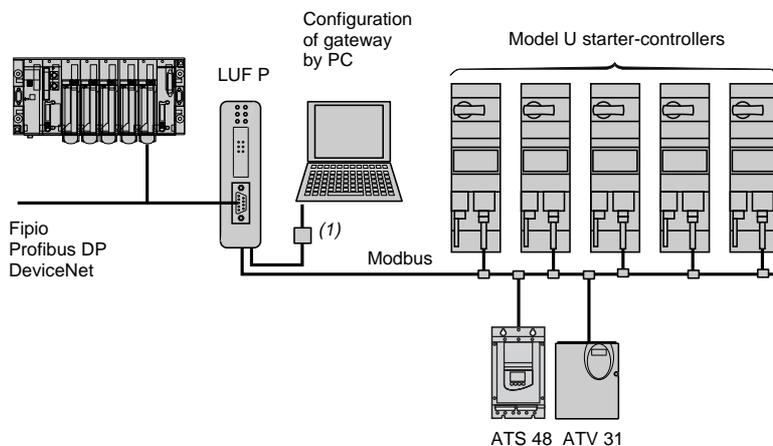
(1) Connection kit for PowerSuite software workshop.

Description

Front panel of the product

1 LED indicating :
   - communication status of the Modbus serial links,
   - gateway status,
   - communication status of the Fipio, Profibus DP or DeviceNet bus.
2 Connectors for connection to Fipio, Profibus DP or DeviceNet buses.

Underside of product

3 RJ45 connector for connection of the Modbus serial link
4 RJ45 connector for link to a PC
5 $\underline{\underline{\quad}}$ 24 V power supply

Software set-up

For the Fipio bus, software set-up of the gateway is performed using either PL7 Micro/Junior/Pro software or ABC Configurator software.
For the Profibus DP and DeviceNet buses, software set-up is performed using ABC Configurator.
This software is included:
■ in the PowerSuite software workshop for PC (see page 208),
■ in the TeSys U user's manual.

Telemecanique

Characteristics,
references,
dimensions

Starters, drives
and communication
Communication gateways LUF P

Characteristics

Bus type			Fipio	Profibus DP	DeviceNet
Environment	Conforming to IEC 60664		Degree of pollution: 2		
Ambient air temperature	Around the device	°C	+ 5…+ 50		
Degree of protection			IP 20		
Electromagnetic compatibility	Emission		Conforming to IEC 50081-2: 1993		
	Immunity		Conforming to IEC 61000-6-2: 1999		
Number of Modbus slaves which can be connected			⩽ 8		
Connection	Modbus		By RJ45 connector conforming to Schneider Electric RS485 standard		
	To a PC		By RJ45 connector, with PowerSuite connection kit		
	Field bus		By SUB D9 female connector	By SUB D9 female connector	By 5-way removable screw connector
Supply		V	External supply, ⎓ 24 ± 10 %		
Consumption	Max.	mA	280		
	Typical	mA	100		
Indication/diagnostics			By LED on front panel		
Services	Profile		FED C32 or FED C32P	–	–
	Command		26 configurable words *(1)*	122 configurable words	256 configurable words
	Monitoring		26 configurable words *(1)*	122 configurable words	256 configurable words
	Configuration and adjustment		By gateway mini messaging facility (PKW)		

(1) If the gateway is configured using PL7 and not ABC Configurator, the I/O capacity is limited to a total of 26 words.

References

	Description	For use with	With bus/ serial link	Reference	Weight kg
	Communication gateways	TeSys U starter-controllers, Altistart 48, Altivar 31	Fipio/Modbus	**LUF P1**	0.245
			Profibus DP/Modbus	**LUF P7**	0.245
			DeviceNet/Modbus	**LUF P9**	0.245

Connection accessories

	Description	For use with	Length m	Connectors	Reference	Weight kg
822631 *TSX FP ACC 12*	**Connection cables**	Modbus *(2)*	3	1 RJ45 type connector and one end with stripped wires	**VW3 A8 306 D30**	0.150
			0.3	2 RJ45 type connectors	**VW3 A8 306 R03**	0.050
			1	2 RJ45 type connectors	**VW3 A8 306 R10**	0.050
			3	2 RJ45 type connectors	**VW3 A8 306 R30**	0.150
822713 *490 NAD 911 03*	**Connectors**	Fipio	–	1 SUB-D 9 male connector	**TSX FP ACC12**	0.040
		Profibus mid line	–	1 SUB-D 9 male connector	**490 NAD 911 04**	–
		Profibus line end	–	1 SUB-D 9 male connector	**490 NAD 911 03**	–

Documentation

	Description	Medium	Language	Reference	Weight kg
	User's manual for TeSys U range *(3)*	CD-Rom	Multilingual: English, French, German, Italian, Spanish	**LU9 CD1**	0.022

(2) See pages 220 and 223.
(3) This CD-Rom contains user's manuals for AS-Interface and Modbus communication modules, multifunction control units and gateways, as well as for the gateway programming software, ABC Configurator.

Dimensions

*Presentation,
description,
setting-up*
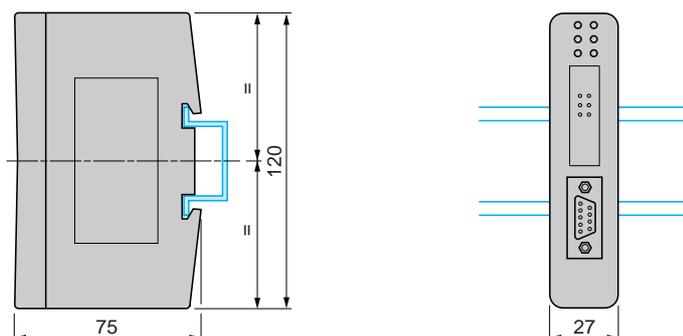
**Starters, drives
and communication**
Communication gateway LA9 P307

Presentation

Communication gateway LA9 P307 provides connection between the Profibus DP field bus and Modbus serial link. It is a Slave on the Profibus DP bus and Master of the Modbus serial link. It manages information present on the Modbus serial link to make it available for read/write functions in the Master PLC on the Profibus DP bus.

Gateway LA9 P307 consists of a box which can be clipped onto a 35 mm omega rail. It manages up to15 Slaves on the Modbus serial link.

Example of architecture
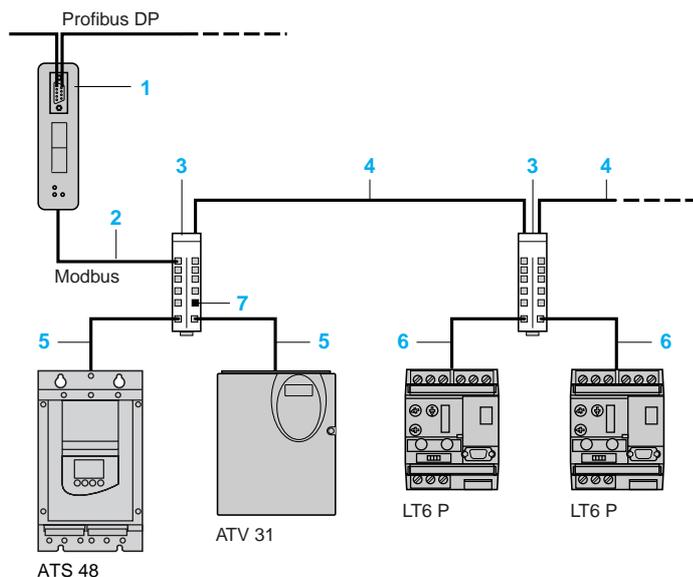
1 Gateway LA9 P307,
2 Tap-off cable VW3 P07 306 R10,
3 Modbus splitter box LU9 GC3,
4 Cable TSX CSA ●00,
5 Tap-link cable VW3 A8 306 R●●,
6 Tap-link cable VW3 A8 306 D30,
7 Line end adapter VW3 A8 306 RC.

Description

Gateway LA9 P307 comprises :
1 A SUB-D 9-way female connector for connection to the Profibus DP bus,
2 A line end adapter on the Profibus DP bus,
3 Gateway address coding on the Profibus DP bus,
4 Status signalling LED,
5 RJ 45 female connector for connection to the Modbus serial link,
6 $=$ 24 V power supply.

Software set-up

The gateway is configured using the standard software tools for the Profibus bus.
For the Premium automation platform, use SYCON configurator software.
The user's manual (.PDF) and the gateway description file (.GSD) are supplied on diskette with the gateway.

Telemecanique

Starters, drives
and communication
Communication gateway LA9 P307
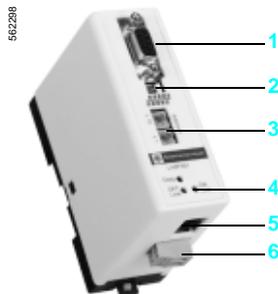
Characteristics

Environment	Conforming to IEC 60664		Degree of pollution: 2
Ambient air temperature	Around the device	**°C**	0...+ 50
Degree of protection			IP 20
Number of Modbus slaves which can be connected			15
Connection on	Modbus		RJ 45 connector
	Profibus		SUB-D 9-way female connector
Supply			External supply, ⎓ 24 V ± 20 %
Consumption		**mA**	150 on ⎓ 24 V
Indication/diagnostics			By LED
Services	Command		16 words
	Monitoring		16 words
	Configuration and adjustment		By gateway mini messaging facility (PKW)

References

LA9 P307

490 NAD 911 03

Description	For use with	Reference	Weight kg
Profibus DP/Modbus communication gateway	LT6 P ATS 48 ATV 31	**LA9 P307**	0.260

Description	For use with	Length m	Reference	Weight kg
RJ 45 cable with stripped wires	**Screw terminal block** - T-junction box TSX SCA 50 - Y-junction subscriber socket TSX SCA 62 **SUB-D connector** (to be ordered separately) - LT6 P (SUB-D 9 female)	3	**VW3 A8 306 D30**	0.150
RJ 45-RJ 45 cable	ATS 48 ATV 31 Modbus splitter box LU9 GC3	1	**VW3 P07 306 R10**	0.050
Connectors	Profibus mid line	–	**490 NAD 911 04**	–
	Profibus line end	–	**490 NAD 911 03**	–

Dimensions

LA9 P307

76,5

93

35

Ⓣ **Telemecanique**

The efficiency of Telemecanique branded *solutions*

Used in combination, Telemecanique products provide quality solutions, meeting all your Automation and Control applications requirements.

Simple machines
Altistart 01: 0.37 to 75 kW
Altivar 11: 0.18 to 2.2 kW
Altivar 31: 0.18 to 15 kW

Complex, high power machines
Altivar 71 : 0.37 to 500 kW

Pumping and ventilation machines
Altistart 48: 4 to 1 200 kW
Altivar 11...347: 0.18 to 2.2 kW
Altivar 21 : 0.75 to 30 kW
Altivar 61 : 0.75 to 630 kW

A worldwide presence

Constantly available
■ More than 5 000 points of sale in 130 countries.
■ You can be sure to find the range of products that are right for you and which complies fully with the standards in the country where they are used.

Technical assistance wherever you are
■ Our technicians are at your disposal to assist you in finding the optimum solution for your particular needs.
■ Schneider Electric provides you with all necessary technical assitance, throughout the world.

www.telemecanique.com

Simply Smart !

DIA2ED2050104EN